



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

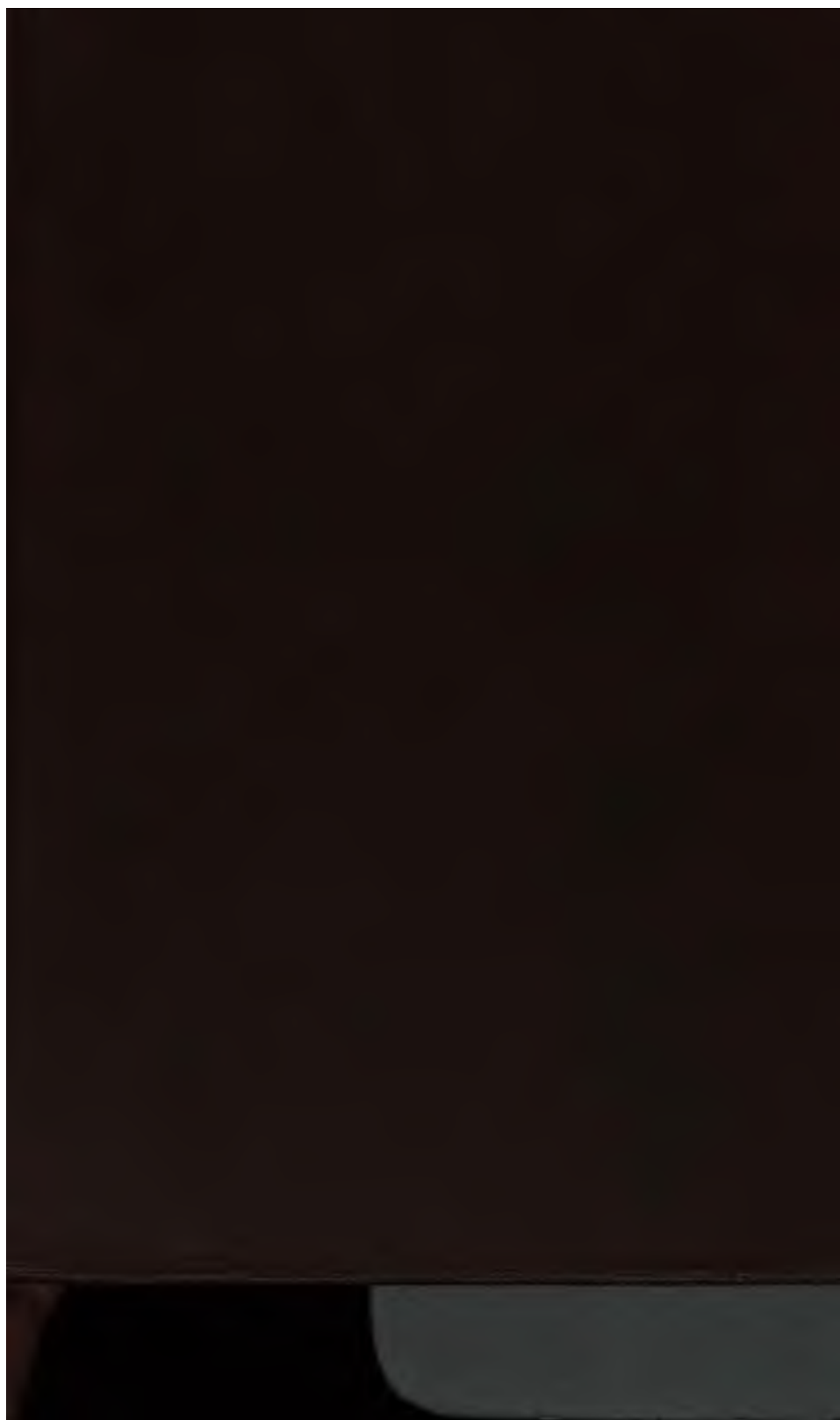
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



CBA

Heywood

CBA
Heywood!

CBA

Heywood







THE LIFE
OF
MERLIN,
SURNAMED
AMBROSIUS;

HIS
Prophecies and Predictions
INTERPRETED,

And their Truth made Good by our English Annals:

BEING A
CHRONOGRAPHICAL HISTORY

OF ALL THE *Heyw...*
Kings and memorable Passages of this Kingdom,
FROM BRUTE TO THE REIGN OF KING CHARLES.

A Subject never published in this Kind before, and deserves to
be observed and known by all Men.

Quotque aderant rates, Rebar adesse Deos.

CARMARTHEN:

PRINTED AND SOLD BY J. EVANS;

SOLD ALSO BY

Messrs. LACKINGTON, ALLEN, & Co. Finsbury-Square, Mr. WILLIAMS
& Son, Stationer's Court, and Mr. E. WILLIAMS, No. 11, Strand,
London; Mr. JONES, Printer, Dolgelly; Messrs. JAMES & WIL-
LIAMS, Printers, Aberystwith; Mr. SAUNDERSON, Printer, Bala;
Mr. C. LEWIS, Bookseller, Cardigan; Messrs. THOMAS & GRIF-
FITHS, Booksellers, Haverfordwest; Mr. JENKINS, Printer, and
Mr. HARRIS, Bookseller, Swansea; Mr. WILLIAMS, Mer-
thyr-Tydvil; Mr. NORTH, Brecon; Mr. RICE REES, Landover; *and*
and Mr. E. CARNES, Holy-Well.

1812.
Ad-

TO THE READER.

COURTEOUS & CONSIDERATE READER,

I HAVE here exposed to thy especial perusal, *The Life and Prophecies of our famous Predictor, MERLINUS, surnamed AMBROSIVS*; who, though he lived in the time of profane paganism, was a professed Christian, and therefore, his auguries the better to be approved and allowed, which thou hast, with all their exposition and explanation, expressly and punctually, making plain and evident how genuinely and properly they comply with the truth of our chronology. In which you shall find (adding the supplement of the history from Brute, who laid the first foundation of our British Colony, to the time of king Vortigernus, or Vortigern, the usurper of the crown, under whose reign Merlin first flourished) a true catalogue of all the kings of this island, with a summary of all passages of state, ecclesiastical or temporal, of any remark or moment, during their principalities and dominions, insomuch that scarce any thing shall be here wanting to thy best wishes, if thou art desirous to be instructed and faithfully informed in the knowledge of our English annals. For in the stead of a large study book, and huge voluminous tractate, able to take up a whole year in reading, and to load and tire a porter in carrying, thou hast here a small manuel, containing all the pith and marrow of the greater, made portable for thee (if thou so please) to bear in thy pocket, so that thou may'st say, that in this small compendium or abstract, thou hast Hollinshed, Polychronicon, Fabian, Speed, or any of the rest of more giantlike bulk or binding. To which, my short abbreviary, I strive to make this my prologue or preface, to thee alike suitable, being as succinct and briefly contrived as the former summarily comprehended, desiring thee to read considerably, and withal to censure charitably, and so (without further compliment) wishing thy care in the one, and courtesy in the other, with a favourable pardon of some few errors committed in the Press, I bid thee farewell.

THOMAS HEYWOOD.

NEW
BATH
1711

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

Mr. Adam Adams, Shoemaker, Brecon.
Mr. Anthony Allen, Talbot, Carmarthen.
Mr. David Allen, Angel, do.
Mr. John Arnold, ship, Swansea.
Rev. W. H. Barker, Carmarthen.
Mr. David Benjamin Schoolmaster, Llanym saint.
Mr. John Berrington, Swansea.
Mr. John Bird, Post-Master, Cardif.
Mr. Patrick Bowen, Cardigan.
Mr. Brigstocke, Carmarthen.
Mr. William Bowen, Mercer, do.
Mr. George Brown, Pendarren.
Mr. James Burn, Carmarthen.
Mr. John Cadwalader, Tailor, Swansea.
Mr. J. Callin, Cardigan.
Mr. E. Carnes, Bookseller, Holywell.
Mr. John Chamber, Cowbridge.
Mr. John Charles, Hair-Dresser, Carmarthen.
Mr. John Child, Neath.
Mr. David Cook, Strand, Swansea.
Mr. Thomas Cook, Carmarthen.
Mr. Dan. Davids, Saddler, Merthyr.
Mr. John David, Ironmonger, Carmarthen.
Mrs. Edward David, do.
Mr. William Davies, Cross-Keys, Swansea.
Mr. Lewis Davies, Sawyer, do.
Mr. E. V. Davies, Druggist, Bridge-End.
Mr. Thomas Davies, Dowlais Inn, Merthyr.
Mr. David Davies, Draper, do.
Miss E. Davies, Cook, at the Castle-Inn, do.
Mr. Richard Davies, Printer, Carmarthen.
Mr. Ivor Davies, Llandilo.
Mr. John Davies, Rope-Maker, Carmarthen.
Mr. John Davies, do.
Mr. David Davies, Penycoed, Llanelly.
Mr. Davies, Pant-yr-Inn, Llangunnor.
Mr. E. Davies, King-Street, Carmarthen.
Miss Mary Davies, White-Lion, do.

- Mr. Benjamin Davies, Carmarthen.
 Mr. John Deer, Llanelly
 Mr. Edward Eaton, Swansea.
 Mr. Willam Edmund, Hope & Anchor, Newport.
 D. J. Edwardes, Esq. Rhyd-y-gorse.
 Rev. Thomas Edwards, Neath.
 R. Edwards, Esq. Nant-yr-Eglwys.
 Mr. William Edwards, Carmarthen.
 Mr. James Edwards, Glazier, Merthyr.
 Mr. William Edwards, Llammas-Street, Carmarthen.
 Mr. Thomas Ellis, Plaisterer, Newport.
 Mr. John Ephins, Toler, Tredegar.
 Mr. S. Etheridge, Newport, 25 Copies.
 Mr. William Evans, Engineer, Pendarren.
 Mr. Roger Evans, Moulder, Merthyr.
 Mr. Edward Evans, Nailer, do.
 Mr. Arnold Evans, Officer, Kidwelly.
 Mr. Frederick Evans, Tyle-issa, Parish of Llandilo.
 Mr. D. Evans, Cardiff.
 Mr. William Evans, Cowbridge.
 Mr. John Evans, Swansea.
 Mr. George Fletcher, Tredegar.
 Miss Francis, High-Street, Swansea.
 Mr. Thomas Francis, Golden-Lion, do.
 Mrs. Sarah Gaina, Cardiff.
 Mr. William George, Moulder, Merthyr.
 Mr. Griffiths, Bookseller, Haverfordwest.
 Mr. Henry Griffiths, Draper, Swansea.
 Mr. Griffiths, Draper, Market-Street, Carmarthen.
 Mr. James Griffiths, Ivy-Bush, do.
 Mr. John Griffiths, junior, do.
 Mr. Griffiths, Saddler, Llanelly.
 Mr. Samuel Gug, White-Hart, Swansea.
 Mr. Gwynne, Attorney, Carmarthen.
 Mr. Edward Halse, London.
 Rev. J. Harries, Swansea, 2 copies.
 Mr. Hart, do.
 Mr. William Hathaway, Carmarthen.
 Mr. George Hopkins, Brandy-Merchant, Swansea.
 Mr. Roger Hopkins, do.
 Rev. Roger Howell, Baran.
 Mr. Hughes, Hatter, Carmarthen.
 Mr. John Humphreys, Merthyr.

SUBSCRIBERS' NAMES.

Mr. P. Jacob, London.
 Messrs. James & Williams, Printers, Aberystwith.
 Mr. D. W. James, Swan, Carmarthen.
 Mr. T. Jenkins, Printer, Swansea.
 Mr. Rees Jenkins, Shoe-Maker, Bridge-End.
 Mr. E. Jenkins, Tredegar.
 Miss Mary Jones, Dress-Maker, Swansea.
 Serjeant Evan Jones, Cowbridge.
 Mr. John Jenkins, Cardiff.
 Mr. John Jones, Agent, Tredegar.
 Mr. John Jones, Agent of the Forge at do.
 Mr. John Jones, do.
 Mr. William Jones, Dowlais Shop, Merthyr.
 Mr. Richard Jones, do.
 Mr. Samuel Jones, do.
 Mr. Thomas Jones, do.
 Mr. William Jones, Shopkeeper, Coed-y-Cymmar.
 Mr. Josua Jones, do.
 Mr. Joseph Jones, do.
 Mr. J. Jones, Head, Llandilo.
 Rev. D. Jones, of Kiliau-Ayron, Cardiganshire.
 Mr. Daniel Jones, Carmarthen.
 Mr. Henry Jones, do.
 Mr. D. Jones, Calmaker, Quay-Street, do.
 Mr. J. Jones, Tailor, King-Street, do.
 Mrs. Mary Jones, Plough, do.
 Mr. J. Jones, Llwyn-rhyd-Owain.
 Mr. E. Jones, Malster, Carmarthen.
 Mr. D. Jones, Draper, do.
 Mr. D. Jones, Saddler, do.
 Mr. Llewellyn Jones, Saddler, Bridge-End.
 Mr. Jones, Lady-Street, Kidwelly.
 Mr. D. Jones, White-Mill, Abergwilly.
 Mr. David Jones, of Ystrad.
 Mr. Jones, Printer, Dolgelley.
 Mr. J. Johnson, China-Warehouse, Carmarthen.
 Miss Catherine John, do.
 Mr. Richard Kayes, Shoe-Maker, Merthyr.
 Mr. Peter Kennedy, Cowbridge.
 Mr. Josiah Kinsey, Tredegar.
 Messrs. Lackington, Allen, & Co. London, 100 copies.
 Mr. Joseph Large, Saddler, Carmarthen.
 Mr. H. Lewis, Gallt-y-gog, 2 copies.

Mr. C. Lewis, Bookseller, Cardigan.
 Mr. William Lewis, Shoe-Maker, Swansea.
 Mr. Thomas Lewis, Cowbridge.
 Mr. E. Lewis, Bookseller, Newport, 25 copies.
 Mr. Thomas Lewis, Master Rowlerman, Tredegar.
 Mr. J. Lewis, Draper, Market-Street, Carmarthen.
 Mr. Henry Lewis, Aberystwith.
 Mr. J. Lewis, Glandulais.
 Mr. J. Lewis, Engineer, Carmarthen.
 Mr. William Llewelyn, do.
 Mr. T. Llewelyn, Laleston.
 Mr. J. Longpeter, Brecon.
 Mr. J. Lloyd, Schoolmaster, Llangendeirne.
 Mr. Thomas Lott, Excise-Officer, Carmarthen.
 Mr. John Litleyolins, Neath.
 Mr. William Maddocks, Carmarthen.
 Mr. H. Manwaring, Stone-cutter, do.
 Mr. James Mathews, Pendarren.
 Mr. B. Meau, Brecon.
 Mr. Francis Michael, Swansea.
 Mr. Edward Miles, Cardiff.
 Miss Sarah Minnett, do.
 Mr. Francis Morgan, Swansea.
 Mr. Edward Morris, Cowbridge.
 Mr. Herbert Morgan, Tredegar.
 Mr. Morgan Morgans, Crown, Merthyr.
 Mr. William Morgan, Rowlerman, Cyfartha.
 Mrs. Anne Morgan, Bell Inn, Brecon.
 Mr. John Morris, Quay-Street, Carmarthen.
 Rev. William Morgan, Abergwilly.
 D. Morris, Esq. Banker, Carmarthen.
 Mr. Thomas Morris, junior, do.
 Mr. William Moss, Ironmonger, do.
 Mr. James Moues, White-Hart, Swansea.
 Mr. Nichol, Llanblethian, near Cowbridge.
 Mr. John Nichols, Carmarthen.
 Mr. North, Printer, Brecon.
 Mr. John Owen, Cardiff.
 Mr. T. E. Parry, Draper, Market-Street, Carmarthen.
 Mr. S. Philips, Clerk to E. Williams, Esq. Atty. do.
 Mr. Henry Philips, do.
 Mr. Thomas Powell, Whale-Street, Brecon.
 Miss Elizabeth Powell, Neath.

Mrs. Price, of Dan-yr-allt, Llandinog.
 Mr. George Pierce, Dowlais, Merthyr.
 Mr. William Perry, Grocer, do.
 Mr. David Prosser, Blue-Boar, Brecon.
 Mr. Daniel Prytherch, Abergoleu.
 Mr. Thomas Redwood, Tanner, Cardiff.
 Mr. William Rees, Green-Dragon, do.
 Mr. Lewis Rees, Schoolmaster, do.
 Mr. William Rees, Merchant, Carmarthen.
 Mr. Evan Rees, do. do.
 Mr. D. Rees, Clerk to Mr. R. W. Thomas, do.
 Mr. J. Rees, junior, Lodging-House, do.
 Mr. Thomas Rees, Crier, do.
 Mr. J. Rees, Shop-keeper, Bridge-Street, Kidwelly.
 Mr. Hopkin Rees, Neath.
 Mr. Rees Rees, do.
 Mr. William Rees, Shoe-maker, Bridge-End.
 Mr. George Rees, Swansea.
 Mr. Lodowick Rees, Shop-keeper, Tredegar.
 Mr. Benjamin Rees, Puddler, Merthyr.
 Mr. William Rhydero, Carmarthen.
 Walter Rice, Esq. Llwyn-y-brain.
 Captain Richards, Swansea.
 Mr. William Richards, Horse & Groom, Cowbridge.
 Mr. David Richard, Cardiff.
 Mr. Thomas Richardson, Merthyr.
 Mr. D. Richards, do.
 Mr. D. Richards, Lammas-Street, Carmarthen.
 Mr. J. Roberts, Attorney, Kidwelly.
 Mr. J. Rogers, Currier, do.
 Mr. Roberts, Mason, dq.
 Mr. J. Rogers, Cowbridge.
 Mrs. Catherine Rosser, Swansea.
 Mr. D. Rosser, Smith, Llanelly.
 Mr. Thomas Rosser, Cardiff.
 Mr. Saunderson, Printer, Bala.
 Mr. Savours, Cowbridge.
 Mrs. Scott, Carmarthen.
 Mr. William Sibley, Merthyr.
 Mr. James Sims, junior, Brecon.
 Mr. Stacey, Draper, Carmarthen.
 Mrs. M. Stonehewer, do.

- Mr. Robert Todd, Clerk, Merthyr.
 Mr. William Tedd, do.
 Mr. Thackwell, Cardiff.
 Mr. J. Thomas, Bartlett's Building, London.
 Mr. J. Thomas, Printer, Haverfordwest.
 Mr. Evan Thomas, Swansea.
 Mr. Francis Thomas, Black-Smith, do.
 Mr. D. Thomas, Kidwelly.
 Mr. Timothy Thomas, Cardiff.
 Mr. Benjamin Thomas, Brandy-Merchant, Newport.
 Lieutenant Thomas, R. N.
 Mr. Richard Thomas, Moulder, Cyfartha.
 Mr. Edmund Thomas, Llandilo.
 Dr. Turton, do.
 Mr. Rawlins Thomas, Llanfihangel-Aberbythych.
 Mr. John Treharne, Castle Inn, Merthyr.
 Mr. Rees Thomas, Draper, Carmarthen.
 Miss Eliza Thomas, Mantua-maker, do.
 Mr. Edmund Townsend, Ship & Castle, Neath.
 Mr. B. Twining, Ivy-Bush, Carmarthen.
 Miss Mary Jones Walter, Neath.
 Mr. Robert Ward, Pen-y-darren, Merthyr.
 Mr. Thomas Watkins, Cardiff.
 Mr. John White, Bookseller, Carmarthen.
 Miss Anne Wilks, Cardiff.
 Mr. Willet, do.
 Mr. Williams, Printer, Merthyr.
 Mr. Thomas Williams, Swansea.
 Mr. Bethuel Williams, Cowbridge.
 Mrs. Anne Williams, Currier, Cardiff.
 Mr. Thomas Williams, Finer, do.
 Mr. Williams & Son, Stationer's Court, London.
 Miss Mary Williams, Six-Bells, Carmarthen.
 Mr. H. C. Williams, Grocer, do.
 Mr. John Williams, Dygoedydd.
 Mr. J. Williams, Aberdulais, near Neath.
 Mr. J. Williams, Bridge-Street, Kidwelly.
 Mr. E. Williams, No. 11, Strand, London.
 Mr. W. Williams, Bookseller, Swansea, 50 copies.
 Mr. Francis Wood, Dowlais Shop, Merthyr.

Chronographical History
OF THE
KINGS OF BRITAIN,

FROM THE FIRST PLANTATION OF THIS ISLAND BY
BRUTE AND HIS COUSIN CORINEUS,

To the Reign of King Vortigern;

IN WHOSE TIME

AMBROSIUS MERLINUS,

BEGAN TO UTTER HIS PREDICTIONS.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER FIRST.

BRUTE's first plantation in this island—How he divided it amongst his three sons—Of several famous cities built here by sundry kings, and how divers rivers took their first names—Of all the remarkable passages that happened in their reigns—A catalogue of the kings continued from Brute, to the end of his line and offspring.

FOR the better illustration of this present work intended, it would not be amiss to shew you a brief progress of all the memorable passages of the time, before we come to the prophecy, with a catalogue of the kings of this island, and what remarkable things happened in their reigns. To begin with the first, Brute, who was of the ancient and noble blood of the Trojans, descended from Æneas and Crusa, the daughter of king Priam. These had a son called Ascanius, after his father, king of Italy. Brute was the son of Sylvius, Æneas, the son of Ascanius. This Brute, at fifteen years of age, when hunting, by the unfortunate glancing of an arrow, slew his father, and had been also in his birth the death of his mother: but for the last disastrous act, he willingly exiled himself, and taking with him a choice company of adventurers, thought to

A

discover some new plantation. To omit his many troubles both by land and sea, in which he was still most victoriously prosperous; at length he encountered with a small fleet, of which a Trojan, and his near kinsman was captain, whose name was Corinaeus, who, joining their forces together, and after divers and sundry perils, landed in this island, (of white and chalky cliffs) called Albion, where finding none but giants of mighty stature, he destroyed the most part of them: of whom the greatest, both in bulk and command, was called Gogmagog, with whom Corinaeus wrestling to prove their trial of strength, Gogmagog, in his gripe, broke a rib in the side of Corinaeus; at which, he being enraged, gathering all his spirit about him, cast him down the high rock of Dover, (the place where they proved the mastery) which is called the fall of Gogmagog unto this day: for which, and other valiant actions before achieved by him, he gave him that entire province; which, from his name beareth the title of Cornwall.

Brute, then, taking full view of the island, and searching up the river Thames, built upon it a City; which, in remembrance of the late subverted Troy, he called Troynovant, or new Troy, now London. This done, he put his soldiers to tilling of the earth, and governed the realm peaceably for the space of twenty-four years. He had by his wife Ignogen, the daughter of Pandrusus, three sons, between whom, in his life-time, he divided his kingdom: to Locrine, the eldest, he gave all that is called England, but then, Logria, after his name. To the second, Cambrius, or Cambre, he left the country of Wales, (at first) from him called Cambria. To the third, Albanact, he gave the north part of the land, then titled from him Albania, now Scotland. That done, he expired, and was buried at Troynovant. This happened in the year of the world, four thousand fourscore and seven.

Locrine, being king of Britain, hearing that king of Scythia, had invaded his brother Albanact's dominions, and having slain him in a battle, governed in his stead. He, with his brother Cambre, assembled a mighty host to avenge his death; and in a sharp conflict, discomfited his whole army; and so hotly pursued him in his flight, that this Scythian, (which was called Humber) was drowned in that river which runneth up from Ravenspurn.

to Hull, which hath since borne his name, even to this day. After which victory, Locrine, who had espoused Guendolina, daughter to Corinæus, duke of Cornwall, grew enamoured of Estrild a beauteous lady, and daughter to the aforesaid Humber, by whom he had a daughter named Sabrina: of which his queen having intelligence, she accited her father and friends to make war upon her husband, and slew him in the fight, after he had governed the realm for the space of twenty years. Then the masculine spirited lady took his concubine, Estrild, with her beautiful young daughter Sabrina, and caused them both to be drowned in that river which parteth England and Wales; and from Sabrina is called Severn to all posterity. Then, Gwendolina, took upon her the government of the land, till her young son, Madan, came to mature age, and then resigned it up entirely unto his own hands, after she had governed fifteen years.

Madan began his reign in the year of the world, four thousand one hundred and twenty-two, of whom is little left worthy of memory, but that he tyrannized over his subjects, and in the fortieth year of his reign, being at his disport of hunting, and lost by his train, he was devoured of wolves, which were then plenteous in the land; leaving two sons, Memprisius and Manlius. These two brothers were at mortal enmity; till, in the end, Memprisius, the elder, caused the other to be traiterously slain; after which he fell into all kind of vices, and abandoning the bed of his lawful wife, used the company of many prostitutes and concubines, and then into the brutish sin of sodomy; for which he grew hated both of God and man; whose body, also, was (in hunting) torn to pieces by wild beasts, leaving behind him one son begotten in lawful wedlock, named Ebrank.

He began his reign in the year of the world, four thousand one hundred fourscore and two: he had one and twenty wives, of whom he received twenty sons and thirty daughters. The eldest of them was Gualen. All of them he sent to Alba Sylvius, (the eleventh king of Italy, and the sixth of the Latins) to have them married to the blood of the Trojans. He was a great warrior, and conquered in Germany and elsewhere. He builded Caerbrank, now

York, one hundred and forty years, after the erecting of London, he built also, in Scotland, the castle of Maidens, now called Edinburgh castle. And afterwards, with a strong army, pierced Gallia, and returned thence, with great triumph and riches. Who, when he had reigned sixty years, died, and was buried in York, leaving his eldest son, Brute Greenshield, to succeed him in the kingdom; of whom is left no memory worthy the recital, but that he expired, and lieth buried by his father, whose successor was his son Lisle or Leir, who built Carleir or Carlisle; and in the latter end of his reign gave himself wholly to sloth, by which divers uproars grew in the realm, not at his death appeased, whom succeeded his son Lud, surnamed Hurdebras, who was inaugurated in the year of the world four thousand two hundred three score and nineteen; he prudently appeased those combustions begot in his father's days. He builded the town of Kaerkin, now called Canterbury, and Caergwent, now Winton, or Winchester, and another titled Mount Palatine, now Sexton or Shaftsbury. He reigned thirty-nine years, and left a son called Bladud.

This Bladud professed himself a great astrologer, and studied the art of necromancy; he builded the town of Caerbaddon, now called Bath, and was the first founder of the hot baths. This king, attempting to fly from the top of Apollo's temple to the ground; his art failing him, he broke his neck in the fall, when he had reigned twenty years, leaving his son Leir to succeed him. Leir was of noble conditions, and kept the land in peace and tranquillity, he built the city of Caerleir, now Leicester; he had no son, but three daughters, Gonovilla, Ragan, and Cordilla, (the youngest whom he best beloved) who, being grown in age, desired to know which of his daughters affected him most; the first protested she loved him better than her own soul: the second swore, her love was unexpressible, for she preferred his love above all things under the sun, which answers much pleased him: then he demanded the like of the youngest, who told him she could not flatter like her sisters, but she loved him as far as he was worthy to be beloved, and as much as a child ought to love a father: which answer, much distasting him, he married his eldest daughter to the duke of Cornwall; and the second to the duke of Albania, and betwixt them divided

his land after his disease, but for the youngest, he reserved no dower at all.

Notwithstanding which, Acanapys, a king amongst the Gauls, hearing of her great beauty and virtue, came into this kingdom, and took her to wife, to whom her father would neither part with gold nor jewels, nor any remembrance of his love, but glad to be sorid of her. It was not long after that the two sisters grieved that he lived so long, incited the two dukes, their husbands, called Macglanus and Hemminius, who rose up in arms against him, and divided his dominion between them, so that of force, he was compelled to fly into France, to be relieved of his youngest daughter, whom he had before so much despised; whom she no sooner saw, but she expressed unto him, all the filial duty that could be expected from a father, so that he now began to distinguish between flattery and fair words, and natural and pious indulgence: briefly, she animated her husband to take his quarrel in hand, who entered into the land with a puissant army, and re-instated him on his throne: who, after he had ruled the kingdom for forty years, died, and was buried at Carlisle, leaving his daughter Cordilla, to inherit the kingdom; who by the general assent of all the peers and commons, was admitted as queen: who, for the space of five years governed the land, with great prudence, and the general love of the multitude; till Morgan and Cunedagius, the sons of her two eldest sisters, invaded her kingdom, and surprising her, put her in close prison: which servitude, her great spirit not able to endure, she, with her own hands, slew herself.

These two nephews to Cordilla, Morgan and Cunedagius, divided the land betwixt them; and so continued in great amity for the space of two years, when some evil disposed persons, whispered in the ears of Morgan, that it was a great dishonour unto him, being descended from the eldest sister, Gonorilla, and her husband Maglanus, should part from any of his rights to Cunedagius, son to Ragan, the second sister, and her Hemminius, and not possess himself of the whole principality. Therefore, he made war upon his cousin, who sent to him messengers to intreat of amity and unity; to which, he would by no means condescend. Therefore, Cunedagius compelled to an unwilling war, gave him battle, and routed his whole army, and after-

wards chased him unto Wales; where, in a second field, Morgan was slain, which place, is to this day called Glamorgan, or Morgan's land. After whose death, the victor possessed the sovereignty; of whom, nothing is left worthy of memory; but, that after he had reigned three and thirty years, he was buried at Troynovant, leaving to succeed him a son, called Rivallo.

He governed the realm honourably for the space of forty-six years; in which time, the greatest thing of remark is, that in the two and thirtieth year of his reign, Rome was first builded, in the year of the world four thousand, four hundred, threescore and ten; after the first erecting of Troynovant, or London, four hundred and seven solar years. After Rivallo, reigned his son Sisilius, forty-nine years, and was buried at Caerbaddon, or Bath, leaving no heir of his body lawfully begotten. Him, Jago, his nephew, succeeded; he reigned five and twenty years, died without issue, and lieth buried by his uncle Rivallo, at Caerbrank, or York. Kinimachus, his brother, governed the land after him for the space of fifty-four years, and lieth buried by the two before-named kings, he left behind him a son called Garboduck; in whose time, as in the reign of the four last kings, nothing happened, deserving the remembrance of a chronicle, but that he governed the realm threescore and three years; died, and was buried at London, and left behind him two sons, called Ferrex and Porrex.

These two brothers were made joint sovereigns of this kingdom, in the year of the world, four thousand seven hundred and eleven, and continued in great fraternal amity for a certain time, which expired. Porrex, being ambitious after the sole and entire sovereignty, gathered a strong power, (unknown to his brother) purposing to supplant him from all regal dignity, so that being unprovided of an army, he was forced to fly into France, where he implored the aid and assistance of a potent duke, named Gunhardus, or Swardus, who furnished him with soldiers sufficient, so that he re-entered the land with his host of Gauls, of which, Porrex, hearing, met him with his Britons, and gave him battle; in which, Ferrex was unfortunately slain. After which victory, retiring himself to his palace, where Widen, or as some authors

name her Judon, his mother, remained, she setting aside all motherly pity, entered his chamber, and by the help of her women, in the dead of night, when he was fast sleeping, most cruelly slew him, and afterwards, not sated with his death, she cut his body into small pieces. Thus died the two brothers, when they had ruled the land in war and peace five years ; and in them ended the genealogical line of Brute, with whom also I conclude this first chapter.



CONTENTS OF CHAPTER SECOND.

A continuation of the History of the British kings, to the time that Julius Caesar made conquest of the island—The building of divers cities and towns—Two things especially remarkable in an indulgent mother, and a most unnatural brother—Sandry other passages worthy of observation—The city of Troynavant, now called London.

AFTER the death of these two princes, the nobles of the land fell into great dissention amongst themselves, all hating the memory of Gorbodue and his issue, in regard that one brother slew the other, and the most unnatural mother was the death of the survivor, and because none of Brute's line was left alive, the land was divided in four parts; so that in Albania was one Waler, called Staterius: Pinnor governed Loegria, or Middle Britain: Rudaulus guided Wales, and Clotenus, Cornwall; whom the Britains held to be the most rightful heir: all these called themselves kings; to which, some add a fifth, Yevan, king of Northumberland. Briefly, Munmutius Donwallo, son to Clotenus, duke of Cornwall, by vanquishing the rest, became sole sovereign of this island, in the year of the world 4748. He was in all his actions very noble, and built within London a famous structure, which he called the Temple of Peace, which some hold to be the same now called Blackwell-Hall. He instituted many good and wholesome laws. He gave great privileges to

the maintaining of temples, cities, ploughs, &c. He began the four highways of Britain, which were perfected by his son Belinus. He built the two towns of Malsbury and the Vies, and was the first that made for himself a diadem of gold, with which he was crowned with great solemnity. Insomuch, that some writers name him the first king of Britain; stiling all his predecessors only dukes, rulers, and governors. He, when he had well and honourably governed the land for the term of forty years, died, and was buried in the aforesaid Temple of Peace, within London, leaving to succeed him two sons, Belinus and Brennus.

These two brothers divided the land betwixt them, and continued in great fraternal unity for the space of five years: after which term, Brennus, ambitious to have more land, or all, made mortal war against his brother, who vanquished him in battle, so that he was forced to forsake the land, and arrived in Armorica, now called Little Britain, some write into Norway. Howsoever, by the supply and assistance of foreign princes, he made many inroads into the land, (too long here to relate) to the great disturbance of his brother. At length, he assembled a strong and puissant army; against whom, Belinus came with a mighty host, as his manifest and mortal enemy. But as their enemies were ready to join battle, their mother, whose name was Cornway, (of a more indulgent and penetrable nature, than the cruel and savage Widen, before-named) exposed herself in person between the two hosts; and in a discreet manner and motherly demeanor, using all such passionate and moving oratory to her two sons; that at length she settled a stedfast unity and peace between them. After which accord made, they joined both their hosts, and with them, conquered a great part of Gallia, Italy, and Germany: which done, Belinus returned into Britain.

Where, when he came, he repaired old and decayed cities, and also built a new one on the river Usk, near to Severn, called Caerusk, and afterwards the city of Legions; because in the time of Claudius Cæsar, divers Roman legions were there billeted and lodged, now called Caerlleon. He built also an harbour or small haven for ships to ride in, in Troynovant; in the summit or top

whereof stood a vessel of brass, in which, after his death, his burnt ashes were inclosed; which still retains the name of Belingsgate. In which interim, Brennus desirous to win fame and honour abroad, with an host of Senonensian Gauls, (so called, because they dwelt about the city of Sena) built in Italy and Gallia, these cities following, Mediolanum or Milleine, Papia or Pavia, Burganum, Sena, Comum, Brixia, Verona, Vialonza, Cremona, Mantua, &c. He overcame the Romans at the river Albia, eleven miles from Rome, and took the city all save the capital, to which they laid siege, and one night whilst the guardians were asleep, they undermined the earth, and were likely to have won it, but a noble Roman named Manlius Torquatus, waking by the cry of geese and ganders, prevented the Gauls, and saved the capital. For which cause, the Romans for a long time after, on the first day of June, did annually celebrate the feast of ganders.

But Brennus and his people held the Romans so short, that they slew many of the senators, and compelled the survivors to lay him down a thousand pounds weight in gold; besides, they took the spoil of the city, so that they were enforced to call back Furius Camillus, whom they had before most ungratefully banished from Ardea, and created him the second time dictator, who gave strong battle to the Gauls, and won from them all the gold and jewels which they had taken from the Romans. Therefore, Bren turned his army towards Greece, entering Macedonia, and dividing his people into two hosts, the one he retained with himself, and sent the other into Galatia, which afterwards was called Gallogræcia, and lastly, from Gallogræcians, the nation were termed Galathians. Then Bren conquered Macedonia, and overcame their duke or king Sosthenes, and after spoiled the gods of their temples, and said in sport, Rich gods ought to contribute towards men some part of their wealth. Thence he came to Delphos, where the oracle was, and robbed the temple of Apollo, upon which there was a great earth-quake, and hail-stones of mighty weight and bigness, which destroyed some part of his host, and upon the rest, an huge part of the rocky mountain fell, and buried them in the earth; and Bren

being wounded, and despairing of safety, drew his sword and killed himself. And his brother, Belinus, after he had honourably governed the kingdom of Britain, with his brother and alone, for the space of 26 years, expired and was buried at Belingsgate, leaving a son behind him called Gurguintus Barbarosse, or Gurguint with the red beard.

He began his reign in the year of the world 4834, he conquered Denmark, and forced from them an annual tribute of £1000. After which victory he sailed toward England in great triumph; but, in his course upon the sea he met with a fleet of thirty sail: who, hauling them, and demanding of what country they were, and the purpose of their navigation, they answered him, Their people were called Balenses, and that they were exiled from Spain and with their wives and children had long sailed upon the sea, beseeching the king to have compassion on them and to grant them within his large dominions some place to inhabit, and they would be his true and faithful subjects. The king commiserating their state, by the advice of his barons, granted them a wide and vast country which is the farthest of the western islands; which, from the captain, Irlomall, was called Ireland, and that was the first plantation of that country. And after this, Gurguintus had established the laws of his fore-fathers, and exercised justice among his subjects for the space of 19 years, he died, and was buried at Troynovant, leaving a son called Guintolinus.

He, with great honour and clemency guided the land, taking to wife an honourable and learned lady, called Marcia, who added to the former laws of the land, other wholesome statutes and decrees, which were greatly embraced and continued long in efficacy and force; which Alured, long after, king of England, caused to be translated out of the British into the Saxon tongue, and called them Marthe he lege, or the Marcian laws: to this woman, for her great wisdom, the government of the kingdom was committed, with the guardianship of his son Cecilius for the space of 26 years; after which time, the king expired, and was buried at London. Of this Cecilius there is little or nothing remembered, but that he governed the realm 15 years, leaving to succeed him his son

Kimarus, who was a wild young man, and irregular both in his private life, and public government; who, when he had reigned three years, being in his disport of hunting, was traiterously slain by his servants. He was succeeded by his son Elanius, who expired in the second year of his reign, who was succeeded by his bastard son, called Morindus, begotten of his concubine Faugrestela.

He was made king in the year of the world 4890, who was a prince of great valour and courage, but given to wrath and cruelty, of goodly presence and comely personage, but of a marvellous strength above all the nobles of the realm. In his time came the king of Mauritania, and invaded his realm, whom he encountered with a puissant army, and chased to sea, taking many of his soldiers prisoners, whom he caused in his own view to be put to many cruel and tormenting deaths: at length, riding upon the sea strand, he spied an huge monster, which the waters cast up alive, which, out of his great courage, and ambition of glory, purposing to slay it with his own hands, he was by it devoured, after he had governed the kingdom eight years, leaving behind him five sons, Gorbomannus, Archigallo, Elidurus, Vigenius, and Peridurus. Gorbomannus, being the first begotten son of Morindus, succeeded his father, being a just prince, in whose time was more riches and plenty than in any of the days of his predecessors: who, to the great sorrow both of his peers and people, died without issue, after he had reigned 11 years. After whom, his second brother, Archigallo, was instated in the sovereignty: this prince was of a contrary condition to the former, who gave himself to dissention and strife, imagining causes against his nobles, to deprive them of their possessions and dignities, and raising men of base and sordid birth and quality to office and honour; and so he could enrich himself, not caring how impoverished his subjects. For which, by one assent of the nobility and commons, he was deposed from all regal dignity, after he had tyrannized five years.

In whose stead was instated the third brother, Elidurus, in the year of the world 4915, who was so mild and gentle to his subjects, that they added to him a surname, and called him Elidure the Meek. To express the goodness of his

condition, it happened while hunting in a wood called Calater, near York, he found his banished brother wandering in the thick of the forest, whom he no sooner saw, but dismounted from his steed, and embraced him in his arms, and so conveyed him into the city privately, where he concealed him for a time, and at length, feigning himself sick, he so wrought with his nobility severally and apart, that he had won them to re-instate his brother Archigallo on the throne, after he himself had governed for the term of five years, who, being again advanced to the supreme power and majesty, he changed his former conditions, ordering all things according to equity and justice during his natural life, and then died, after he had lastly reigned ten years, and lieth buried at York. Then was Elidurus again made king, against whom, his two younger brothers, Vigenius and Peridurus, had great indignation, because for his virtue and piety he was so much beloved of the Britons, therefore they conspired against him, and took him prisoner in battle, when the second time he had reigned two years, committing him into safe custody.

These two brothers were then jointly made kings, and divided the land between them. Vigenius died, after he had governed his part of the kingdom seven years: after whose death, Peridurus seized the whole under his dominion, who ruled with great temperance and prudence; in so much, that he was praised above his other brethren, and Elidurus quite forgot; who, after he had reigned with his brother and alone for the term of nine years, expired: after whom, Elidurus was fetched from prison, and the third time instated on the throne, who continued in his former sincerity and integrity; and lastly, being of a good age, ended his life, when he had this last time governed four years, and was buried at Carlisle, leaving a son called Gorbomannus, who began his reign in the year of the world 4945, after whom succeeded Margan, and after Margan, his brother Emerianus, who was deposed for his cruelty and tyranny. After whom, successively reigned 20 kings; of whom, little or no mention is made by any approved author: the last of which was called Blegabridus, a cunning musician, who, for his excellency in that faculty was called of the Britains, The God of Glee-men or Minstrels. After whom succeeded nine kings, of whom there is left neither name nor memory, saving that the last of

them was named Hely, who governed the kingdom 40 years, wanting 7 months, which time, of 33 successive kings, that is, from Elidure to the last year of Hely, amounted to 186 years. This Hely left behind him three sons, Lud, Cassibeline, and Nennius.

Lud, the eldest son of king Hely, began his reign in the year of the world 5131; who, in all his actions, shewed himself honourable, repaired old temples, and built new, and so of cities and towns: but, especially in Troynovant, he caused sundry structures to be made, both for the enlarging and beautifying of the city, walling it around, and ditching it about, and in the west part of the wall made a strong gate, and commanded it to be called after his name Ludgate, and because he much affected the city, as the place where he most frequented, he changed the name thereof from Troynovant to Caerlud, or Lud's-town, now London. He was strong and mighty in subduing his enemies, liberal, given to hospitality, and much loved and feared of the Britains; who, reigning in great peace and prosperity 11 years, then died, and was buried in Porthlud, or Ludgate, leaving two sons, Androgeus and Tenantius.

In regard of the pupilage and minority of the two young princes, Cassibellan, their uncle, and brother to king Lud, was made king in the year of the world 5142. This man was of great wisdom and courage, exercising justice mixed with mercy amongst his subjects, insomuch, that they favoured him greatly above his nephews; yet, he provided that they were royally educated according to their births, and when they came to years of discretion, he gave to Androgeus the city of London, and the earldom of Kent, and to Tenantius the dukedom of Cornwall, &c.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRD.

THE first conquest of this island by Julius Cæsar—Britain made tributary to the Romans—The birth of our Saviour, under Cimbeline, king of Britain—How Southampton came to be so called, and the cities of Gloucester and Colchester—Vespasian's conquest of the isle of Wight—Of Caithness in Scotland—Of Lucius, the first christian king of the Britains, and of other Roman governors.

GAIUS Julius Cæsar, being employed by the senate of the famous city of Rome, with Lucius Publius his colleague in the wars of Gallia, now called France, being on the sea side, at Callis, beholding the white cliffs and rocks of Britain, demanded of the natives what manner of people inhabited this island, and being fully satisfied concerning the people and commodities thereof, he was ambitious to add it to the Roman empire; and to that purpose sent messengers to Cassibelan, then King, to make him and his land tributary to Rome: at which he being highly moved, sent him back a peremptory answer, that every sovereign was bound to keep his subjects from slavery and servitude, and maintain them in their franchises and liberties, and that he would do to his utmost ability and power. With this answer Cæsar, who was of an invincible courage, much incensed, instantly made ready his navy, and sailed towards Britain, purposing to add this kingdom to his conquest of France, but the Britains had pitched stakes on the shore, which much hindered their landing, whilst Cassibelan gathering a strong host gave the Romans battle, and beat them back unto their ships: but after he had new rigged and repaired his navy, and furnished himself with a sufficient army, he returned again the second time, and was likewise beaten back to his great dishonour. For which victory twice obtained by the Britains, Cassibelan assembled all his lords, and made a great triumph at London, where were sundry martial exercises performed: in the performance of which, one of Androgeus's knights having slain one of the king's kinsmen, whom he much loved, he sent to have him stand to the trial of the cause; but Androgeus denied to give up to the censure of the law, and departed in secret, (without taking leave) from the court, which gave Cassibelan great cause of incensment against him

Whose indignation Androgeus justly fearing, sent let-

ters unto Cæsar, that if he would make a third attempt upon this country, he with all his power would be ready to assist him against his uncle, pretending that he not only usurped his right in the crown, but had done to him divers other affronts and injuries. Cæsar glad of so good an opportunity, after hostages given for his fidelity, (which were his son Sceva with thirty others of the sons of his nobility and gentlemen) a third time invaded the land, which Cassibelan hearing, gave him a strong battle in a valley near Canterbury, in which he had the better of the day, till Androgeus coming in with his fresh forces turned the die of war, so that Cassibelan with his Britains, were forced to forsake the field, and after a great slaughter of the Britains, retired himself to a place of safety, where Cæsar kept him so strictly in, that he was forced to submit himself, paying to the Romans an annual tribute of £3000. After which, Cæsar would have made Androgeus king; but not daring to trust his nation which he had so lately betrayed, he went with Cæsar to Rome, where he ended his life. Cassibelan reigned after this conquest of the Romans seven years, in all sixteen: and dying, left the sceptre to the younger son Tenantius, who governed the realm with all diligence and justice for the space of twenty three years, leaving the sovereignty to his son Cimbelinus.

He was made king in the year of the world 5180, in the nineteenth of whose reign, our blessed Saviour was born of the virgin Mary, which maketh the year of the world from the creation of Adam, to the incarnation of our Redeemer, (by the computation of Isidore, Bede and others) 5129 years: so that Christ was incarnate from Noah's flood, or the general deluge 2957, after Abraham, 2017, after David king of Israel, 1075, from the transmigration or the captivity of the Jews to Babylon 520, after Brute's plantation in this island, 1136, after Alexander the great about 325, after the building of Rome, 729, and in the beginning of the 42nd year of Octavius Augustus Cæsar then emperor of Rome, &c. But to come back to the history, Cimbeline after he had worthily governed the land 35 years, yielded his due to nature, and was interred in Caer-Lud, or London, leaving two sons, Guiderius and Arviragus.

Guiderius, the eldest son of Cimbelinus, began his reign

in the seventeenth year of our blessed Saviour's incarnation, who having a great confidence in his riches and strength, denied to pay any tribute to the Romans, which had been tendered annually, from the time of Julius Cæsar to his days. For which, Claudius, then emperor of Rome, came over with a mighty host, and recovered it again: in the host of the Romans was a great captain called Hamo, who, in the battle, put upon him the armour and habit of a Britain; by which means, having access to the place where the king fought in person, he slew him and escaped: of which disastrous accident, his brother, Arviragus, having intelligence, armed himself with the cognizance of the dead king, and continued the battle with such valour and courage, that in the end he put the Romans to flight. Guiderius, being thus slain by Hamo, after he had ruled the kingdom 28 years, leaving no issue to succeed him, his brother, Arviragus, by the general suffrage both of the peers and people, was invested in his stead.

• This martial and magnanimous prince took upon him the government of the land, in the year of our Saviour 44. He was, also, for his great valour, by some authors called Arnager, who strongly made war upon the Romans, and afterwards in a battle slew Hamo, (who had formerly cowardly killed his brother) near to an haven or port of the sea, and afterwards caused his body to be piecemeal cut, and cast into the ocean, for which it was called Hamo's-Haven, and since Southampton. Claudius, much admiring the courage of Arviragus, sent to Rome for his daughter Gessima, and gave her to him in marriage upon conditions of peace; and to make the solemnities of the nuptials more famous, he called the city where they were kept, Claudio Cestria, which before was stiled Caerleon, and afterwards Glovernia, from a duke called Glovio, but now Glócester. After which, Claudius sent a certain number of his legions to govern Ireland, and departed towards Rome: Arviragus then repaired decayed cities and castles, and ruled with such justice and integrity that he enticed to him all the hearts of his subjects; and as his riches, so also increased his pride, so that he denied the tribute to Rome, before granted; therefore a great duke called Vespasian, was sent from the senate, who overcame him in battle, and forced him to

become tributary, which some writers affirm was merely at the intercession and entreaty of the queen Genissa; and no coercion or constraint from Vespasian, who, after he had won the isle of Wight, returned with honor to Rome; after which, Arviragus grew more tractable towards the Romans, and continued in their great grace and favor: who, after he had nobly governed the Britains for the space of 30 years, expired, and was interred at Claudiocestria, or Gloucester, leaving to succeed him a son, called Marius.

He was crowned king in the year of our blessed Saviour 74, a wise and just man, and flourished in great prosperity and wealth: in whose time one Loudricus (whom, some writers call Rodicus) with a mighty army of Picts, or Scythians, whom some also call Goths, and Huns, landed in a part of Scotland, wasting and spoiling, wheresoever he came, with iron and fire, whom Marius met in battle, and gave him a great overthrow, in which, their duke Loudricus was slain: in remembrance of which victory in Stanismore, a place of Westmaria, or Westmorland, where this battle was fought, he caused a great stone or pillar to be erected, upon which was inscribed in capital letters, **MARI VICTORIA**. The remnant of the army that survived the battle, humbly besought the king to allow them some place under his dominions, in which to inhabit, who commiserating their case, granted them a place in Scotland, called Cathnesse, to whom the Britains disdaining to give their daughters in marriage; they allied themselves with the Irish, and were after called Pictavians. Marius having thus subdued his enemies, gave himself to study the weal of his subjects, and lived peaceably his whole life-time after: and lastly, payed his natural tribute, and was buried at Carlisle, leaving a son named Collus, or Coill.

Coill was inaugurated in the year of the incarnation 126. This Prince had his breeding in Italy amongst the Romans, for which reason, there grew great affinity and friendship betwixt the two nations, for he became their willing tributary: he was very bountiful to all men, by which he purchased great love, both from the lords and commons. He built the town in Essex, called Coilchester,

and when he had peaceably governed the realm 54 years, he died, and was buried at York, leaving a son called Lucius, who was inaugurated in the year of grace 180, who had the honour to be called the first christian king of this island, who being a man devoutly given, sent to Eleutherius, then bishop of Rome, to be instructed in the true faith, who to that purpose, employed two learned men, called Fuganus, and Dimianus, who were honorably received by this king Lucius, and by whom he and a great part of the Britains were converted from Paganism and Idolatry to the true Christian belief, which happened in the 8th year of his reign, who, after his conversion, ordained that all the idolatrous Arch-Flamins, and Flamins, should be made arch-bishops and bishops, to the number of 3 arch-bishops, and 28 bishops, and should have the government of the church lately established. These being confirmed by the fore-named bishop of Rome, he endowed them with lands and possessions, and consecrated all the Pagan temples to the worship of Christ; and when he had peaceably governed the land for the space of 12 years, he left this earthly tabernacle for a better, and was buried at Gloucester: after which, because he died without heir, the land grew into great combustion, for the term of 50 years, in which none had the absolute nomination of king or sovereign.

Then Severus, the Roman emperor, took upon him the government of the realm, in the year of grace 208, and ruled the kingdom five years; in which time he caused a ditch and wall to be made of turfs and stakes, of 122 miles in length, from Durham to the Scotch sea, during which, the Picts with their duke or leader Fulgenius, came out of Scotland with a strong army, and destroyed much of the country beyond Durham, against whom Severus (for his conquest of Parthia) surnamed Parthicus, assembled a great host of Romans and Britains, and gave them a battle near York, in which he was slain, and his army discomfited: and in that city he lyeth interred, leaving behind him two sons, namely, Geta and Bassianus. This Bassianus was the son of Severus, by a British woman, and he had Geta by a Roman lady; the Britains therefore made the son of their country-woman their sovereign, in the year of grace 212, but the Romans held for Geta; for which a mortal war grew betwixt the two Brothers, in

which Geta was slain, and Bassianus, was afterwards made emperor, having incestuously married his step-mother ; for which, and many other tyrannies exercised by him on the natives, he grew into great hatred of the people, and was slain at a place called Edessa, after he had been emperor for the space of 7 years.

In this interim of his reign, one Carassius, a Britain of low birth, but eminent in arms, and in the practice of martial exercises, obtained of the senate the keeping of the coasts and frontiers of the land, and to oppose the invasion of all strangers, so that he drew to him many hardy knights of the Britains, promising unto them many donatives, with honour and office, if they would make him king of the land ; which so far prevailed with them, that they with an unanimous consent proclaimed him their sovereign and king, against whom, Bassianus moving battle, and to suppress them as rebels, was slain by this Carassius, who took upon him the regal dignity in the year of the incarnation of Christ 218.

When the Romans had notice of the death of their emperor Bassianus, they sent unto Britain a great captain called Alectus, with three legions, to punish the pride and rebellion of Carassius, to which captain fortune was so favorable, that he chased him from place to place, and in the end slew him in battle, after he had usurped 8 years. This Alectus, for his good service done, was made consul of Rome, and governor of the land, who hotly pursued divers British lords, who had taken part with Carassius against the Romans, and exercised great tyranny amongst them, so that he grew into hatred and contempt of the natives. And therefore they accited one Asclepiodotus, duke of Cornwall, who gathered a great host of the Britains, and made war against the Romans, chasing them from place to place, and country to country ; so that at last Alectus was glad to retire himself within the fortifications of London, whither Asclepiodotus pursued him, and laid siege about the city, provoking him to battle, who, at length, issuing out with his forces, many were slain on both sides, but in the end, Alectus was slain, after he had 6 years governed the land.

When Livius Gallus, a Roman captain, understood the death of their general, he, with the survivors of the army, retired into the city for his best security, where, for a while, I leave him,



CONTENTS OF CHAPTER FOURTH.

THE duke of Cornwall made king of Britain—How Walbrook took its first name—Constantine the Roman marrieth with Helena, daughter to king Coill, and is made king—His reign and burial—His son Constantine made king after him, who was called the Great, and was the first Christian emperor—His great devotion, and after falling into heresy—Octavian his deputy in Britain, usurpeth, and afterwards made king—Maximian, a Roman, by marriage with his daughter, succeeds him, &c.

ASCLEPIODOTUS, duke of Cornwall, began his dominion over the Britains, in the year of grace 232, who entered the city of London, before by him besieged; where he slew this Livius Gallus, near unto a brook which ran then through a part of the city, from whom it was called Gallus, or Wallusbrook, and the street Wallbrook, even unto these times. Thus having quite vanquished the Romans, he governed the realm in great peace, exercising justice, exalting meriting and good men, and punishing the refractory, and evilly disposed, till at length, a great discontent (stirred up by wicked and seditious persons) was raised between him and Coillus or Coill, who was then earl or duke of Kaircollin, or Colchester, so that they assembled their several forces, and met in battle, in which conflict Asclepiodotus was slain, after he had governed the realm (according to the most writers) 30 years.

Then Coill began his dominion over the land in the year of the incarnation 262, who governed peaceably for a time, for the senate of Rome was glad of the death of the former king, who had been a great enemy and persecutor of their nation, and being then in great trouble amongst themselves, could not conveniently send over fresh forces into the land, but at length their domestick discords being

comprehended, and the state settled in peace, hearing that this Coill also denied them the tribute, they sent hither a noble and prudent prince, called Constantius, with a puissant army, against whom, Coill assembled his Britains, but greatly dreading the power of this Roman president, he sent to him to commune and treat of peace, with the acknowledgment of the tribute due unto the senate, of which assurance being given and taken on both sides, Coill died within a month after, having governed the Britains for the term of 27 years.

Constantius, at the intercession of the nobles of the land, took to wife Helena, daughter to the late king, with the entire possession of the realm, and was inaugurated in the year 289. This Helena was held to be the fairest lady in the whole land, and withal very well versed in literature and language, by whom he received a son called Constantine—This Constantine, being of great courage and valour, ambitious to add into his dominion, subdued the Almaines or Germans, and slew of them in battle 60000, and after many other victories, the two emperors, Dioclesianus and Maximinianus, resigned their imperial dignity to Constantius, making one Galerius a partner with him in the empire; which these two Cæsars divided between them. Galerius governed the east, that is, Illyricum and all Græcia, with the islands; and Constantius Italy, and the western kingdoms: afterwards, he subdued Spain, and a great part of Gallia or France; of which two kingdoms, he made his son Constantine president and governor. In the time that Constantius was king of Britain, under the two foresaid emperors, St. Alban was martyred at Verulam, in the 10th persecution of the church, which began in the 18th year of Dioclesian, and endured for the space of 10 years, which was so violent and cruel, that in the space of one month were martyred 17000 holy men and women for the faith of Christ. This noble prince, Constantius, after he had governed Britain and the western part of the empire, for the term of 30 years, leaving his successor Constantine, his son, by the famous queen Helena.

Who began his reign in the year of grace 319, and at the decease of his father was busied in the wars of Gallia, but hearing the report of his death, came over into Britain, and was made king. He was of a noble and affable

condition, who, though he was a pagan and disbeliever, yet, he used no tyranny over his subjects, neither compelled them to the worship of idols, but to use their own laws, with liberty and freedom of conscience: whilst he thus governed Britain, with the western part of the empire, one Maxentius, son to Hercules Maximianus, who was partner with Dioclesian in the imperial purple, was, by assent of the senate, chosen Cæsar; who, first insinuated with all cunning affability into the hearts of the plebeian multitude; but when he found himself strong in their opinions, he exercised all tyranny that could possibly be devised, especially against the christians. He likewise expelled his father Maximianus from Rome, who sought to be again emperor, with other great oppressions used against the senate and prime nobility; of which, Constantine having intelligence, he assembled a strong host of Britains and Gauls to suppress his great pride and insolence: leaving, in his absence, a great duke called Octavius, or Octavian, to govern the land of Britain, as his vicegerent or deputy.

Constantine, having settled the state here, being on his journey, he saw, (as in a vision) being on his bed, a cross shining in the firmament, held by an angel, who said into him, *Constantine in hoc signo vinces*, that is, O Constantine, under this sign or banner thou shalt have victory. After which, awaking, and considering well of his vision or dream, he called his chief captains about him, and acquainted them therewith, presently giving order to all his ensigns, escutcheons, and banners: being thus accommodated, he marched against the tyrant Maxentius, and met him at a bridge, called Pont Milvium, where, after a long fight, he chased him and his whole army, where a great part of them were drowned in the river, with himself also, when he had ruled, as Cæsar, about 5 years. After which victory, Constantine marched to Rome, where he was received of the senate and people, with great honour and triumph. Soon after, he received the christian faith, and was baptized by Sylvester, the first of that name, bishop of Rome; which done, he opened the prisons, and destroyed the temples of the false gods, and dedicated others to the true and everliving God, pulling down their idols, and opening those christian oratories that had been shut, commanding divine service to be said in them. He

was the first also, that gave any possessions to the church of Rome, and ordained that the bishop of Rome should be chief Bishop, and all others should be obedient unto him, (which was before any superstition crept into the church) he also bore clay and stones upon his shoulders to the foundation of the great Church dedicated to St. Peter.

Whilst Constantine thus laboured to plant the Christian faith, his mother Helena being then in Britain, sent unto him commendatory letters, gratulating his great victories, in which, she seemed that he had suppressed idols, and demolished their temples; but wondered that he had chosen for his God, a man who had been nailed to a cross, &c. to which, he returned her answer, that he would sufficiently prove the God whom he had honoured and worshipped, was the Creator of mankind and Maker of the world and all creatures therein, and not man only, but God and man, &c. For proof of which, after she had assembled a synod of Jews to the number of 140, Sylvester, with other Christian clerks, were appointed to dispute with them concerning the faith and gospel; in which arguing the Jews were confounded, and she converted, and was a constant professor of the true faith and religion all her life-time after. I leave what the Legend relates concerning her seeking and finding the true cross, and the nails with which our blessed Saviour was fastened thereto, and returned to her son the emperor, who greatly enlarged the famous city Byzantium, and beautified it with stately and sumptuous buildings, and for the pleasure which he took in the situation thereof, made it his royal seat, and caused it to be called after his name Constantinople, which is the city of Constantine. He was also of such power and might in arms, that he purchased to himself the title of Constantine the Great.

He was, moreover, stiled the first Christian emperor, and did many things for the upholding of the faith; of which, seven, by a learned author, are especially noted. 1st, That Christ, our blessed Saviour, should be worshipped as God, throughout his whole dominions. 2ndly, That what man or woman soever spake any blasphemy against him, should most severely be punished. 3rdly, That person who did any violence or injury to a Christian

man, because he was of that belief, should forfeit half his goods and possessions. 4thly, That as the emperor of Rome is head of all temporal princes, so the bishop of Rome should be chief of all ecclesiastical prelates. 5thly, That who so fled to a church for refuge, and made it his sanctuary, should be free from molestation and danger. 6thly, That no man should offer to erect any church or temple without the leave and licence of the bishop of that diocese. 7thly, That every prince should give the tenth part of his revenues towards the maintenance of churches and temples, which law, for example sake, he confirmed by contributing unto them from his own possessions. After all which care of his, to establish the true faith and gospel, he fell into the detestable heresy of the Arians, and banished bishop Sylvester beforenamed; and prosecuted many zealous and godly professors, and after which, (as mine author affirmeth) he was struck with an incurable leprosy. But now I return to Octavian, whom he left his substitute in Britain.

Who, during the long absence of the emperor, ruled the land to the great content of the natives; but, when he had thoroughly invested himself into the hearts of the people, and thinking his lord so far remote, and could not easily be drawn from so great a charge as the government of both the eastern and western empires, he thought to usurp the title of king, and to that purpose distressed such Romans as Constantine left here in the land, and so took upon him the sole sovereignty; of which, when the emperor had notice, he sent hither in all haste, a prince called Treharne, who was uncle to his mother Helena, with three legions of Romans, every legion consisting of 6600 and six knights, whom Octavian met in battle near unto Portchester, or as some authors write, near Winchester, and compelled Treharne to forsake the field, and fly towards Scotland, whither Octavian pursued him, and gave him a second battle, where he and the Britains were discomfited, and himself with some few, took shipping, and sailed to Norway, but not long after, he returned into England, with a strong army of Britains and Norways, in which interim, a British earl who greatly loved Octavian, slew Treharn, so that with little difficulty he subdued the rest of the commons, who were left without a

commander, and repossessed the land, which was from the time that Constantine made him governor or protector of the land, 10 years.

Octavian thus re-instated, gathered great riches and treasure, insomuch that he feared not the power of any foreign prince, and ruled the nation in great peace and quietness, who, being grown aged and full of years, by the counsel of some of his British noblemen, he sent one Mauritius, son to Caradock, duke of Cornwall, into Rome, for an hopeful young gentleman called Maximian, who was near allied to Helena the mother of Constantine, that he would come into this land, and by marrying his only daughter, might enjoy the kingdom of Britain after him. Though divers persuaded him to confer that honour upon Conon Meriadock his near cousin, but the former motion prevailed. And Maximian the son of Leonine, brother to Helen, and uncle to Constantine the Great, was sent over with the before-named Mauritius, and with a sufficient guard of Romans, landed safely at the port of Southampton: which Conon Meriadock hearing, he gathered a company of his friends and kinsmen, and because the other came to dispossess him of that which he held to be his right, he purposed to ambush him in the way, and give him battle; which being told to the king, he, by his wisdom and power, prevented it, so that Maximian came peaceably to court, unto whom the king gave his daughter, and the land with her for her dower, and died soon after, when he had nobly and peaceably governed the kingdom for the space of 54 years.



CONTENTS OF CHAPTER FIFTH.

Maximian made king of Britain, and after Emperor—How Armoria came to be called little Britain, and this, Britain the great—Of Ursula, and the eleven thousand Virgins—Gratian the last Roman that was king of the land—The great distresses of the kingdom—the cessation of their tribute paid to Rome—Constantine, brother to Aldroenus, made king of the realm, his death and issue.

MAXIMIAN the son of Leonine, and cousin german to Constantine the Great, was made king of

Britain, in the year of grace 382, who proved a vallant and victorious prince, but somewhat proud, and withal a persecutor of the Christians. And first there was great strife betwixt him and Conon, with sundry conflicts, in which they spread diversly, but at length they were reconciled and made friends. So that he reigned for a time in great peace; in which interim, he gathered together much treasure and riches; at last he was accited to move war against the Gauls, and landed with a great host in Armorica, now called little Britain, which, after he had subdued by the sword, he gave it to Conon Meriadock to hold of him, and of the kings of great Britain forever: commanding from that time Armorica to be called little Britain, and this land Britain the great; for which victory and others, his knights proclaimed him emperor, which increased both his pride and tyranny, so that he invaded the lands of the empire, and conquered a great part both of France and Germany, which was contrary to his oath before sworn to the two emperors, Gratian and Valentinian; to whom when tidings was brought of this his invasion, Gratian prepared to resist him, but fearing his power and potency, fled to Lyons, where he was slain, and Valentinian compelled to forsake Rome, and fly to Constantinople; then Maximian made his son victor-fellow with him in the empire.

During whose wars in Italy, Conon Meriadock not willing that he, or his people, should marry with any of the French Nation, sent messengers to Dionotus duke of Cornwall, and governor of the kingdom under Maximian, to send him his daughter Ursula, with a certain number of Virgins to be coupled to him and his knights in marriage: who, according to his request, sent his daughter with 11000 maids towards Britain to that purpose, who, by the way, were taken at sea, and piteously murdered; who so will know the manner thereof, I refer them to the legend of saints. Maximian thus tyrannizing in Italy, two great commanders, called Guanus and Melga, were sent into Britain to chastise all such as favoured the party of Maximian, who did here much outrage upon the natives, afflicting them with great strage and massacre. Against whom the emperor sent a great captain called Gracianus or Gracian, with two legions, who so knightly behaved

himself, that he chased them in a short space into Ireland, holding the land in peace for Maximian. In this interim, Maximian continuing wars against the empire to be absolute Cæsar. Theodosius, surnamed the elder, then emperor of the east part of the world, hearing the death of the first Gracian, and the chasing of Valentinian; he with a mighty host sped himself to meet with Maximian, and gave him a battle at Aquilæa, a great city in Italy, in which Maximian's forces were utterly discomfited, and himself taken prisoner, whose head Theodosius commanded to be cut off; of whose death Gracian his deputy in Britain having knowledge, seized the land to his own use; after that Maximian had governed the same for the term of 8 years.

Gracian, who of some writers is called Municeps (which word may be diversly taken, either for an hired or waged knight, or for a keeper of presents and gifts, or bearing chief rule in a city or province) began his dominion over the Britains, in the year of grace 390. He exercised great exaction and tyranny on his subjects, for which he was very much hated and despised amongst them, so that they sundry ways laboured his supplantation, and hourly insidiated his life; but after many dangers escaped, they with a common assent invaded his palace, and slew him, when he had reigned, or rather usurped, for the space of 4 years.

Of whose death Guanus and Melga having knowledge, they returned out of Ireland, and with fire and sword made great havock in the land, of which the Romans understanding, because the realm was then under their tribute and tuition, they sent one Constantine to have the rule of the land, and the regions about. But being found to be an enemy to the empire, for divers outrages done by him, during his regency in France, therefore, by the commandment of Honorius (then Cæsar) they sent against him a valiant captain, named Constantius, who slew him near to a town, called Arelat. After which, the Britains were much distressed by the Picts, the Scots, and other strange nations; by reason whereof, they were again constrained to send to Rome for aid, with a covenant that they would all continue subjects and servants to the senate. Upon which request and promise, the emperor Honorius himself came hither in person, and chased hence all their

foreign enemies, and leaving the land in peace, returned to his greater affairs in Italy.

Who no sooner departed, than the same enemies again invaded them, to whom Honorius sent a second deliverance, exhorting them withal to be manly and courageous, but in regard of the remoteness of the place and the great troubles the empire was therein, to trust to their own valour and fortune, but to expect no more supplies either from Caesar or senate; the Roman supplies being then took out of the land, to maintain the imperial wars, the natives were worse distressed than before, for the Picts and Scots came out of their dens and caves, where they had concealed themselves, and invaded them by multitudes; insomuch, that by the enemies spoils and robberies, they were brought to that extremity of poverty and misery, that they were enforced to pilfer and steal one from another; in which sundry murders were also committed, so that the ground lay unsowed, or manured, upon which great dearth and hunger immediately ensued.

Which to prevent, and withal to rid them from these great extremities, the best amongst them petitioned unto Actius, (who was master of the chivalry of Honorius the emperor, and at that time governed France) to commiserate their estate, which to him, they most passionately expressed; but all was to no purpose, for he slightly put them off with a peremptory denial to lend them any succour at all; still their calamities augmented, and their famine increased, so that lastly the noblest and discreetest among them, especially the arch-bishop of London, whose name was Guethelinus, whom our English chronicle call Gosseline, concluded to send an embassy to the king of little Britain, whose name was Aldroenus, which this arch-bishop, being learned and well spoken in person, undertook, who delivered their calamities and distresses with such passionate efficacy that it wrought great commiseration and compassion in the king; who, after advice taken of his lords, granted them a supply of sufficient forces to recover their franchises and liberties upon condition, that if God, who is the Lord of hosts, gave them victory, they should crown his brother Constantine king of great Britain, acknowledging him their liege and sovereign; which con-

ditions they gladly accepted, and swore to perform with all truth and fidelity.

Now it appeareth from the time of Gratian, the last Roman that was king of the land, the nation of the Britains during their multiplicity of miseries, were without a monarch or sole sovereign for the space of 39 years, till the coming in of the forenamed Constantine, brother to Aldroenus, king of Little Britain.

It is further to be observed, that here ended the tribute and dominion of the Romans; neither had any of that nation any rule over the land after that time; which tribute lasted, and was paid to Rome from the ninth year of king Cassibelan, to the days of the emperor Severus, amounting to 255 years. And from the reign of Severus to the first year of Gratian 185; and from the first of Gratian to the last year of their great misery (before expressed) 43 years; so that from the time that Julius Cæsar made this isle first tributary to the Roman empire, to the coming in of Constantine, amounteth to 481 years. After this small digression, and yet worthy observation, I return to the passages and proceeding in this land of Britain, and how it was governed.

The arch-bishops, with lords of the realm, having sealed to the covenants before-named, they returned with a sufficient army, under the conduct and command of duke Constantine, and safely arrived at Totness, in Devonshire, (the place where Brute landed, the first prince and planter of this island) whither assembled all the flower of the nation, who, before were compelled to hide themselves in dens and caves, and to seek shelter among rocks and mountains; by whose power and martial progress, all the enemies of the land were routed and chased, not one daring to shew his head. After which victory, the land being again settled in peace and quietness, they conveyed their captain, Constantine, to the tower of Kaercegent, now called Cicester, and according to their former covenants made with Aldroenus, saluted him as their chief lord and sovereign, and there crowned him king in the year of our blessed Saviour's incarnation 433.

This Constantine governed the realm with great man-

hood and police, so that he was not more beloved at home than dreaded abroad. Notwithstanding, of any foreign achievement done by him, the English Annals make no mention, neither of any memorable thing performed by him in his own kingdom, save that he kept it in great tranquillity and rest, and that he received by his wife three sons, the eldest named Constant or Constantius, the second Aurelius Ambrosius, the third Uterpendragon, all which in process succeeded him in the sovereignty: but for Constant the eldest, being somewhat heavy and dull witted, thinking him not able to take upon him any regal sovereignty, especially to govern so noble a nation, he caused him to be shorne a monk, and put him into the monastery of saint Amphiable, afterwards called saint Swithins at Winchester, and the other two being then but young children, he committed to guardianship of the before-remembered Gosselin, arch-bishop of London. In the court of this Constantine was a certain Pict or Scot, much favoured by the king, and on whom he had conferred many graces and honours, making him of his closet counsel, and a partaker with him in all his secrets, which perfidious and ungrateful traitor, watching his opportunity, slew him in his chamber when he had ruled the land ten years.

There lived at that time in the land a potent duke called Vortigerus, or Vortigernus, who was a man wonderously politick, and exceedingly ambitious; who taking the advantage of the time, knowing the stupidity of the eldest son and the inability of the two younger, (in regard of their minority) to reign, he coloured his aspiring to the crown by a notable project, for he pretending the right of the eldest brother, had it as a matter of conscience to make him king; and therefore took him out of the former monastery, and invested him in the throne, in the year of grace 443; by which means he had the sole management of the whole kingdom and Constantine, the name only, whom, after, he, in a short time, supplanted, and reigned in his stead; in whose days Ambrosius Merlinus, the subject of our discourse, was born and uttered his predictions, &c.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER SIXTH.

A necessary digression shewing the lives and reigns of 33 kings of Britain, scarcely mentioned by any of our English remembrancers, with an exact computation of the times, &c.

TO make the former passages the more plain to the reader, it is fit to keep a true computation of the times, and looking back into our former historical narration, perfect those things which were left doubtful, especially in the Inter-regnum before spoken of; in which the names of many kings, princes, and governors of the kingdom were concealed. Divers historiographers, who write the passages of those times, reckon from the last year of Eliodure, to the first of Hely, the father of king Lud, 186 years; during which times, here reigned 33 kings, (according to Galfridus and others) whose names thus follow, Gorbogi (whom Lanquet the chronicler calleth Reniangay) son to Gorbomanus, reigned for the term of 10 years, after him, Morgan, 14 years, whom succeeded Emerianus, or Emerian, who held the principality seven years. Iual, called also Ival, followed him, and swayed the sceptre 20 years; after whom came Rimo, and held the dominion over the Britains 16 years; after whose expiration, Geruntius, was, by the general suffrage of the peers and people, admitted to the throne, and governed in great peace and prosperity 20 complete years; who, no sooner expired, but they made election of Catellus or Catel, who ruled without any great molestation or disturbance 10 years, and then left the dominion to Coill, who ruled with great humanity and gentleness for the space of 20 years, and dying in a mature age, yielded up the crown and sceptre into the hands of Porrex, who kept and maintained them, though with some difficulty, five years, resigned the principality to Cherimus, who tyrannizing over the people, was supplanted, being compelled to yield up all his power and authority, after he had governed but 12 months, into the hands of Fulgen, or Fulgentius, who kept it peaceably, and, to the great liking and applause both of the peers and commons, three years and some odd months, who had no sooner yielded to the common fate, due to all mortality, but Eliud, by some writers called Eldred, stepped into his room, but enjoyed it but for a season, for he died within the compass

of one year, after he came to take upon him the sovereignty.

Then Androgeus aspired into the regal dignity, but bore him so proudly and haughtily in his sovereignty, that his subjects unanimously consented and made an insurrection against him, surprizing him in his palace, and forcing him to give up his sword and sceptre, after he had tyraanized one whole year, to his son Urian, who sat on the throne but three years, and then yielded up his due to nature, after whom Eliud was invested in the state, who (as the rest of his predecessors) left little or nothing behind him worthy of memory, and when he had been king five years, departed this life; Galfridus reckoneth three other kings successively to follow Eliud, namely, Dedacus, Cloterus, and Gunguintus, but Lanquet (an author well approved) will not admit them into his chronicle, I, therefore, proceed with the rest.

It is agreed by all, that Merianus was king, and two years enjoyed the principality, but of what condition he was, there is left no memory to posterity. Four years also reigned his successor Bledinus, whom some call Bladunus, a man raised to that honour by his valour, but being descended from obscure parents, and therefore not knowing himself well in his greatness, (as is commonly seen by many) it was the cause of shortening both of his life and sovereignty, for he was slain by the treason of his own servants; of whose treacherous murder, Capenus taking advantage, being a potent lord, and in great opinion with the people, he so far insinuated into their affections, that, with an unanimous suffrage, they proclaimed him king, (for his predecessor died, and left no heir behind him) in which authority he demeaned himself like a royal and worthy prince, and when he had swayed the sceptre three years, he died, being very aged, and much lamented.

Him succeeded one Owen, a Cambrian Briton, who, though he could neither claim the privilege of blood, birth, or title, yet being valiant, prosperous in all his martial employments, as managing the wars under Capenus, by whom he was greatly honoured, being also

politic and wise, and a good soldier, so a discreet statesman, he was thought the worthiest then in the kingdom to take upon him the dominion of the realm, and so ended some troubles raised in his predecessor's days, by his valour and wisdom he brought to a happy issue, and so died a single man, after he had two years governed the kingdom. Next to him was inaugurated Sisilius, otherwise called Cecilius, who bore himself with great humanity and affability during the time of his living, a subject studying popularity, and by sundry ways insinuating himself into the hearts of the people, but when he came to the regal title, and that the power and sovereignty was wholly at his own disposal, he then began to express his natural avaritious conditions, by exacting on the commons, imposing divers taxes and tributes upon them, by which they were sore vexed and grieved, insomuch that a rumour was raised amongst them, which they first only whispered, but at length, animated by their intolerable impositions, they feared not to clamour aloud that their former king died, not without suspicion of poison, of which they spared not to accuse him, not only as an accessory, but the prime causer and procurer thereof: and therefore, rising in arms against him, they drove him to that narrow exigent, that he was forced to fly from one place of refuge to another; who, at length, gathering some few forces about him, gave them battle, in which he was slain, after he had governed the kingdom two years; after whom, Blegabredus reigned in his stead; this man had in him more music than majesty, for he was held most excellent both in minstrelsey and poesy, so that he seemed to be a son, or at least minion of Apollo, for he not only composed his own hymns and ditties, but set them, and then sung and played to them, and because it was an art rare in those times, and practised by few, especially by any of generous condition and quality, being excellent and eminent in a prince, he was therefore by it the more honoured and admired, who, having swayed the sceptre 20 years, departed this life, leaving to succeed him his brother Archemail, who was of a more stern and robustuous nature, a man unlettered, and therefore a contemner of all arts and sciences, who, after he had governed the realm two years, (but with

more austerity and rigour than his brother before him had done) in a full age expired.

After him reigned Eldon, or Eldol, no son, but a kinsman (for the two brothers died issueless) who was a man of peace, therefore the more endeared into the hearts of his subjects, under whose reign they lived in great rest and prosperity, gathering great store of wealth about them, during the four years of his reign, after which season, he changed this life for a new, being much lamented of his people, after whose death, stepped up into the throne, Rodrech, or Rodian, a man not (like his predecessor) beloved, as being litigious, and always in contention with the commons, as holding them in contempt, only favouring the nobility and gentry, and to prefer and advance them, greatly oppressed the other, extorting from them by sundry exactions, for which he grew into great hatred amongst them: of which, having intelligence, he thought severely to punish them by arms, but was prevented by death, after he had governed the kingdom not fully four years. In his place reigned Samuel Pennisel, whom some writers would make two men, (but their judgments are not altogether approved) this man, with great care and industry, sought and laboured to pacify the tumults and combustions before raised, and to that purpose, kept the nobility and gentry more short, so that he suffered them not, as before, to insult and tyrannize over the country, but granted to them sundry immunities and privileges, for which, he was greatly beloved by them, but left the world, after he had five years swayed the sceptre; whom Pyrphyrus next succeeds, a man much affected by the people, and fortunate in all things, saving his short reign, who died after two years sovereignty.

Capoyr came next to the crown, and governed an equal time with them, of whom no memorable thing is recorded, for in two years reign, a prince hath scarcely time to express himself, what manner of king he would be, whether a tyrant, or father of his people, whether addicted to peace or war; he left one to succeed him named Gligurt Divill, who was a prince very sober and discreet in all his actions, and was an upright justicer, maintaining good

laws in his dominions, but reigned four years only. His son Hely succeeded him, before spoken of, so that all the time of these several kings' reigns, by those, who write contemporaries of the passages of seasons, and sought to reconcile them, by their computation, amounteth to 124 years. Thus, desiring the reader to excuse this necessary digression, without which, there must needs be a great maim in the chronicle. I now fall punctually upon Merlin's prophecies, continuing them, and confirming their truth by chronology, from the time in which he uttereth them, to the reign of king Charles, our royal lord and sovereign, &c.



A
TRUE HISTORY
OF THE
STRANGE BIRTH
OF
AMBROSIUS MERLIN,
AND HIS
Wonderful Prophecies.



A TRUE HISTORY, &c.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER FIRST.

Of the birth of Merlin, sur- | was a Christian or no, and by
named Ambrosius, whether he | what spirit he prophesied.

TO prophets there be several attributes given, some are called prophetæ, some vates, others videntes; that is, prophets, predictors and seers, and these have been from all antiquity. The name of prophets was, and ought to be peculiar to those that dealt only in divine mysteries, and spake to the people the words which the Almighty did dictate unto them concerning those things which should futurely happen, and such also are called in the holy text seers; but vates was a title promiscuously conferred on prophets and poets, as belonging to them both: of the first were Moses, Samuel, David, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Daniel, and the rest, whose divine oracles were extant in the old Testament, others there were in the time of the gospel, as John the Baptist, of whom our Saviour himself witnesseth, that he was not only a prophet, but more than a prophet; and we read in the Acts of the Apostles, Chap. 11, 27. *And in those days also came prophets from Jerusalem to Antiochia. And there stood up one of them called Agabus, and signified by the spirit, that there should be great famine in all the world, which came to pass under Claudius Cæsar.* Of the vatical or prophetic poets among the Greeks, were Orpheus, Linus, Homer, Hesiod, &c. and amongst the Latins, Publius, Virgilius, Maro, with others.

But, before I come to enquire in which of those lists, this, our countryman, Merlin, whose surname was Ambrosius, ought to be filed. It is needful that I speak something

of his birth and parents. His mother being certain, but his father doubtful, (for so our most ancient Chronologers have left them) that is, whether he were, according to nature, begot by a man and a woman, or according to his mother's confession, that he was conceived by the compression of a fantastical spiritual creature, without a body, which may be easily believed to be a mere fiction, or excuse to mitigate her fault, (being a royal Virgin, the daughter of king Demetius) or to conceal the person of her sweetheart, by disclosing of whose name she had undoubtedly exposed him to imminent danger; and this is most probable. And yet we read that the other fantastical congression is not impossible; for Speusippus, the son of Plato's sister, and Elarchus the Sophist, and Amaxilides, in the second book of his philosophy, affirm in the honour of Plato, that his mother, Perictione, having congression with the imaginary shadow of Apollo, conceived, and brought into the world him who proved to be the prince of philosophers.

Apuleius also, in his book, intituled, *De Socratis Dæmonio*, of Socrates his Dæmon, or Genius, writes at large, that betwixt the moon and the earth spirits inhabit, called Incubi, of which opinion Plato was also, who saith, That their harbour was between the moon and the earth, in the moist part of the air. A kind of Dæmons which he thus defines; a living creature, moist, rational, immortal and passible, whose property is to envy men; because to that place from whence they were precipitated, by their pride, man by his humility is preferred; and of these, some are so libidinous and luxurious, that sometimes taking humane shape upon them, they will commix themselves with women, and generate children, from whence they have the name of Incubi, whom the Romans called Fauni, and Sicarii; and of such St. Augustine, in his book, *De civitate Dei*, makes mention.

It further may be questioned, Whether he was a Christian or a Gentile? as also by what spirit he prophesied? a Pythonick or Divine; that is, by the devil, who spake delusively in the oracle of Apollo; or by holy and celestial revelation? For the first, it is not to be doubted but he was a Christian, as being of the British nation. This kingdom having for the space of 200 and odd years before his birth,

received the Gospel under king Lucius, the first king of this land, by the substitutes of Pope Eleutherius, by whose preaching, the king, and a great part of his people, quite renounced all pagan idolatry, and were baptized into the Christian faith. But by what spirit he so truly predicted, is only known to the God of all spirits, who, in every nation and language, pick'd out some choice persons, by whose mouths he would have uttered things which should futurely happen to posterity, according to his divine will and pleasure; and amongst these was this our Merlin. To prove the former,

Holy Job was but a Gentile, a man of the land of Chus, yet none of the holy prophets of the Lord did more plainly, more faithfully, and more pathetically acknowledged Christ and the resurrection than himself, when he saith in a most raptured emphasis: Job 19. v. 23. *O that my words were now written! O that they were printed in a book! that they were graven with an iron pen and lead, in the rock for ever! For I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth. And though after my skin, worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God: whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another; though my reins be consumed within me.*

Neither was this any wonder in blessed Job, whose like for holiness and uprightness of life, was not to be found upon the face of the whole earth; when even all the Sibils who were Prophetesses and Virgins, and Gentiles of several nations, (for so Varro affirms) predicted not only of the incarnation, passion, and death of our blessed Saviour, but of his second coming to judgment, of the consummation and dissolution of the world, the resurrection of all flesh, the glory of the saints, and the condemnation of the reprobates; especially Sibylla Cumana, whom the renowned doctors of the church, and more especially saint Augustine, quoted in her prophecies, and not thought them altogether unworthy to be remembered in their works; of which also, Virgil makes mention in his 4th Eclogue: in which saint Augustine himself witnesseth that he (though a heathen) predicted the incarnation of our blessed Sa-

viour; for he insinuates, that he is to speak of a great mystery in his first words, which are these:

Sicelides Musæ, paulo majora canamus.

As speaking to the Muses, or invoking their assistance, that he is now to sing of more stupendious and high things; and a little after, it followeth,

Ultima jam venit Cumæi carminis ætas:

That is, now is fulfilled the prophesy of Sibylla Cumana (so called from Cuma, once a famous city in Greece, where she was born) he further proceedeth,

*Magnus ab integro seclorum voloitur ordo,
Jam redit & virgo, redeunt Saturnia regna,
Jam nova progenies cælo demittitur alto.*

Intimating in those words, that by revolution, the great order and course of the world should feel a change, which was not from the beginning, and that now the celestial maid (which figured justice) or the mother of the most righteous should return, and that we should see again those innocent and blessed days, which were in the reign of Saturn, (which was called the golden world) and that a new birth should be sent down to the earth from the highest heaven, meaning our blessed Saviour, God and man, born of the immaculate virgin Mary: nay, further in the two subsequent verses, he implies, that he came to take away the sins of the world, which are these:

*Quo duce, si qua manent sceleris vestigia nostri,
Irrita perpetua solvant formidine terras.*

So much for Virgil. There are divers other prophets of the Gentiles, both men and women, as Cassandra, Chrysis, Phiomæne, &c. And what shall we think of Balaam? whose oracles Moses inserted in the sacred text, and whose prophecies the great clerks and doctors of the church, have expounded in large voluminous works; yet for this person, some have held him for no better than a soothsayer or a wisard, and hired for a reward to curse the children of Israel, God's selected people: and they

by his counsel after inticed to fornication and idolatry, of whom the blessed apostle saint Peter, in the second Chapter of his second Epistle, and fourteenth verse, gives him this character (speaking of such whose hearts were exercised in covetousness, and children of the curse) *who, forsaking the right way have gone astray, following the way of Balaam, the son of Bosar, who loved the wages of unrighteousness, but he was rebuked for his iniquity:* for the dumb beast speaking with man's voice, forbade the foolishness of the prophet. These former examples may beget an hesitation or doubt, by which of the two spirits, the good or bad, our countryman, Merlin, uttered his prediction.

But whosoever shall make question of the true events of his prophecies, I shall refer him to the reading of that most excellent orator, Polyhistor, and theologist of his time, Alanus de Insulis, a German doctor, for his admirable and multifarious learning, surnamed Universalis, and rector of the Parisian academy, in his explanation or comment upon Merlin's Prophecies; the original being extracted out of Jeffery of Monmouth, part of his words are these: "In all his prophecies I find nothing dissonant, incongruous, or absurd, nor any thing foreign, or averse from truth. And those who shall live in ages to come, shall find those his predictions as constantly to happen in their days (according to the limit of time) as we have hitherto found them certain and infallible, even to the age in which we now live." And for these signs and tokens which before the consummation of the world shall appear, he divineth and foretelleth of them in the sun and moons, and the other five planets; Juno, Mars, Mercury, Venus, Saturn, and other stars, how they shall confound and alter their courses which they had in the creation, according to that in the holy evangelist saint Luke, chap. 21. v. 25. "Then there shall be signs in the sun and the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth trouble amongst the nations with perplexity, the sea and the waters shall roar, and men's hearts shall fail them for fear, and for looking after those things which shall come in the world, for the powers of heaven shall be shaken, &c." But of the new heaven and the new earth, and the resurrection of the dead to new life, how truly he

spake according to the prophetical, evangelical, and ap-
tological traditions; it is manifest, that he no way deviated
erred from the orthodoxal Christian faith; and so my
doctor Alanus concerning the truth of his prophecies, to
whom I conclude this first chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER SECOND.

In whose reign Merlin was born. How the state of Britain stood in those days, with divers necessary Occurrences pertinent to the Story.

THE better to illustrate this our history of Merlin, (the subject now in agitation) it is necessary that I shew you in what king's reign he was born; in what state the kingdom stood at that time; and how our prophet came to be first known in court. He was born in the reign of king Vortigern, who, by usurpation, aspired to the crown; who, being a potent duke of the Britains after the death of Constantius, took his son Constantine out of a monastery (being a simple man and incapable of so great a charge, and made him king) so that duke Vortigern, being a popular man, had the whole government of the land, and Constantine only the name of king, who, taking advantage of his sovereign's easy nature and mild disposition, cast in his thoughts how, by the death of his lord and master, to compass the crown to himself; and to accomplish his ambitious design, he placed as a guard about him an hundred Picts and Scots, whom he so bribed with continual gifts and rewards, that they feared not openly to say that Vortigern better deserved the imperial dignity than Constantine; in which interim, he got into his possession all the treasure, howsoever divers thereat grudged; and the strangers in hope to purchase his greater favour, took their opportunity to lay violent hands upon the king, and presented his head to Vortigern, being then at London.

Who, in his crocodile coming, and to blind the eyes of the Britains, to make them think he had no hand in his death, wept exceedingly, and made great shew of sorrow; and to express his great justice, caused all those honoured knights to be beheaded according to the laws of the kingdom, by which he was held both by the peers and

people innocent of the treason; but those that had the guardianship of the king's two younger brothers, Aurelius and Uter, the one surnamed Ambrosius, the other Pendragon, fearing the power and potency of Vortigern, fled with them into little Britain, where they continued: yet it pleased God otherwise to dispose of them.

Then was Vortigern, by a general and unanimous consent crowned king in the year of the incarnation of our blessed Saviour 448; but it was not long ere the Picts and Scots, having knowledge of the death of their countrymen, invaded the land with great hostility, in so much that he was no way able to withstand their malice and fury: in this great distress, retiring himself to Canterbury; news was brought him of their great ships, full of ammunition and armed men, landed in the isle of Tenet. At first he feared that they were the late king's brothers, Ambrose and Uter, who came to lay claim to the kingdom, but finding them to be strangers, he sent to know of what nation they were, and the purpose of their landing: who returned him answer, that they were Saxons, so called of a province in Germany; who came to seek adventures abroad; and, since fortune had brought them into this land, they besought him to receive them into service, as being both ready and able to be his faithful soldiers, and to fight for him in the defence of his country against all foreign invaders, and their captains were two brothers, Hengist and Horsus.

The king, in regard of his present necessity, which, much moved him to correspondency, was exceedingly glad of their liberal proffer, and accepted of them; yet, sorry that they were miscreants, and of the pagan belief, for, as the Reverend Bede hath left recorded, with Gulielmus de Regibus. They, at that time, worshipped an idol or false god, called Woden, and a goddess named Fria, in the honour of which god, they called one day of the week Woden's-day, which we term Wednesday; and another, in honour of the goddess Fria, Frisday, by us still continuing the name Friday. But, it followeth in the story, Vortimer, by the aid of these Saxons, having freed his land from all foreign enemies. Hengist, in reward for his former service, demanded of the king so much ground as the hide of a bull would compass; which request appeared to the king so reasonable, that he easily granted

it; which skin, he caused to be cut into small and slender thongs, with which he measured a large circuit of earth, upon which he built a great and strong fort, which he called Thonge Castle, which standeth in the county of Linsey.

When news arrived in Germany of the plenty and goodness of this land, with all the commodities thereto belonging, they came hither in multitudes, covenanting with the Britains, that they should only intend their tillage and husbandry, and themselves would, as their soldiers, defend the land from all incursions and invasions, demanding for that service only competent means and wages; in which interim, Hengist sent for sixteen sail more, well furnished with men, and all necessary provision. In which fleet came also his daughter Rowen, a beautiful lady; concerning whom, to cut off all circumstances, Hengist invited the king to his new castle, where his fair daughter gave him entertainment, with whose beauty he became so surprised, and perditely enamoured, that for her sake, he repudiated his lawful wife, by whom he had three noble sons, Vortimerus, Catagrinus, and Pascentius, to marry with this young Saxon lady; and that he might enjoy her, gave to her father the dukedom or province of Kent, though Garagonus, then lord thereof, with divers others of the British peers, thereat much grudged.

For which, and many other honours and revenues conferred upon the Saxons, as also, that he left his own Christian consort, to marry with an infidel, and that Hengist had sent for his son Octa to come over with a fresh supply of his countrymen. The lords of Britain, considering what dangers were likely to fall upon the land, assembled themselves, and coming to the king, laid open to him the inconvenience and peril which was likely to fall both upon himself and the kingdom, by the multitude and strength of these strangers, humbly beseeching him for their general security, to banish them all, or the greatest part of them, from the land. But the king was deaf of that ear, for the Saxons were in such favour with him, by reason of his beautiful young queen, that he preferred them before the love of his own wife, sons, subjects, kinsmen, and friends; wherefore, the Britains, with one will and assent, crowned his eldest son, Vortimer, king; depriving him of all regal dignity, when he had fully reigned (after the consent of the best historians) 16 years.

A word or two by the way of our new king Vortimer, who, assisted by the resolute Britains, in all haste, pursued the Saxons, and gave them a great battle upon the river Derwent, in which the Saxon's host was quite discomfited. He fought with them a second upon the ford called Epiford, or Aglisthorpe, in which fight Catrignus, the brother of Vortimer, and Horsus, the brother of Hengist, meeting in the battle, fought together a brave combat, and slew each other, in which the Britains also were victors; he gave them a third, near unto the sea-side, in which the Saxons were chased, and forced them to take the isle of Wight for their refuge; and likewise, a fourth main battle upon Colemore, which was long and courageously maintained by the Saxons, by reason that they now closed a great part of their host so defensively, that the Britains could but with much difficulty approach them, for the danger of their shot; yet, in the end, they were routed, and many of them drowned and swallowed, in the moor. And besides these four principal and main battles, he had divers other conflicts with them, one in Kent, another at Thetford in Norfolk, a third in Essex, near unto Colchester, from all which fields, he departed a glorious victor; neither did he leave their pursuit, till he had deprived them of all their possessions in the land, save the isle of Tenet, which he continually assaulted with his navy by sea; which, when his step-mother, Rowen, saw, and how much her father, Hengist, with his Saxons, by his martial powers were distressed, she used such means that he was poisoned, after he had victoriously governed the kingdom for the space of seven years.

All which time Vortigern, the father of the late dead Vortimer, lived privately in Chester, where he so well demeaned him towards the king, his son, by aiding him with his counsel and otherwise, that by the Britains' general assent, he was again restored to the kingdom. Hengist again pierced the land with a mighty host of his countrymen, which Vortigern, hearing, made towards him with his army of Britains. But Hengist, who had before tasted of their hardness and courage, made means of a treaty for peace, whence, lastly, it was concluded, that a certain number of Britains, and as many Saxons should meet upon a May-day, weaponless, upon the plain of Salisbury, on which pre-

fixed day, Hengist bethought him of a strange and perfidious treason, charging all his Saxons, that every one should put a long knife in his hose, and when he gave this watch-word, *Out with your Saxtes*, they should suddenly fall upon the unarmed Britains, and kill them to one man; briefly, they met at the time and place appointed, where Hengist and his Saxons received him and his power with a countenance of peace and love; but they had not long spoken together when Hengist giving the watch-word. The Britains were basely and barbarously butchered, unless any by his manhood and strength wrest the knife from his enemy, and defend himself: amongst the British lords was one Edolf earl of Chester, who (as Gunfride affirms) seeing his friends and fellows thus murdered, he found a stake by a hedge lying on the ground, with which he not only saved his own life, but slew seventeen of the opposite side, and got safely into the city of Salisbury; after which treason executed, the king remained with Hengist as prisoner.

Hengist by his treason, having thus gotten the upper hand, and retaining the king in his power and custody, he compelled him to give him three provinces in the east part of Britain, Kent, Sussex, Norfolk, and Suffolk, to which some add Essex, &c. of which being safely possessed, he suffered the king to go at large, sending for some other of his kinsmen to take possession of other provinces in the kingdom, crowning himself king of Kent, and from his own name, caused this realm to be called Hengist's land, or (as we now pronounce it) England. And the Saxons now spreading and quartering themselves in the best and most fertile soils of the land, as having the sovereignty over London, York, Lincoln, Winchester, with most of the principal cities in the realm. The Saxons still increasing in multitude and power, and the Britains daily decreasing, both in number and strength, Vortigern was forced to fly or retire himself into Wales, where (after some writers) thinking to fortify himself, he began to lay the foundation of a castle, called Generon, or Gwayneren, on the west side of the river Grana, upon an hill called Cloaricus. But what success he had in the building thereof, and how Merlin came first to be known to

NUMBER II. G

the king, with part of his prophecies, I will refer to the subsequent chapter; giving withal, the intelligent peruser of this story, to better his knowledge, this item; that without the laying open of the true passage of those times, (which I have as briefly as possible I could in the premises) these our prophet's predictions, which now seem plain and easy, would have been much more intricate, and hard to be understood,

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRD.

By what miraculous accident young Merlin came to be known to king Vortigern: of the combat betwixt the red and the white dragon, and his prophecy thereof.

WHEN Vortigern's architectures had caused the hill to be digged, and the foundation to be laid, on which, to erect this new structure, after the weak men had digged the circuit of the place, where the great stones were to be set in order, they were no sooner laid in the hollow of the earth, but they instantly sunk down, and were swallowed up, and no more seen. At which the workmen wondered, and the king himself was much astonished, and the more proofs they made, the greater cause of admiration they had; especially the situation being upon an hill, and no moorish or uncertain ground. Therefore the king commanded a cessation from the work for the present, and sent to the bards and wisards (of which that age afforded plenty) to know a reason of that prodigy, or at least what it might portend; who, being gathered together, and long consulted amongst themselves, and not finding by any natural or supernatural reason, what the cause thereof might be, concluded in the end, to save their credit, and to excuse their ignorance, to put the king off with an impossibility; and when he came to demand of them what they had done in the matter, they returned him this answer, that those stones could never be laid together, or the place built upon, till they were cemented with the blood of a man-child, who was born of a mother, but had no man to his father.

With this answer the king was satisfied, the soothsayers departed from him (not meanly glad that they had put

him off, according to our English word, with a *flam* or *de-lirement*) without any disparagement to their art and cunning, who no sooner left his presence, but the king called his servants about him, commanding them to ride and search into, and through all provinces and countries till they could find such a one as the wisards had spoken of, and by fair or foul means to bring the party unto him, but not acquainting him with the cause, but that the king seeing such a one, would send him back richly and bountifully rewarded. Having received this commission (or rather imposition) from the king their master, we leave them to their several adventures, every one of them being sufficiently accommodated for so uncertain a journey.

One of them amongst the rest happened to come to a town or city called *Caer-Merlin*, which implies Merlin's town or Merlin's borough, which there is no doubt the same which we call to this day *Caermarthen*, but my author terms it a city; at whose gates the messenger of the king arriving, it happened that a great many young lads were sporting themselves without the walls; and of the company, two of them in gaming fell out, the one young Merlin, the other called *Dinabutus*, who, amongst other breathing words, cast into Merlin's teeth, that he was but some moon-calf, as born of a mother, who knew not his father: the servant taking notice of this language, presently demanded what he was, and who were his parents? who returned him answer, that for any father he had, they knew none, but his mother was daughter to king *Demetius*, and lived a votaress in that city, in a nunnery belonging to the church of *St. Peter*: who presently went to the chief magistrates, and shewed his commission from the king, which they obeying, sent both the mother and son under his conduct, to attend the pleasure of his Majesty.

Of whose coming the king was exceeding joyful, and when they appeared before him (both ignorant of the occasion why they were sent for) the king first asked her, if that were her natural son? who replied that he was, and born of her own body; he then desired to know by what father he was begot? to which she likewise answered, that she never had the society of any one mortal or human, only a spirit assuming the shape of a beautiful young man, had many times appeared unto her, seeming to court her with

no common affection, but when any of her fellow-virgins came in, he would suddenly disappear and vanish, by whose many and urgent importunities, being at last overcome, I yielded, saith she, to his pleasure, and was com-pressed by him, and when my full time of teeming came, I was delivered of this son (now in your presence) whom I caused to be called Merlin. Which words were uttered with such modesty and constancy, considering withal the royalty of her birth, and the strictness of the order (in which she now lived) that the king might the more easily be induced to believe that whatsoever she spoke was truth.

When, casting his eye upon Merlin, he began to apprehend strange promising things in his aspect, as having a quick and piercing eye, an ingenious and gracious countenance, and in his youthful face a kind of austerity and supercilious gravity, which took in him such a deep impression, that he thought his blood too noble to be mingled with the dust and rubbish of the earth, and therefore instead of sentencing him to death, and commanding him to be slain, he opened unto him the purpose he had to build this castle, and the strange and prodigious impediments, which hindred the work, then his assembly of the bards and wisards, and what answer they returned him of his demand, but bade him withal be of comfort, for he prized his life (being a christian) above ten such citadels, though erected and perfected with all the cost and magnificence that human art or fancy could devise.

To which words, Merlin (who had all this while stood silent and spoke not a word) thus replied, Royal Sir, blind were your bards, witless your wisards, and silly and simple your soothsayers; who shewed themselves averse to art, and altogether unacquainted with the secrets of nature, as altogether ignorant, that in the breast of this hill lies a vast moat, or deep pool, which hath ingurgitated and swallowed all these materials thrown into the trenches. Therefore command them to be digged deeper, and you shall discover the water in which your squared stones have been washed, and in the bottom of the lake you shall find two hollow rocks of stone, and in them two horrible dragons fast asleep: which having uttered, he with a low obeisance made to the king, left speaking.

Who instantly commanded pioneers with pickaxes, mattocks, and shovels, to be sent for; who were presently employed to dig the earth deep, where the pond was found, and all the water drained, so that the bottom thereof was left dry, then were discovered the two hollow rocks, which being opened, out of them issued two fierce and cruel dragons, the one red, the other white, and made betwixt them a violent and terrible conflict: but in the end the white dragon prevailed over the red. At which sight the king being greatly stupified and amazed, demanded of Merlin what this their combat might portend? Who fetching a great sigh, and tears in abundance issuing from his eyes, with a prophetical spirit, made him this following answer:

“ Woe’s me for the red Dragon, for alach,
 The time is come, hee hasteth to his mach:
 The bloody Serpent, (yet whose souls are white)
 Implies that Nation, on which thy delight
 Was late sole-fixt, (the Saxons) who as friends
 Came to thee first, but ayming at shrewd ends
 They shall have power over the drooping red,
 In which the British Nation’s figured:
 Drive shall he them into caves, holes, and dens,
 To barren Mountains, and to moorish fens,
 Hills shall remove to where the valleyes stood,
 And all the baths and brooks shall flow with blood.
 The worship of the holy God shall cease.
 For in thilk dayes the Kirke shall have no peace:
 The Panims (woe the while) shall get the day,
 And with their Idols mawmetry beare sway,
 And yet in fine shee that was so opprest,
 Shal mount, & in the high rocks build her nest.
 For out of Cornwall shall proceed a Bore,
 Who shall the Kerk to pristine state restore,
 Bow shall all Britaine to his kingly beck,
 And tread he shall on the white Dragon’s neck.”

Then casting a sad look upon the king, as reading his fate in his forehead, he muttered to himself and said,

“ But well-away for thee, to Britaine deere,
 For I fore-see thy sad disaster’s neere.”

Which accordingly happened, and that within a few years after, for Vortigern having builded this castle, and fortified it, making it defensible against any foreign opposition, the two sons of Constantine, whom Vortigern had before caused to be slain, assisted by their near kinsman Pudentius, king of Armorica, or little Britain, (where they had been liberally fostered and cherished) passed the sea with a compleat Army, and landed at Totness, whereof when the Britains who were dispersed in many provinces understood, they crept out of their holes and corners, and drew unto their host, which was no small encouragement to the two brothers, Ambrosius Aurelius and Uter-Pendragon, who now finding their forces to be sufficiently able both in strength and number, made their speedy expedition towards Wales, with purpose to distress Vortigern the usurper.

Who having notice of their coming, and not able in regard of the paucity of his followers to give them battle, he made what provision he could for the strengthening of his castle, to endure a long siege, and to oppose the rage of any violent battery, till he might send for supply elsewhere. But such was the fury of the assailants, that after many fierce and dangerous attempts finding the walls and gates to be impregnable; casting into the castle balls of wild fire, with other incendiaries, they burnt him and his people alive, amongst whom not one escaped. Of him it is reported, that he should have carnal society with his own daughter, in hope that kings should issue from them; thus died he most miserably when he had reigned, since his last inauguration, nine years and some odd months: The explanation of the rest of his prophecy, I will leave to the chapter following,

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER FOURTH.

Merlin's former prophecy explained; with sundry prodigious acts done by him to delight the king—His prophecy of the king's death, and bringing Stonehenge from Ireland.

YOU have heard what the red and white dragons figured, namely, the British and Saxon people, we will now punctually examine the truth of his predictions in the rest. The caverns, corners, mountains, and moorish places, express into what sundry distresses the natives were driven into, by the merciless cruelty of the strangers; by the hills and valleys, shifting places; that there was no difference amongst the poor Britains, between the courtier and the cottager, the peer and the peasant; by the rivers flowing with blood, the many battles fought between the two nations; and that in those days religion and the true worship of God was supprest, happened under Hengist and Horsus, and their posterity. Octa the son of Hengist, who succeeded his father in the kingdom of Kent, Tosa, Pascentius, and Colgrinus, all pagans and princes of the Saxons. For when the Britains, from the time of Eleutherius, whom the Romists write was the fourteenth pope after the blessed St. Peter had received the Christian faith under king Lucius, of glorious memory, and had continued it for many years unto that time.

The Saxons, after coming into the land, being then miscreants, laboured by all means to suppress the same, and in the stead thereof, to plant their pagan idolatry, which they accomplished even to the coming of St. Augustine, sent hither by pope Gregory; in whose time again it began to flourish and get the upper hand, in the reign of Aurelius Ambrose, and his brother Uter-pendragon, (which is by interpretation the head of the dragon) who

succeeded him. By the boar, which should come out of Cornwall, and tread upon the neck of the white dragon, is meant the invincible king Arthur, who vanquished the Saxons, and subdued them in many battles, and was a great maintainer and exalter of the true Christian religion. Of whose begetting and birth, in this our History of Merlin, we shall have occasion to speak hereafter.

As Merlin was plentifully endued with the spirit of divination; so, by some authors, it is affirmed of him, that he was skilful in dark and hidden arts, as magic, necromancy, and the like; and relate of him, that when king Vortigern lived solitary in his late erected castle, forsaken of the greatest part of his followers and friends, and quite sequestered from all kingly honours, he grew into a deep and dumpish melancholy, delighting only (if any delight can be taken therein) in solitude and want of company. To expel which sad fits from him, which might be dangerous to impair his health, he would devise for his recreation and disport, many pleasant fancies to beget mirth, and sometimes laughter, by solacing his ear with several strains of music, both courtly and rural; the sound heard, but the persons not seen, as with the harp, bagpipes, cymbal, and tabret; and sometimes again with the lute, orphorian, viol, sackbut, cornet and organs. Then, to recreate his eyes, he would present him with stately masks and anti-masks; and again, for variety sake, with rustick dances, presented by swines and shepherdesses. And when these grew stale or tedious to his eye or ear, he would take him up into the top of one of his turrets, whereon he should see eagles and hawks fly after sundry games, and what fowl the king liked, they would strike it into his lap, to add to his slender provision for dinner and supper; which gave the king no small contentment.

Sometimes he would have an hare or hart, hunted and chased by a pack of dogs in the air, the game flying, the hounds, with open and audible mouths, pursuing, with huntsmen winding their horns, and following the chase with all the indents and turnings, losses and recoveries; the campaign plains, the woods, and coverts, appearing as visible and natural as if the sport had been upon the firm and solid earth.

Upon a time, being in the king's Summer parlour, who was desirous to be partaker of some novelty which he had never seen; there instantly appeared upon the table a pair of butts and whites in the middle to shoot at, where suddenly came in six dapper, and pert fellows like archers, in stature not above a foot high, and all other members accordingly proportioned, their bows were of the side bones of an overgrown pike; their strings of a small slivvy silk, no bigger than the thread of a cobweb, their arrows less than pick-tooths, feathered with the wings of small flies, and headed with the points of Spanish needles, who made a show as if they were to shoot a match three to three, and roundly they went about it. In the middle of their game, there was a shot which rested doubtful; which, as it appeared, the gamesters could not well decide. Then, Merlin called to one of the servants (who had somewhat a big nose) and stood by, and bade him measure to the mark, and give it to the best; to which, while he stooped, and inclined his face, the better to impire the matter, one of the pigmy archers, who had an arrow to shoot, delivered it from his bow, and shot him quite through the nose, at which he started, and the king heartily laughed; (for there was no room to be seen) and the butts with the archers together disappeared.

But when Merlin knew the king's fate to draw nigh, and not willing to partake in his disaster, he fained occasions abroad, and though, with much difficulty, had at length leave to depart, leaving behind him a paper which he put into the king's closet, where, upon occasion, he might easily find, and read this ensuing prophecy.

“ Fly from these fatal severall fires o King,
Which from less *Britain* the two exiles bring :
Now are their ships a rigging, now forsake,
Th’ *Armoricke* shoares, and towards *Albion* make,
To avenge their murdered brothers blood on thee,
In *Totnesse* road to morrow they will bee,
The *Saxon* Princes shall contend in vain,
For young *Aurelius* having *Hengist* slain,
Shall peaceably possesse the *British* throne,
Striving the opposite Nations to attone.
He the true faith shall seek to advance on high,

But in the quest thereof, by poyson die,
 The Dragons head, his brother shall succeed,
 And after many a brave heroick deed,
 By him perform'd, the fates shall strive to waft,
 His soule ore Styx, by a like poysonous draught,
 But those whosent them to th' *Elizian* bower,
 His sonne the Bore of *Cornwall* shall devoure.**

This history needs no comment, being so plain in itself by the success thereof; only this much, let me intreat the reader to bear in memory, that that Arthur, figured under the name of *Aper Cornubiæ*, that is, the Boar of Cornwall, was son to *Uter-pendragon*, here called the head of the Dragon.

Amongst many brave heroical acts done by this *Aurelius Ambrose*; after the death of *Vortigern*, he maintained the middle part of the kingdom of Britain, with all *Cambria* and *Wales*, endeavouring to repair all the ruined places in the land, as forts, castles, and citadels, but especially the temples which were much defaced by the pagan idolators, and caused divine service to be every where said in them, and after that, encountered the Saxons in the hill of *Baden* or *Badove*, where he slew many of them, and utterly routed their whole army. After which defeat, another Saxon prince named *Porthe*, with his two sons, landed at an Haven in *Sussex*, after whom, as some authors affirms, the place is called *Portsmouth* unto this day, others landed also in several parts of the kingdom, so that *Aurelius* had with them many conflicts and battles, in which he sped diversly, being for the most part conqueror, and yet, at some times, repulsed and over-set.

Our English chronicles, and others say, that he, by the help of *Merlin*, caused the great stones which stand till this day on the plain of *Salisbury*, to be brought in a whirl-wind one night out of *Ireland*, and caused them to be placed where they now stand in remembrance of the British lords there slain, and after buried in the time of the

* Observe. All the prophecies are here inserted in their original orthography.

pretended treaty and communication had betwixt Vortigern and Hengist, as it formerly touched, but Polychronicon and others, ascribe the honour of their transportage to his brother, Uter-pendragon, at whose request to Merlin, that miraculous conveyance was performed; which, if by art he was able to do, no question to be made of the truth of those former prestigious feats, in this chapter before remembered.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER FIFTH.

Uter-pendragon succeedeth his brother Aurelius, he is enamoured of Igera, wife of the duke of Cornwall, whom, by the art of Merlin, he enjoys; of whom he begot king Arthur the Worthy—Merlin's prophecy of him before his birth.

AURELIUS AMBROSE, in the prime of his age and honour, being taken away by poison, his brother, Uter-pendragon, by the general suffrage both of the clergy, peers, and people, was made king; who, pursuing his brother's former victories, gave the Saxons many battles, in which he came off with great honour and victory, as awing them so far that they durst not once approach his confines and territories. Afterwards he began to repair the decayed and ruined churches, and to provide that God should be carefully worshipped, restoring to his people all those goods and possessions, which by the enemy had been extorted from them. And afterwards, having slain Pascentius the son of Hengist in battle, with Guillamore king of Ireland, who came to his assistance, who had with great tyranny afflicted his subjects of the north with fire, sword, and sundry direptions and spoils; and having taken Octa, (who was also the son of Hengist) and Cosa his nephew, and put them in prison. He made a great solemnity at the feast of easter, to which he invited all his nobility and gentry with their wives and daughters, to gratulate with him his former victories. Among the rest of his peers, was then present Gorlais, duke of Cornwall, with his most beautiful Igera, who was held to be the prime paramont of the whole English nation.

With whose beauty and demeanor, the king was so infinitely taken, that all other his most necessary affairs neglected, he could not restrain or bridle his extraordinary

affection, but he must needs court and kiss her openly in the presence of her husband, at which he incensed with the rage of jealousy, presently, without any leave taken of the king, or the rest of his fellow peers, rose from the table, and taking his wife with him along, by no persuasion could be moved to stay, but instantly posted with her into his country, which the king (being perditely enamoured of his lady) took in such ill part, that he sent for them back, pretending they must use his council in matters of state, to make his speedy return. But he more prizing his lady than all his other fortunes (whether favourable or disastrous) which way soever they should happen, disobeyed the king's command, with a peremptorily answer, *That he would not come.* At which, the king more enraged, sent him word, that if he persisted in his obstinacy, he would invade his dukedom and beat his towers and turrets (to which he trusted) about his ears, but vain were his menaces, for loath to loose so sweet a bed-fellow, he set the king at public defiance.

To chastise whose pride, (as he pretended) Uter-pendragon gathered a strong army, and invaded his country with fire and sword, but Gorlais, perceiving himself unable to oppose so potent a prince, attended with such multitudes of experienced and tried soldiers, he betook himself to a strong castle, then called Dimilich; and there fortified himself, daily expecting forces from Ireland; but because he would not hazard all his estate in one bottom; he, like a wise merchant, sent his wife to another impregnable fort called Tindagol, being round environed with the sea; and one way leading into it, which, three men elbowing one another, could not pass at once. A few days being past in the besieging of that former castle, which the duke maintained against him, he grew still the more besotted with the love of the lady, insomuch that he could neither enter nor escape. At length he uttered the impatience of his affection to one, whom he had amongst many others, chosen for his familiar friend, whose name was Ulphin of Caer-Caradoc; who, when he had truly pondered the whole that the king had delivered unto him, he returned him answer, that he could perceive small hope for the king to attain his amorous ends, in regard that the fort in which she resided, by reason of the

situation of the place (munified both by art and nature) was altogether inaccessible. For three armed men (so straight was the passage) might keep out his whole army; one refuge only remained, that if the prophet Merlin, who was then in the army, would undertake the business, it might be accomplished, but otherwise not.

The king, being attentive to his language, presently caused Merlin to be sent for, and told him, how ardently he was affected to the countess, without enjoying whose person he was not able to subsist alive; aggravating the trouble and perplexity of his mind, with much paleness in his face, many deep suspires and extraordinary passion; which Merlin commiserating, he told his majesty, that to compass a thing so difficult as that was, being but a little degree from impossibility, he must make proof of art mystical and unknown, by which he would undertake by such unctions and medicaments as he would apply, to metamorphose his highness into the true figure and resemblance of duke Gorlais; his friend Ulphin into Jordan of Tintegell, his familiar companion and counsellor; and himself would make the third in the adventure, changing himself into Bricel, a servant that waited of him in his chamber; and they three, thus disguised, would in the twilight of the evening, whilst the duke in one place was busied in the defence of his castle against the assailants, command their entrance into the other fort in the name and person of the duke, where they should be undoubtedly received.

This prestigious plot much pleased the king, who, impatient of delay, gave order to his chief captains and commanders concerning the siege, excusing to them his absence for some certain hours. He, in the mean time, the same night, committed himself to the charge and art of Merlin; who, disguised as aforesaid, knocked at the gates of Tindagol, to whom the porter (thinking he had heard his lord's voice demanding entrance) instantly opened the gate, and meeting him with Ulphin and Merlin, taking them for Jordan and Bricel; so that the king was presently conducted to the chamber of Igerna; who gladly and lovingly received him as her lord and husband, where he was bountifully feasted, and bedding with her, he freely enjoyed her most loving embraces to the full sat

tiating of his amorous desires, where betwixt them, that night, was begot the noble prince Arthur; who, for his brave facinorous, and high and heroical achievements, made his name glorious and venerable through the face of the whole earth. Of whom, Merlin, long before his begetting or birth, thus prophesied.

“ The *Cornish Bore* shall fill with his devotion,
 The Christian World: the Islands of the Ocean,
 He shall subdue: the Flower de Lyces plant,
 In his own Garden, and prove Paramant,
 The two-neckt *Roman Eagle* hee shall make
 To flag her plumes, and her faint feathers quake.
 Pagans shal strive in vain to bend or break him,
 Who shall be meat to all the mouths that speake him,
 Yet shall his end be doubtfull: Him six Kings
 Shall orderly succeed, but when their wings
 Are clipt by death, a *German Worme* shall rise
 Who shall the *British State* anatomise.
 Him, shall a Sea-Wolfe waited on by Woods
 From *Africke* brought to passe *Saint Georges floods*
 Advance on high: then shall Religion faile,
 And then shall *London's Clergie* honour vaile
 To *Dorobernia*: he that seventy shall sit
 In th' *Eborucensick Sea*; he forc'd to flit
 Into *Armorica*: *Menevia* sail
 Shall with the Legion Cities Pall be clad,
 And they that in thilk days shall live, may see
 That all these changes in the Kirke shall bee.”

But before I come to the opening of this prophecy, which to the ignorant may appear rather a rhyming riddle. Then, to be grounded on truth or reason, it is necessary that I look back to where I late left, and proceed with the history which thus followeth: The king more ecstasied in the embraces of his sweet and desired bedfellow, his soldiers, without any commission by him granted, made a strange and terrible assault upon the other fort, in which *Gorlais* was besieged; who, being of a high and haughty spirit, scorning to be long immured, and coped up without making some expression of his magnanimity and valour, issued out of the castle, and with great rage and resolution sat upon the camp, in hopes, with his handful of men, to have dislodged and routed a multitude, but it fell out far

contrary to his expectation, for in the hottest brunt of the first encounter, he himself was slain, and all his soldiers without mercy offered, or quarter given, most cruelly put to the sword; the castle entered and seized, and the spoil divided amongst the soldiers.

Early in the morning before the king or the countess were ready in their wearing habits and ornaments, some of the besieged who had escaped the massacre, bounced at the gates of Tindagol, and, being known to be of the duke's party, were received; who told the porter and the rest, that they brought heavy news along, which they must first deliver to their lady; of which, she having notice, and knowing they came from that castle, caused them to be admitted into her presence, and demanding of them what news; they made answer: the tidings they brought was sad and disastrous, That the fort was, the preceding night, robustuously assaulted by the enemy, whom the duke, her husband, valiantly encountered without the gates, that all their fellow-soldiers were put to the sword, the castle taken and rifled, and that the general, her lord and husband, by his over hardness, was the first man slain in the conflict. At the relation of the first part of their news she seemed wonderously disconsolate and dejected, but, casting her eyes upon the king, she was again somewhat solaced in the safety of her husband.

They, also, when they saw the king, taking him for the duke, their general, began to blush at their report of his death, being wonderously astonished, that him, whom, to their thinking, they had left wounded and breathless in the field, they now see living and in health, amusing withal that they posting thither with so much speed would arrive thither before them, being altogether ignorant of the admirable transformation that Merlin's art had wrought upon them. In this anxiety and diversity of thoughts, the king more glad of the duke's fate than the rifling of his fort; thus bespoke to the duchess, Most beautiful, and my best beloved Igera, I am not as these report dead, but as thou seest, yet alive; but much grieved both for the surprisal of my castle, and the slaughter of my soldiers; upon which victory, it may be feared, that the king, animated by his late success, may raise his army thence, and en-

danger us here in our fort of Tindagol; therefore, my best and safest course is to leave this place for the present, and to submit myself to the king in his camp; of whose acceptance and grace I make no question, as knowing him to be of a disposition flexible and merciful; then be you of comfort, for in a few hours you may expect to hear from me, with all things answerable to your desires and wishes. With which words, Igerna was much pleased and fully satisfied.

So, with a loving kiss, they parted, she to her chamber, and he, with his two followers, towards the camp; who, no sooner from the sight of the citadel, but Merlin began to uncharm and dissolve his former incantations and spells, so that the king was no more Gorlais, but Uter-pendragon, and his friend ceased to be Jordan of Tindagol, but Ulphin of Caer-Caradoc; and the mage who had made this transformation, left the shape of Bricef, and turned again to be Merlin. And the king being now arrived at his army, first caused the body of Gorlais to be searched for amongst the slain soldiers; afterwards to be embalmed and honourably interred; and first, acquainting Igerna by letters, with all the former passages, how they stood, and how much he had hazarded his person for the fruition of her love, he invited her to her lord's funeral, at which the king and she both mourned; but after the celebration thereof ended, he, the second time, courted her, and in a few days made her his queen of a duchess; by whom he had Arthur and Anna; by which match, the fame of Merlin spread far abroad; the explanation of whose former prophecy, I leave to the following chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER SIXTH.

Merlin's former prophecy | currences pertinent to the
made plain concerning king | English history.
Arthur, with sundry other oc-

ARTHUR, the son of Uther-pendragon and Igerna, succeeded his father in the principality; therefore, called the *Bear of Cornwall*, because begot and born in that country, and of a Cornish duchess. He was a great planter and supporter of religion and the Christian faith, for so all our British chronologers report of him. His conquests were many, and some of them miraculous. By the *Islands of the Ocean* are meant Ireland, Iceland, Scotland, and the Orcaades, Goatland, Norway, and Dacia, all which are called Provincial Islands, which he brought under the obedience of his sceptre. By the *planting of the Flower de Lyces in his own garden*, is likewise intended his conquest of France, with sundry other appendant provinces, as Flanders, Poland, Burgundy, Aquitaine, Andegavia, and Normandy; all which, with divers others, paid him an annual tribute, and of which countries, for their long and faithful services, he gave the earldom of Andegavia to Gaius his taster, and the dukedom of Normandy to Bed-verus his cup-bearer; in memory of whose regal bounty, it grew to a custom for the kings of France to make their tasters and cup-bearers, earls and dukes of Andegavia and Normandy.

By his *pluming and shaking off the eagle's feathers*, was his great victories over the Romans foretold; who, when their prince Lucius with ten other kings, invaded this his land of Britain, with a numberless army of

soldiers, the most of them he slew, acquitting the tribute paid to Rome since the time of Julius Cæsar, and those who survived, he made his feudaries and vassals, by which he got the sovereignty over many provinces before subjugate to the Roman empire, sending the dead body of the emperor back to Rome, to be interred there. Next, where it is said, *His name shall be as meat to all those mouths that shall speak of his noble and notable achievements*, by which no other thing is meant, but that the very relation of his brave guests shall be a refreshing and delight to all such as shall either read them or hear them with much pleasure by others reported, whose very begetting, conception, and birth, carry with them the novelty of a miracle. And where it is further said, *that his end shall be doubtful*; he that shall make question of the truth of Merlin's prophecy in that point (let him to this day) but travel into Armorica or Little Britain, and in many of their cities, proclaim in their streets, That Arthur expired after the common and ordinary manner of men; most sure, he shall have a bitter and railing language aspert upon him, if he escape a tempestuous shower of stones and brick-bats.

The six kings that succeeded him in order, were Constantinus, the eldest son of Cadur duke of Cornwall, (and Arthur's cousin-german) the second was Constantinus' brother; the third Conanus Aurelius their nephew; the fourth Vortiporius; the fifth Malgo; the sixth Caretius; for, when Arthur in that great battle which he fought against his cousin the arch-traitor Mordred, whom he slew, being himself mortally wounded, and therefore had retired himself unto the vale of Avalan, in hope to be cured of his hurts; before his death, (and the manner of which is uncertain) he sent for his cousin Constantine, before-named, (a man of approved virtue, and expert in all martial discipline) and made him king, against whom, the Saxons, assisted by the two sons of Mordred, assembled themselves, who, having defeated them in sundry battles, the elder son of Mordred, who had for his refuge fortified Winchester; he took in the church of St. Amphibalus, (whither he had fled for sanctuary) and slew him before the altar: the younger he found hid in a monastery in London, whom he likewise caused to be slain; this happened in the 543rd year of the incarnation of our blessed Saviour;

but in the third year after he was perfidiously betrayed to death by the practice of his nephew; Conanus Aurelius, and his body was royally interred in mount Ambria near unto Uter-pendragon.

Then reigned his brother, whom Conanus suffered not to rest one hour in peace, till he had incarcerated him, and in the same year usurped the diadem; a young man of excellent parts and noble carriage, had he not been tainted with ambition, the love of civil wars and parricidal impiety, having slain one of his uncles, imprisoned the other, and killed his two sons to attain to the regal sovereignty, which not long he enjoyed, for in the next year he expired. Whom succeeded Vortiporius, against whom the Saxons made a new insurrection, and by whom they were utterly subverted, by which he became absolute monarch of this island; but, after four years, yielded his body to the earth, and left his crown to Malgo, who was invested in the year of grace, after some authors, 581.

This prince was strong in body, fortunate in arms, and of larger size and stature than any of his predecessors, who was a great suppressor of usurpers and tyrants, for he not only enjoyed this kingdom entire, but conquered by his sword all the six provincial islands. Of whom it is reported, that he was the fairest of all the British nation, but those excellent gifts of nature he shamefully abused; as being much addicted to sodomy; and as he was a proditor of other's chastities, he was also prodigal of his own; after whose death, in the year 586, Garethius was instituted on the throne, a prince hateful to good men, and incendiary of civil and domestic combustions, an exiler of his nobles, a slayer of his citizens, a robber of the rich, a suppressor of the poor, and indeed, subject to all the vices can be named.

By the *German Worm* and the *Sea Wolf* waited on by *Woods*, brought from *Africa*, through *St. George's channel*, which shall support him; our prophet would have us to know, that the Saxons are comprehended in the *Worm*; and in the *Wolf*, Gormundus king of *Africa*, who, in the time of this Garethius, came with a mighty navy upon the British seas; first, with 360,000 soldiers, who

first invaded Ireland, and made great spoil of the country, and from thence he was invited by the Saxons to assist them against the British nation; to which, he assented, invaded the kingdom with fire and sword, committing many direptions and outrages, chasing the king from place to place, and from city to city, till he was in the end forced to fly to Wales, wherethey shut him up; and by this means, the German Worm, by the means of this Sea Wolf, had the upper hand on the red Dragon. Whilst these things were thus in agitation, there came to this great general of the Africans, from the transmarine parts of Gallia, one Isimbardus, nephew to Lewis the French king, who complained unto him that his uncle, against all justice, kept his rights from him, imploring his aid for the recovery thereof, promising him great rewards, in pledge whereof, like a wretched Apostata, he renounced his faith and christianity, of which proffer Gormundus accepted, and made his speedy expedition towards France.

But the miscreant Isimbardus, failed of his purpose, and was justly punished by the hand of God for his apostacy; for at their landing at the port of St. Waleric, a young gentleman called Hugo, son to Robert, earl of the Mount, having received an affront from this Isimbard, challenged him to a single duel, who entertaining the challenge, was, by the aforesaid king, left dead in the field, and the French setting upon the host of the pagans, gave them a great discomfiture, insomuch that of all that infinite number, scarce any were left to bear the tidings of their disaster into their country, but either perished by the sword, or were drowned in the ocean. *In which time,* saith the prophet, *religion shall fail,* which happened when this Gormundus with the Saxons rioted and made havock in this island, suppressing religious houses, and ruinating churches, so that scarce a christian native durst shew his head, but he was subject to persecution and torture.

But it follows in the prophecy, *that the honour of London's clergy shall give place to Dorobernia or Canterbury, that the seventh who sat in the Eboracensian see, which is the arch-bishoprick of York, shall be compelled to fly into Armorica or Little Britain, and that Menevia shall be adorned with the pall that belonged to the city of Le-*

gions. Give me leave to use a little circumstance in the explaining of these, that finding the truth of his predictions by the success, the reader may be more easily induced to give credit unto the rest, in which I shall strive (though plain) to be brief.

The three prime seats or sees, were the three archbishopricks, which were London, York, and the city of Legions. Now, note, how punctually he comes to the purpose; the dignity of London's metropolitanship was transferred to Canterbury by St. Augustine, whom pope Gregory sent hither with others to preach the gospel, who also gave the primacy of the city of Legions to Menevia, a city of Wales, situate near to the Demetrical see, but the city of Legions stands upon the river Osca, not far from the Severn sea, which was first erected by king Belinus, whose valiant brother Brennus, being general of the Senon Galls, after many honourable exploits and glorious victories by him achieved, assaulted the famous city of Rome, took, sacked, and spoiled it in the days of Ahasuerus and Esther; Gabinus and Porsenna, being consuls, the first of whom he slew in battle, and the other took prisoner, &c.

By the arch-bishop of York, the seventh inaugurated into that see, who should be compelled to seek shelter in Little Britain, is intimated Samson, then resident; who, in that great prosecution made by the Africans and Saxons, with six of his brothers, all clergymen, and of great sanctity of life, fled into Little Britain, and there established his metropolitan chathedral. The rest of his six brothers, whose names were Melanius, Matutus. Maclovius, Pabutaus, Paternus and Waslovius, being all divines, were made the rectors of other churches, and became, in a short time, to be capable of episcopal dignities; which seven brothers, not only the natives of the country, but all the bordering provinces, call the seven saints of Britain (meaning the less Britain) even to this day, now let it be held any deviation or digression from the subject now in hand. If I borrow so much patience of the reader to acquaint him with a strange and almost miraculous story or legend, by what accident, or rather divine providence these seven holy and devout brothers, were by the mutual congress of two noble parents, (the father and mother)

begot and conceived in one womb, and after mature t
of teeming, delivered into the world at one day. I
because I am loath to swell the pages of this cha
beyond the limits of the former, I will refer the re
on thereof unto that next ensuing.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER SEVENTH.

Of the conception and birth of these seven pious and religious brothers; and being sent to death, how preserved, educated, and doctinated.—With a continuance of Merlin's prophecies and their explanation.

THE Legend reports, that their mother being a noble and chaste matron; but in her feminine ignorance, not acquainted with the accidents belonging to other women, conceived a strange opinion; from which she could not be removed, that it was not possible for any of that sex to conceive more than one at once, unless she had the consociety of so many several men as she brought forth children, insomuch that she villified and disreputed: holding all those no better than adulteresses and prostitutes, who were delivered of twins, or a more numerous issue. But the God of all flesh, and the Creator of nature, being also the searcher of hearts, and a justifier of all innocence, (to convert this lady from her erroneous belief, and to clear these unjust aspersions with which she had branded other chaste and fruitful wombs) so, by his providence ordained, that by her sole lord and husband, she, at one congression, was conceived of seven sons, and delivered of them at one time, being within the compass of one day.

Which she seeing, and much amazed at the prodigious novelty of such an unexpected issue, and now favouring by a reciprocal retribution these accusations and suspicions, which she had so often cast upon other good women, might be thrown upon her in a desperate way. Thereby, thinking to save her reputation (which she thought hazarded at least, if not quite lost) she consulted with the mid-

wife and one of her most trusty maids, (having hired them for that purpose) to take the young sprawling infants, and either to kill them or cast them into the next river; for which purpose, as they were hastening, and carrying them in little baskets, it pleased the higher powers, that a grave and reverend bishop met them upon the way; and, as he passed by the women, he heard the infants crying and moaning, which he imagined was to implore his help and aid; therefore, he stopped them, and would needs see what they carried in their laps concealed, which they (as loath to betray their lady's secrets) unwilling to shew, he grew the more suspicious, and compelled them, having some servants then about him, to discover what was hid in their baskets; which, being opened, the babes all living, seemed to rejoice at his sight, and smile in his face, with which he was much delighted.

Then, more strictly examining them, for what purpose they carried them in that manner, and threatening them with the severity of the law, if they told him not the truth; they, knowing the power and authority of the church, and danger of ecclesiastical censure, and that their attempt deserved (if not execution) yet excommunication at the least, concealed no part of the truth, but earnestly solicited him, whatsoever became of them, to have care of their lady's honour. The pious and charitable prelate, having been before himself of her perverse opinion; and now, seeing how justly the Creator of all things had dealt with her, and to what desperation she was brought, by thinking to save a poor credit in this life, by the murder of so hopeful an issue, to forfeit all the hopes she had in the world to come; he dismissed the bearers without any further trouble, adjuring them to tell their lady, that they had drowned the young infants according to her commandment (of which, he himself would take charge, and adopt them for his own) and causing them to be borne to his palace, and after to the church; he himself baptized them, and gave them their names as aforesaid, then sent for nurses, and commanded that they should be carefully educated; and when they came to any understanding, he sent them to school, and caused them to be instructed in all the seven liberal arts, (for he found them to be of pregnant and capable apprehensions) who afterwards

by his means, came to be preferred to church promotions, and afterwards to episcopal dignities. I now proceed to Merlin's next prophecy, which thus followeth :

“ The Heavens in stead of water, blood shall showre,
And famine shall both young and old devour;
Droop and be sad shall the red Dragon then,
But after mickle time be blithe agen,
And now the Serpent that was white before,
Shall have his silver scales, all drencht in gore.
Seven scepter-bearing Kings in field shall die,
One of whose Sainted soules shall pierce the skie,
Kept shall the babes bee from their Mothers wombes;
And soone as climbe on earth, grope from their Tombes.
All by a brazen man shall come to passe,
Who likewise mounted on his Steed of brasse,
Both night and day will *Londons* prime Gate keep,
Whether the carlesse people wake or sleep.”

Whosoever shall read Matthew of Westminster, our ancient English chronologer, page 29, shall find that in the days of Cadwallo, king of this island, the 13th after Brute; that for three days together, blood dropped from the clouds, after which, came a great swarm of infectious flies, by whose bitings or stings, there was great mortality in this land, and by the *shower of blood*, is further intimated, the great effusion of British blood, sometimes by public hostility, sometimes by civil and domestic enmity, profusely wasted; insomuch, that the earth appeared, as if blood had been poured down from the heavens; after which, by the barrenness of the earth, followed so great a famine, that nothing was found for the people to feed on, but the roots of withered herbs and grass, and such flesh as they could catch by hunting.

No wonder then, if this made the British nation (figured under the red dragon) greatly to droop; which, after much sufferance and labour, was restored to his pristine state and dignity. For Cadwallo, who was king *anno salutis* 633, after many horrid crosses and disasters, exile, expulsion from this kingdom, and the loss of his whole inheritance, was forced, with a few of his followers that remained of his many legions, to retire into Little

Britain, to his cousin, king Salomon, who courteously received him, where he wintered; and in the spring, when kings go customably out to war, he furnished him with an army of 10,000 able men, when, having shipped them safely, and prosperously arrived in this his own native and hereditary provinces. And, hearing that Pæanda king of Mercia (or middle England) had besieged in Exeter his cousin Briant, with those poor remainder of the Britons which he had left behind, dividing his soldiers into several squadrons, not only removed the siege, but took the king prisoner, who, having given him sufficient hostages for his truth and fidelity, gave him also his only daughter to wife, so that he became the father in law; who made him general of his army.

After which, Cadwallo, calling all his exiled subjects (dispersed abroad in several provinces) into the kingdom, he raised a competent army, and invaded Northumberland with fire and sword, of which, Edwinus was then king; who, assembling to his aid all the Reguli, (or less kings) gave him a strong encounter, in which his whole army was discomfited, and himself slain in the field; whom succeeded is son Affricus, assisted by Chaldodus, duke of the Orcades, (whom Matthew of Westminster, calls Offridus and Gothaldus) now Cadwallo, not contented with his former victories, gathered his whole forces together against Offricus, whom he also slew in battle, with his two nephews, and Cadamus the Scot's king, who came to take part with the Northumbers. Which done, he past through all the kingdom, being so maliciously and cruelly bent against the Saxons, that he neither spared age nor sex, killing the old, and young infants new born, and those that never saw the sun in their mother's wombs, purposing utterly to extirpate and root out all the Saxson nation: thus you see, *the red Dragon*, (namely, the British nation) *after much dejection exalted, and the scales of the white Serpent* (the Saxons) *stained in sanguine tincture, by so general a massacre.*

It followeth, *seven sceptre-bearing kings shall be slain in the field, of which one of them shall be sainted: now, these seven kings slain by Cadwallo and his father-in-law Pæanda, were Edwinus, his son Offricus, and Oswaldus,*

(the saint spoken of) which were the three kings of Northumberland; Segebartus, Egricus, and Anna, who reigned over the oriental Britons, and Cadamus the Scotch king: concerning which Oswaldus, his sanctity and other pious virtues, the ancient chronicles write largely, (as also the lords of those times) many panegyricks in his praise, which would be too tedious here to insert, yet some particulars of him, howsoever credible or no, I thought fit to remember: it was said of him, that when Aldanus, bishop of Scotland (whose language neither he nor any of his Saxons understood) did at any time preach before him and his people, he would put upon him a royal garment, worn only on solemn festival days, and whether by virtue of that, or by divine rapture, he would deliver all that sermon, word for word, to his countrymen, in their proper and modern language. He was also so temperate in his own diet, and withal, so liberal to the poor, that when he had guests at his table, he would not only spare from his own stomach, but if he saw any of them gormandize, or feed more than became them, he would bid them eat more sparingly, and to remember those hungry bellies at the gate, which attended the reversion and fragments from his board and bounty.

This reverend bishop Aldanus, being feasted by him on an Easter day, the king commanded a great silver charger filled with the best meats at his table, to be carried to the beggars at his gate; and, when they had eaten the meat, and sold the dish, and equally divided it amongst them, which the bishop seeing, said aloud, Live that liberal hand! O! may it always live and never taste of corruption, which (if we will believe the Roman Legend) proved according to his prophetic acclamation; for many years after his death, when his tomb was searched, and all the rest of his body, according to the common course of nature, was putrified and turned to dust, that hand and arm alone were preserved from corruption and rottenness, and remained as entire flesh, blood, veins, and arteries, as when he was interred.

It followeth in the history, six of these before-named kings, being slain in several conflicts, Cadwallo, whose high spirit was irreconcilable towards the Saxons, pursued this Oswald from province to province, chasing him even

to the wall which Severus the Roman emperor built, to part and divide the two kingdoms of Britain and Scotland, and then sent his general and father-in-law, Pæana, to give him battle at a place called Hed-field, or Holy-camps, in which, by the prayers of this Oswaldus, the Britons' host was quite discomfited; of which defeat, when king Cadwallo understood, he gathered a fresh army, and gave him a second battle at a place called Bourne, in which Oswaldus and his army were wholly routed, and himself died lamented in his own pious blood, for whose charity and sanctity, he was afterwards canonized, and remaineth to this day one of the saints blessed in our Calendar, whose death happened in the year of our Saviour 644, which improved that part of Merlin's prophecies, *Seven kings shall be slain, one of which shall be sainted.*

By the *brazen man*, mounted upon a steed of brass, who is said to do all these, is antonomastice meant king Cadwallo; to honour whom, after his death, for his many brave victories, and expelling the Saxons out of the land, the peers and people caused his statue, at his full size and proportion to be cast in brass, sitting also upon an horse of brass, in whose buckler they intombed his embalmed body, and after set it upon the prime gate of the city of London, (it being a piece of admirable art and pulchritude) and near the same, in further memory of him, built a church, dedicated to St. Martin, therefore saith the prophet, *The brazen horse and man shall watch the gate whether the people wake or sleep*, which continued for many years afterwards.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER EIGHTH.

He prophesieth of the civil wars that shall be in Britain in the time of Cadwallo, and of the great dearth and desolation	in the reign of Cadwallader. Of the Saxons exalting themselves, and of the first coming in of the Danes into this land.
---	---

AS Merlin, in all his prophecies, aimeth at a continued history of the main passages in this isle of Britain. So, I also desire to observe a concordance of times, least the neglect of either, might breed a confusion in both, as shall be made good in the sequel. His prophecy followeth:

“The crimson Dragon with his own fierce pawes
Shall teare his proper bowels ’gainst the Laws:
Of wholesome Nature, plague, and famine then
Shall fill the barren earth with shrowds of men.
After, the Dragon whose smooth scales are white,
Hither the *Almans* daughter shall invite,
And crown themselves: Against whom shall rise
An Eagle from the Rock, and both surprise,
Two Lions shall a dreadful combat make,
Having their Lists encompass by a Lake.
At length be atton’d, and after shall divide,
The glorious prey: aspeckled scale, whose pryde,
Shall ayme at high things; will his Lord betray
Poysoning the Royal nest in which he lay
Of the white Dragon, so the Fates agree,
At length a *Decemvirum* there shall be:
What time the Red shall to his joy behold
The roofs of all his Temples deckt with gold, &c.”

By the *Crimson Dragon* is still meant England, which after the death of Cadwallo, being impatient of peace, for

want of foreign enemies shall be at civil dissention in itself, of which shall ensue much rage and mortality, such dearth, famine, and desolation which shall happen by the plague that destroyeth the men, and the murrain that killeth the cattle, that the natives shall be forced to leave the kingdom as a wilderness unpeopled; the remainder of the living being scarce sufficient in number to bury the dead; which strange depopulation fell in the third and last year of Cadwalader the son of Cadwallo, which was in the year of grace 686, which maketh up the year of the world, by the account of Polychronicon, and other of our English chronologers 5885; so that it appeareth, the native Britains had the title and sovereignty of this kingdom from Brute's first landing, by the space of 1822 years, Cadwallader being the last king of the Britains, after whom the Saxons or Angles had the full dominion thereof, which maketh good that in the prophecy, *The white Dragon shall invite the Alman's daughter, which implieth a great supply of the German nation, and crown themselves.* For, from that time they bear the sceptre, and had the absolute jurisdiction over the whole land, which they continued for a long season.

To pass over all the Saxon kings to the time of Ethelredus, in whose days, *An Eagle from the rock* (which was Swanus, king of Denmark) *shall rise, &c.* The better to explain our prophet, and to carry the history along, this Etheldred, the son of the most royal king Edward, by his second wife, Alfrida, by some called Estrild, when he came to be crowned by Dunstan, arch-bishop of Canterbury, he could not contain himself, but with a prophetic spirit uttered those words: "Because, by the bloody slaughter of thy brother, thou hast aspired to the kingdom, the sin of thy most wicked and mischievous mother shall never be expiated, nor any who were of her diabolical counsel, but, by the greatest effusion of the Saxon blood, that ever was shed since their first coming into Britain, and further the beginning of thy reign shall be cruel, the middle thereof miserable, and the end shameful." All which accordingly happened.

His father, king Edgar, of ever surviving memory, had by his first wife called Egelfeda, a noble son named Edward, and by his second Alfrida. This Etheldred, Edgar being dead, the barons assembled, and made Edward king

in the year of grace 875, at which his step-mother greatly repined, using all the means both of power, proof, and friends, to have inaugurated her son Ethelred, being then a lad but of seven years old; which, in the end, she most traiterously accomplished, for the king, hunting in the forest, near unto the castle of Corffe, in the west country, who having lost all his company, bethought himself that his step-mother with her son, lived in that castle, to whom he would give a friendly visit; who, spying from her window afar off, called to a villain that attended her, and whispered in his ear what he should do. By this, the king was come to the gate, and she descended to meet him, saluting him with a Judaic kiss, and intreated him to alight and sojourn with her for that night; which he modestly refusing, said he would only drink a horseback and so be gone, which being brought, as the cup was at his mouth, her traiterous servant, with a long dagger, stroke him quite through the body, at which, he put spurs to his horse, thinking to have recovered his servants, but through his great loss of blood, he fainted, and falling from his horse, one of his feet was fastened to the stirrup, and so hurried to a place called Corrigate, where his miserably mangled body was found, and not being known at that present to be the king, without ceremony buried; whom, as you have heard, his brother by the father's side succeeded.

In whose reign happened divers prodigies, pretending great disaster, among which was the sterility of the earth, the burning of London by an accidental fire, but the most ominous and terrible was the invasion of the Danes, and their many massacres and inhuman butcheries committed through all the shires and provinces of the kingdom, as more amply hereafter, but by the way is to be noted, that in the eighth year of his reign, he was espoused to Ithelgina; whom some call Elgina, daughter to earl Edgebertus, by whom, in process of time, he received a son called Edmund, (afterwards for his notable valour, surnamed Ironside) and two others, Edwin and Ethehtane, with a daughter named Egina.

About the eleventh year of his reign, the Danes pierced

the land in sundry places, against whom, the king being wholly addicted to effeminacy and cowardice, durst make no hostile opposure, but for the present, appeased them with great sums of money, which being spent, they fell to new robberies. Then, the king bribed them with more, notwithstanding which, they spoiled Northumberland, and at last, laid siege to London, and to increase his sorrow and trouble, earl Elphricus, who was admiral of the navy, fled like a traitor to the Danes, and took part with them against his natural liege, for which, the king commanded that his son Algarus, should have his eyes torn out of his head. During which time, burning feavers, and the bloody flux destroyed many of the natives, to which was added scarcity and penury among the commons, insomuch that they were forced to rob and steal from one another, so that what by their own pilfering and pillage of the Danes, the land was brought to extreme misery, by whose continual invasions, and the king's pusillanimity, the tribute paid to them was raised from 10,000 to 40,000 pounds, (named for the continuance thereof Dane-gelt) they yet not satisfied; to add to the former, the British peers were so hollow breasted among themselves, that when they were at any time assembled, and had determined any thing to the impeachment of the Danes, they were warned thereof by some of the falsehearted counsel, of whom were most suspected Elphricus and Edricus, the *Snake* formerly mentioned in the prophecy.

The land, besides other distresses, continuing under this grievous tribute, the king, by the advice of those familiars who were about him, married Emma, the daughter of Richard the third, duke of Normandy, and the first of that name, who was for his boldness and valour, surnamed Richard the Hardy, or without fear; and she (by the French chronicles, Emma the Flower of Normandy, by which match, he was greatly animated and encouraged, so that presuming on the power of his father-in-law, he sent into all the towns, cities, and villages of this land, secret and straight commissions, charging the rulers and magistrates, upon the night succeeding the day of St. Brice, that all the Danes should be murdered in their beds; the execution whereof they committed to their wives and women, which was also accordingly performed, (a strange

wonder, that so great a secret should pass generally through that sex without discovery.)

This general massacre of the Danes, (as fame reports) began at a little town in Hertfordshire, 24 miles from London, called Wealwin, from which act it took first name, as if there the weal of their country was first warm; and the day of St. Brice happened that year upon the Monday, which to this day is called Hoc or Hop-Monday, but wherefore I know not; unless by Hoc, this day as a remarkable note to posterity, or by Hop, as that day the Danes (according to a proverb we retain from antiquity) hopped without their heads.

Now, concerning the pride of the Danes, and their incredible tyranny exercised throughout the whole kingdom, which was the occasion of this their universal slaughter, our English historians have thus recorded of them, they caused the farmers and husbandmen to plow, sow and care the ground, and to do all the servile labour that belonged to agriculture and husbandry, whilst they kept their wives, and commanded their daughters and servants at their pleasure; and when the master of the house came home, he was forced to salute his superintendant Dane as his lord, and whilst the usurper eat and fed on the best, the poor oppressed owner could scarcely have his fill of the worst; besides, for fear and dread, they called them in every house where they had rule lord Dane; which, afterwards, when the English had attained to their former honour, grew to a title of great opprobry and contempt; for, when any one would rebuke or revile another, he would in scorn call him Lurdan, a word in the country in use even to this day.

But now comes in the *Eagle*, by which is intended Swanus king of Denmark, *who surpriseth both*, that is, subdueth the Saxons and the other Almans or Germans, whom they had admitted into the land; and after infinite devastations, depopulations, and spoils, with his broad wings soared over the whole kingdom, and made prey in every province thereof, (the particulars would ask much time and paper) who, in conclusion, took from the white Dragon, (the Saxons) after they had held the sovereignty

by many successive kings, both crown and sceptre. But, before this happened, the unfortunate king, whose only sight was with money, to impoverish his own people, and enrich the enemy, (for he often bought his peace, which proved to no purpose) he made Edricus, whom Merlin calleth the *Snake*, duke of Mercia, who was of low and base birth and parentage, yet had attained to great wealth and rich possessions, false of tongue, subtle of brain, and eloquent in speech, and perfidious in purpose and promise, which will more at large appear hereafter.

In this interim, Swamus so far prevailed, that the king, fearing the continual prosecution of the Danes, first sent Emma his queen, with his two youngest sons, which were Alfred and Edward, to Richard, the second of that name, and fourth duke of Normandy, who was her natural brother, and afterwards, was compelled to fly thither in person, with a slender train of followers; of which, when Swamus had notice, he grew inflamed with greater pride and insolence; and amongst other of his tyrannies, he fired the city of Canterbury, and slew 900 religious persons, tithing them, as killing nine and saving the tenth; with 8,000 women and children; and because the reverend bishop would not, and could not pay him down 3,000 pounds, he kept him prisoner seven months, and caused him afterwards, at Greenwich, four miles from London, to be stoned to death. And wheresoever he came, he reserved all the women, to be vitiated and deflowered, as well the religious as others, robbing the shrine of St. Edmund, not leaving any cruelty which could find a name, unperformed. At length, upon the day of the purification of the blessed virgin, in the year 1014, he died miserably, howling and crying three days and three nights together before his death; whom succeeded his son Canutus. And two years after, in 1016, expired at London, king Edelfred, and was buried in the church of St. Paul; whom succeeded his son Edmund, surnamed Ironside; and these two princes were the *two Lions* spoken of in the former prophecy, of whom you shall hear more in the ensuing chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER NINTH.

Of divers bloody battles fought betwixt Canutus and Edmund.—Their great opposition ended in a single duel.—They make peace, and equally divide the kingdom between them.—The traiterous death of Edmund.—Canutus revengeth it upon the murderer, with other occurrences pertinent to the story, &c.

EDMUND, surnamed Ironside, the son of Egelredus, and Canutus the son of Swannus king of Denmark, began to rule over the English nation, anno 1016, and in the 29th year of Robert king of France, the Londoners, with some of the English nobles, favouring Edmund, but the greatest part of the nobility and clergy adhering to Canutus, between which young and valiant princes were fought sundry cruel and bloody battles, too long here to rehearse. In which, infinite both of the natives and strangers fell by the sword. One of which was fought in Dorsetshire, besides a town called Gillingham; another in Worcester-shire, which continued from morning till night, when they surceased fighting, either for great weariness or for want of light, when both hosts joined the next morrow early and eagerly; in which battle, the traitor Edricus perceiving the fortune of the day to incline towards Edmund, pitched a dead man's head upon a spear, and calling to his countrymen, cried out with this acclamation, Fly you Englishmen, and preserve your lives, for, behold, this is the head of Edmund your king. Of which, the prince being warned, hasted to that part of the field, and plucking off his helmet to shew that he was living, so comfortably and courageously demeaned himself among his soldiers, that in the end he had the better of the day.

In the preparation of another field, when both the hosts were ready to join battle, upstarted one of the commanders, and appearing between the two armies, in the front of either, spake aloud as followeth: " You princes, both, to you I declare myself, you see how we daily perish, for neither of you gain an absolute victory; Edmund cannot be overcome because of his great strength and courage, and Canutus cannot be subdued, being also much favoured by fortune; What then shall be the final success of this inveterate malice and contention, when all your knights and soldiers are slain, shall you not be then enforced either to compound your enmity, or to fight hand to hand between yourselves? If this must be the end, Why do you not one of these two? For first, Is not the kingdom now sufficient for two, which before contented seven? or, if your spleen be so great, that it cannot be reconciled by an equal division of the land, why do not you two fight alone, that strive to be lords alone? For, if we all perish, who shall be left either to serve you, or to keep foreign invaders out of the land?"

Which words were so emphatically delivered, and took such impression in both the princes themselves and their armies, that a truce being made, they agreed to end the war between them in a single duel, for which was assigned and isle called Olkney, near Gloucester, encompassed with the water of the Severn, which makes good the prophecy.

" Two Lions shall a dreadfull combat make,
And have their Lists incompast by a Lake."

In which place, at the day prefixed, the two worthy and warlike champions, completely armed, singly met, the two hosts standing without the isle; where first they encountered with sharp lances on horseback, breaking them even to the very truncheons; then, they alighted, and fought long on foot with their keen swords, till their armours were broken in divers places, and they both were dangerously wounded, when retiring for breath, by the first motion of Canutus, they made an accord between themselves, embracing one another as brothers, to the great rejoicing of both armies.

After which, they made an equal partition of the land, and Canutus married Emma the mother of Edmund. But the Snake, Edricus, whom his lord had not only pardoned for his former treason, but promoted unto further dignity, by creating him earl of Kent: notwithstanding which, he corrupted his son then attending the king, who waited his opportunity, and as he was doing the necessities of nature, struck him with a spear into the fundament, of which mortal wound he died soon afterwards at Oxford. Then Edricus posted in haste to Canutus, and saluted him by the title of sole sovereign of the kingdom, insinuating, that for his love and honour, he had removed his competitor, and told him the manner how; which Canutus having truly understood, and that the treason was uttered from his own mouth, and in his personal hearing, like a just and wise prince, he replied unto him, Forasmuch, O Edricus, as for my love, thou hast slain thy natural lord whom I entirely affected, I shall exalt thy head above all the lords of England; and presently commanded his head to be struck off, and pitched upon a pole, and set upon the highest gate of London, and his body to be thrown into the river Thames; yet Marianus and others write otherwise concerning the manner of his death, which makes good what is formerly spoken, *That a speckled Snake*

“Ayming at high things shall his Lord betray,
Poysoning the Royall Nest in which he lay.”

Meaning the king's treason, in which the traitor was closeted, as one whom he most favoured and honoured.

Canutus being now sole monarch, the white Dragon was forced to stoop to the Eagle, that is, the Saxons were compelled to be under the subjection of the Danes, by whom they were so miserably oppressed, that scarce the tenth part of them were left in the land, and those that remained were forced to tithe their goods, and pay it as a tribute to the Danes. Therefore saith the prophet,

“Of the white Dragon (so the fates agree)
A Decimation in the end shall be.”

It followeth in the history, in a great assembly made of

the king and his barons, a question was propounded, whether in the composition made between Edmund and Canutus, there was any mention made of Edmund's children to have the inheritance of their father after his death, that was, in half part of the kingdom, to which a great part of them, thinking to insinuate to the king's favour, answered nay; but it happened unto them contrary to their expectation, for knowing them to be natural Englishmen, and before sworn to king Edmund and his heirs, he hated them for their perjury, never trusting them afterwards, but some he exiled, and some were slain, and others, being struck by the hand of God, died suddenly. It was likewise ordered by the foresaid counsel, that the two sons of Ironside, Edmund and Edward, should be sent to Swanus, (the elder brother of Canutus) king of Denmark; the purpose is diversly reported, some say to be slain, and that Swanus abhorring the act, sent them to Salomon, then king of Hungary, where Edmund died of a natural death; but his brother Edward in the process of time, married Agatha, the daughter of Henry, the fourth of that name, emperor, and by her (besides daughters) had a son surnamed Ethelinge. This Edward, of our English chronologers is named the Out-law, because he never returned into England, his native country. In this interim, died Swanus, king of Denmark, and the crown fell to Canutus, so that he was sole sovereign of both nations, the English and the Danes.

Canutus landed in Denmark with a strong army, to possess himself of his lawful inheritance, and to oppose the Vandals, who had pierced that land, and while the king was otherwise negotiated, earl Goodwin, with a band of Englishmen, set upon the invaders by night, and routed their whole army, for which noble act, the king had him in great favour, and the English nation ever afterwards. This king was greatly beloved of his subjects for many of his virtues, as being very charitable and devout, a great repairer and decorator of churches, especially of divers cathedrals, which he caused to be richly beautified with gilt, their altars and roofs more glorious than in former ages; thereby, confirming that part of the prophecy:

“What time the red shall to his joy behold
The roofs of all the Temples shine with gold.”

Some attribute the cause of his devotion to a noble care he had to repair what his tyrannical father had before ruined, that the memory of his atheistical cruelty might be quite forgot; others that it was at the altar of Emma his queen, the widow Dowager of Egelredus, and mother of Ironside, who was a lady of great religious sanctity. He made also a voyage to Rome, where he was pontifically received by Bennet VIII. and demeaned himself with great magnificence and honour. It is further reported of him, that after his great entertainment there, and return from thence, he was so tumored with pride, that standing by the side of the Thames at a flowing tide, he charged the water that it should presume no further, nor dare to touch his feet, which was so far from obeying his command, that he still keeping his ground; from his ankles it came up to his knees, at which, suddenly, steeping back out of the river, he blushed, and said; "By this, all earthly kings may know that their powers are vain and transitory, and that none is worthy of that name but he who created the elements, and whom they only obey."

This Canutus married his eldest daughter by his wife Elgina, daughter of the earl of Hampton, to Henry, son of the emperor Conadus II. and soon after died at Shaftbury, and was buried at Winchester, when he had reigned 19 years, leaving two sons, Harold, surnamed, for his swiftness in running, Harefoot, and Hardy Canutus, whom in his life time, he caused to be crowned king of Denmark. Harold succeeded his father in the crown of England. In the beginning of whose reign there was great doubt made of the legitimacy of his birth, or whether he was the king's son or no; but, more especially by earl Goodwin, who was a man of a turbulent spirit, who, to the utmost of his power, would have disinherited him, and conferred the kingdom to his brother. But Leoffricus, whom the king much loved and trusted, by the assistance of the Danes, opposed Goodwin and his son mightily, so that they were utterly disappointed of their purpose.

Harold was no sooner settled in the kingdom, but he robbed his step-mother Emma, (that good and devout lady) of her jewels and treasure, and then banished her from the land; wherefore, she sailed to Baldwin, earl of

Flanders, where she was nobly entertained, and continued all the reign of this Harold, in which he did nothing worth register, or deserving memory; who, after three years and some few months, died at London, (or as some say at Oxford) and having no issue, left his brother, Hardy Canutus, heir to the crown, with the death of whose elder brother I conclude this chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TENTH.

Merlin's prophecy of Hardy Canutus and earl Goodwin, which accordingly happened.—His many tyrannies, among others, his titling of the Norman gentlemen.—The death of	prince Alured, son to Canutus and Emma.—The strange death of earl Goodwin.—After the death of Edward the Confessor, Harold, earl Goodwin's son usurpeth.
--	--

YOU see how hitherto Merlin hath predicted nothing which the success and event have not made good. We will yet examine him farther, and prove if he will be as faithful in the future as the former. Who thus proceedeth :

“ And *Helluo* then with open jaws shall yawne,
Devouring even till midnight from the dawn :
And he an *Hydra* with seven heads shall grace,
Glad to behold the ruine of his race,
And then upon the *Neustrian* bloud shall prey,
And tithe them by the pole (now well away)
Burst shall he after gorg'd with humane blood,
And leave his name in part of the salt flood.
(Iron men, in wooden Tents shall here arrive,
And hence the *Saxons* with her Eglets drive, &c.”

It followeth in the history, Hardy Canutus, the son of Canutus and Emma, began his reign over England in the year of grace 1041, who was of such cruelty, that he was no sooner settled in the state, but he presently sent Alfricus, arch-bishop of York, and earl Goodwin to Westminster, to take up the body of his dear brother, and to part the head from the shoulders, and cast them

into the river Thames, which was by them accordingly performed; the cause thereunto moving, was for rifling, and afterwards exiling his mother Emma, whom he caused with great honour to be brought again into the land.

He revived also, the (almost forgotten) tribute called Dane-gelt, which he spent in drinking deep and feeding high, for these were his delight; for, besides his immoderate quaffing, he had the tables through his court, spread four times a day, with all the riot and excess that might be devised. Who himself minding only gormandizing and voracity, committed the whole rule of the land to Emma and Goodwin, (who had married the daughter of Canutus, by his first wife Elgina) by whom many things were much misordered, to the great discontent of the commons. This earl had many sons (as witnesseth Polichronicon, lib. 6. chap. 15.) by his first wife, who was sister to Canutus, he had but one, who by the striking of a horse was thrown into Thames, and there drowned, whose mother, afterwards, died by lightning, and was of such incontinent life, that she prostituted virgins and young women, to make base and mercenary use of their bodies. She dead, he married a second, of whom he begot six sons, Swanus, Harold, Tostius, Wilnotus, Syrthe or Surthe, and Leofricus, with a daughter named Goditha, who afterwards was married to Edward the Confessor.

Hardy Canutus, wholly devoted to all voluptuousness, being at a feast at Lambeth, in the midst of his mirth and jollity, drinking a carouse out of a bowl elbow deep, fell down suddenly, and rested speechless for the space of eight days; at the end of which he expired the eighth of June, when he had reigned two complete years, leaving no issue lawful of his body, and was buried by his father at Winchester, in whom ended the line and progeny of Swanus, so that after this king the blood of the Danes was quite extinct, and made incapable of any regal dignity within this land. Their bloody prosecution ceasing, which had continued (counting from their first landing in the time of Brighticus, king of the west Saxons) for the space of 255 years or thereabouts. By this Hardy Canutus, Merlin intended his *Helluo*, as being a gluttonous

prince, whose bibacity and voracity would continue from morning till midnight : in the first year of whose reign

The two sons of Egelredus and Emma, namely Alfred and Edward ; who before were sent into Normandy, came into England to see their mother, and were princely attended by a great number of brave Norman knights and gentlemen, of which earl Goodwin (that *subtle and sevenheaded Hydra* before spoken of) having notice, began to plot and devise how to match his only daughter, Goditha, to one of the two princes, but finding Alured, the eldest, to be of an high and haughty spirit, and would disdain so mean a marriage ; he thought, by supplanting him, to confer her upon the younger, who was of more flexible disposition, to compass which, he pretended to the king and council, that it might prove dangerous to the state to suffer so many strangers to enter the land without licence.

By which, he got power and authority to manage that business according to his own discretion, as being most potent with the king, and a great encourager of his profuseness and riot. Therefore, being strongly accompanied, he met the two princes and their train, and set upon them as enemies, killing the greatest part of them at the first encounter, and having surprised the rest upon a place called Guil-downs, slew nine and saved the tenth, and then, thinking the number of the survivors too great, he tithed again that tenth, putting them to cruel deaths, as winding their guts out of their bellies, with other torturing deaths ; then, he caused the eldest brother's eyes to be plucked out, and sent to a religious house in Ely, where he died soon afterwards ; but the youngest he preserved as an husband for his daughter, and sent him to his mother Emma. All which fulfils the former prophecy, which saith :

“ And he an *Hydra* with seven heads shall grace,
Glad to behold the ruin of his race.
And then upon the *Neustrian* blood shall pray,
And tithe them by the pole, &c.”

Emma, not trusting the tyranny of Goodwin, by whom she had left one son, the better to secure the other,

she sent him to Normandy; but Hardy Canutus being dead, he was sent ~~for~~ to receive his just and lawful inheritance; so that this Edward, the son of Egelredus and his last wife, Emma, began his reign over England in the year of grace 1043, and was soon afterwards married to Goditha (whom Guido calleth Editha) the sole daughter of earl Goodwin, who, as all authors affirm, lived with her without any carnal society; whether it was in hatred of her kindred, as by the greatness of her father compelled to that match, or for that he altogether devoted himself to chastity, it is left uncertain.

In the beginning of his reign, his mother Emma was accused to have too much familiarity with the bishop of Winchester; therefore, the king, by the counsel of earl Goodwin, seized upon many of her jewels, and confined her to a strickt keeping in the abbey of Worwell, the bishop, Alwin, was also under the custody of the clergy; but she more sorrowing for his defame than her own, wrote unto divers bishops to do their justice, affirming she was ready to undergo any trial whatsoever, to give the world satisfaction of her innocence, who laboured to the king that their cause might have a just and legal hearing; but Robert, arch-bishop of Canterbury, not pleased with the motion, said unto them, "My brethren bishops, how dare ye plead for her, who is a beast and no woman? as by defaming the king and her son, and yielding herself a prostitute to the incontinent Alwin; (proceeding further) but if it be so that the woman would purge the priest, who shall then purge the woman, who is accused to have been consenting to the death of her son Alfred, and hath prepared infectious drugs to the poisoning of her son Edward. But, be she guilty or no, if she will agree to go bare foot upon nine plow-shares burning and fiery hot, ~~for~~ herself four shares, and for the bishop five, he may then be cleared, and she also.

To which she granted, and the day of her purgation assigned; at which day, the king in person, with many of his lords were present, she was hood-winked, and led to the place where the irons lay glowing hot, and having passed over the nine shares unhurt, she said, Good God, When shall I come to the place of my purgation? When

they opened her eyes, and she saw that she had passed the torment without any sense of pain, she kneeled down, and gave thanks to the protector of chastity and innocence. Then the king repented him of his credulity, restoring to her what he had before taken from her, asking of her forgiveness and blessing. But the archbishop Robert, who was once a monk in Normandy, and was sent for over by the king, and first made bishop of London, and afterwards, raised to be metropolitan, fled into his country, and was no more seen in England:

After many insolencies committed against the king by earl Goodwin and his sons, (too long here to rehearse) they were forced to abandon the land, and fly into Flanders to earl Baldwin, (whose daughter Judith, Swanus his eldest son had married) and then, by a parliament, they were made out-laws and rebels, and their goods and lands seized; where they continued as exiles for the space of two years, during which time, William the bastard duke of Normandy, came with a noble train to visit the king his cousin, and were royally entertained, returning with great gifts and presents into his country, after which, Goodwin, by intercession of his friends here in England, was called home, with his sons, who were received into grace, and restored to their former dignities and possessions; giving for pledges of his fidelity, his son Wilnotus, and Hucun the son of Swanus, whom the king sent to William, duke of Normandy, to be kept in safe custody.

Not long afterwards, in the 12th year of the reign of this Edward the Confessor, upon an Easter-Monday, Goodwin sitting with other lords at the king's table, in the castle of Windsor, it happened that the king's cup-bearer stumbled, but recovered himself of the fall, at which the earl laughed heartily, and said, There! one brother helped the other; which the king observing, said, yea, and so my brother Alfred might have lived to help and sustain me, had it not been for earl Goodwin, by which words the earl apprehending that he upbraided him with his brother's death, thinking to excuse himself of the act, said, So may I safely swallow this morsel of bread that is in my hand, as I am innocent of that deed; in swallowing of which, he was choaked! which the king seeing, com-

manded him to be dragged from the board, his body being conveyed to Winchester, and there interred. Marciannus saith, That he was suddenly struck with a palsy, of which he died three days afterwards! Howsoever, he underwent a most remarkable judgment. His eldest son living, who was Harold, (for Swanus died in his pilgrimage to Jerusalem) had all his father's dignities and honours conferred upon him. But, in process of time, all those his lands in Kent (of which he was earl) were eaten up and devoured by the sea; upon whose dangerous shelves and quicksands, many thousands have been wrecked and drowned, and they are called Goodwin's Sands unto this day, which verifieth that part of the prophecy of the Hydra, where he saith:

“Burst shall he after gorg'd with humane blood,
And leave his name in part of the salt flood.”

Harold having done many noble services for the king and the country, in all which he came off with great honour and victory. About the 20th year of king Edward, he sailed towards Normandy, to visit his brother Wilnotus, and his nephew Hucun, who lay there at pledges for the peace between the king and earl Godwin, but either by the mistake of the unskillful pilot, or by the extremity of tempests, he was driven upon the province of Pountithe, and there surprised, and sent as prisoner to William, duke of Normandy, who, some say, forced him to take an oath to marry his daughter, and keep the kingdom of England to his behoof. But that which carrieth more shew of truth, is that Harold, to insinuate into the duke's favour, in whose power he now was, told him that his king, in the presence of his baronry, had selected him his heir, and covenanted with him, that if he survived his sovereign, he would keep the crown to his use; for which the duke gave him his daughter in contract, with promise of a large dowry; but she was yet in her minority, not ripe for marriage; in conformation of which, duke William gave him also his brother's son, Hucun, one of the hostages, and kept the other, and afterwards, sent him over with rich gifts. All which at his return to England, he acquainted the king with, who expired the fourth day of January, when he had reigned 23 years, seven months, and some

odd days, and lies buried in the monastery of Westminster, which he before had much repaired and beautified.

Whom succeeded in the throne, Harold, the second son of earl Goodwin, and last king of the Saxons, who began his reign over England in the year 1046; the ambition to gain a crown, making him to forget his oath and promise made to duke William. In the beginning of his reign, his land was invaded by his brother Tostius, who was beat out of the kingdom by Edwin and Malcharus, earls of Mercia and Northumberland. Then Harold Harfagar, king of Denmark and Norway, (whom Guido, the historiographer, calleth the son of Canutus) hearing of the death of Edward, with a fleet of 300 ships, entered the mouth of the river Tyne, pretending to conquer England, as his right and lawful inheritance; which Harold hearing, sent the two foresaid earls of Mercia and Northumberland, till he himself had gathered sufficient forces; who gave the Danes a strong battle; but, being overset with multitudes, they were forced to give back, so that the enemy entered further into the land; which the king hearing, Harold with his powers made haste, and met them at a place called Stratford bridge. In which interim, Tostius came out of Scotland, and took part against his brother. Between these two hosts, was fought a bloody and cruel battle, in which many brave knights breathed their last, and amongst them Tostius. The two Harolds of England and of Denmark, met, and fought hand to hand, in which combat, Harold of Denmark, fell under the hand of Harold of England, who was likewise master of the field, in which Olanus, brother to Harfagar, and Paulus, duke of the Orcades, were taken prisoners; of whom, Harold took sure pledges for their fidelity and homage.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER ELEVENTH.

The landing of duke William with the Normans.—The battle between him and Harold; in which Harold is slain, being the last king of the Saxon	blood.—William remaineth conqueror, and is crowned king of England.—His death, and the success of the prophecy.
---	---

HAROLD, ambitiously puffed up with his great victory, divided not the spoil taken from the enemy equally, but avariciously kept the greater part to his own use, and the remainder he distributed, not to those who had best fought, but to those whom he most favoured, by reason whereof, he lost the hearts of many of his knights. In this interim, died the daughter of duke William, (before contracted to Harold) by which, he thought himself fully discharged of his former duty and promise: but duke William was of a contrary mind, and by divers messengers, mixing fair terms with menaces, put him in remembrance of the breach of both, to which Harold gave a slight answer, that rash and unadvised covenants might be as well violated as kept; that it was not in his power to dispose of the crown and kingdom, without the assent of the peers and barons of the realm: besides, oaths and promises, made either by fear or force, were of no validity, and therefore, left him to take what course he pleased, according to his best direction, for that was his peremptory answer.

At which, duke William being much incensed, gathered a select army, which he caused to be shipped with all things necessary for so great an enterprize, and launching from the port of St. Valery, in a short time, landed near Hastings in Sussex, at a place called Penusy, making three pretences for his invasion: The first and chief was to challenge his right to the crown, as next heir, and moreover bequeathed to him, by his nephew, Edward the Confessor, upon his death bed. The second was to vindicate the bloody murder of his cousin Alfred, and brother of the late king, committed by earl Goodwin upon Gail-down, which was done (as he pretended) by the special instigation of Harold. The third was to revenge the banishment of arch-bishop Robert (before remembered in the accusation of queen Emma) with which, also, he chargeth Harold, as the sole animator of his exile. And hitherto Merlin's prophecies admit no contradiction, when he saith:

“Iron men, in wooden Tents shall here arrive,
And hence the Saxons with the Eglets drive.”

By the *Ironmen*, meaning the Normans, in iron casks and corslets; by *wooden tents*, their navigable vessels, who in Harold extinguished the blood of the white Dragon, the Saxons, and expelled the Eglets, who were the Danes, the brood of Swanus in that princely bird so emblemized. The story followeth, duke William landing, one of his feet slipped and the other stuck fast in the sand; which, one of his knights observing, cried aloud, A good omen, now William, England is thine own, and thou shalt change the title of duke unto king: at which he smiled, and piercing further into the land, he made proclamation, that no man should take any prey, or make any spoil, or do any violence to the natives; saying, it was no reason that he should offer outrage to that which should be his own.

Harold was at this time in the north, who hearing the Normans were landed, gathered his forces by the way as he came, to supply his army, which was much weakened by reason of the last battle fought against the Danes and

Norways, and sending spies into the duke's host to discover their strength, word was brought him, that his soldiers were all priests and lawyers, having their upper lips, chins, and cheeks shaven, (which was their custom then, and the English used to wear their mouchatos thick and long) to which Harold answered, but we shall find them neither baremen nor bookmen, but valiant knights, expert in all manner of warlike discipline. Then Gurth or Sýrth, one of the youngest brothers of Harold, advised him in person to stand apart, and that himself with the lords and barons would encounter the Normans, because he was sworn to the duke, and they not; and if they were put back, he then might rally their dispersed troops, and maintain his own claim and his country's quarrel, to which he would by no means assent.

Then duke William, by a clergyman, sent him three proffers, of which to take his choice: The first, that according to his oath, he should deliver up the crown, and all the rights thereto belonging; which done, to receive it again, and hold it of him as in fee during the term of his life, and after his death, to return it again to the said William, or to such a one of his sons as he would assign it unto. The second, to depart and leave the kingdom without more contention. The third, that to spare the shedding of christian blood, they might fight two singly, and end the quarrel by the sword. All which proffers, Harold refused, returning him answer by the prelate, that he would try his cause by the dint of swords, and not of one sword, and that he and his knights were ready to defend their country against all foreign invaders whatsoever. The duke hearing this his answer delivered unto him, gave a strict charge, that all his people, that night, should watch and spend the hours in prayer with the priest, when on the contrary, the English host passed away the time in dancing and drinking.

The next morning, (being Saturday) the 14th day of October, the two hosts met at a place where now standeth Battle Abby, in Sussex, (which was afterwards built, and so called by duke William, in memory of this battle there fought, and his great victory then achieved) in the beginning of which conflict, a Norman banneret called Thilfer,

slew three English gentlemen, one after another, but in attempting the fourth, was himself slain. Then began a terrible noise of the clattering of harness, the rushing of shields, the trampling of horses, with loud cries and acclamations on both sides, which the Normans opposed mightily, and the English defended themselves manfully, and the better, because they fought close, keeping their battle whole without scattering or ranging abroad, which when duke William observed, he gave a sign to his commanders that they should give back, as if they were almost compelled to fly and forsake the field, yet subtly embattling the foot, and placing the horse for wings on either side: the English hoping intantly to have routed them, dissevered their squadrons as for present pursuit; but, the Normans returning, took them at that disadvantage, and struck them down on every side: yet was this battle so stoutly fought by the Englishmen, that duke William, was there that day, beaten from his steed, and three horses slain under him: but, in the end, Harold was slain, being shot into the eye with an arrow, and fell down dead in the field; which his army seeing, they dispersed themselves, and every man fled to his best safety.

Thus died this valiant king Harold, having worn the crown from the fifth of January to the fourteenth of October, making up nine months and some odd days, and was buried in the monastery of Waltham, which he himself had founded, in whom ended the blood of the Saxons, which had continued from the beginning of king Hengist's reign, for the space of 581 years, all which time they had reigned as kings in this land, saving those 24 years, in which Edward the Confessor had the sovereignty) who was of the Norman blood by his mother Emma, daughter to Richard the Hardy, the third duke of Normandy, and first of that name.

Then, duke William buried his slain men, and suffered the English to do the like. Now, when the news of Harold's death came to the two earls of Mercia and Northumberland, who were not then in that battle; some think, that by reason of the distance and difficulty of the way, they could not arrive with their forces soon enough; but others have conjectured, that they purposely absented

themselves, because, in the division of the Danish spoils they were neglected, but howsoever, they came to duke William, and submitted themselves, giving pledges for their truth and fealty. Thus, William, duke of Normandy, surnamed the conqueror, base son to Robert, the sixth duke of that province, and nephew to Edward the Confessor, began his dominion over this realm of England, in the year of grace 1069, the 15th day of October, and was crowned upon Christmas day (by Aldredus, archbishop of York) next following. I now proceed to Merlin's next prophecy.

“ He that Iron Nation who leads forth for prey,
 Shall find full spoils, and where he feeds will stay :
 Suppressing the red *Dragon* for a space.
 Then shall arise two *Dragons* from his race:
 One, aymes at, but attains not his desire.
 By *Envies* Dart the other shall expire.
 The *Lion* next of *Justice* must appeare,
 Who 'gainst the *Celticke* Towers will ladders reare.
 And cause the Lily like the Aspen shake,
 Whose rore shall all the Island Serpents quake.
 (A cunning Alcumist) who hath the skill,
 Gold, both from flowers, and Nettles to distill.”

The first part is plain and easy, the appearance whereof is gathered from the former circumstances. Under the *man, who leadeth the iron nation forth to prey*, is figured the Conqueror, who brought into this kingdom, the strongly armed Normans, where, *finding fat spoil*, that is, a rich and fertile island, *where he feeds will stay*; that is, where he fareth well, and hath all things in his power, to his will and pleasure, there he will make his abode and plant himself, *suppressing the red Dragon for a space*, that is, the first Britains, after mingled with the Saxons, and from Hengist's men, called Englishmen, then with the Danes, and now again oppressed by the Normans, yet was the blood of the first natives (howsoever mingled) never extinguished, and the nation, howsoever, extremely suffering, yet never altogether eradicated and extirped. But to pass over the reign of the conquered, (because no further aimed at by my author) I proceed to the rest:

“Then shall two Dragons issue from his race.”

Meaning from duke William now living, (by which *two Dragons* are intimated his two eldest sons, Robert, surnamed Corthose or Shorthose, and William Rufus, so stiled because of his ruff hair and beard.)

This Robert, the eldest, because he might not be possessed of the duchy of Normandy, which his father had before promised him, he, by the aid of the French king, Phillip, and Lewis his son, invaded that duchy, and took divers prizes thence; which put his father to much grievance and trouble; insomuch, that at length, the father and the son, with two great hosts, met in the plain field, where, betwixt them, was fought a cruel and bloody battle, in which, king William was wounded, and beaten from his horse, and in great danger to be taken or slain; which, his son Robert hearing, in true filial piety, restored his father, set him upon a fresh horse, and delivered him from all danger. Howsoever, in that conflict, many of the king's men fell by the sword, and his son, William, received many wounds, so that they were compelled to forsake the field, and yield the honour thereof to his son Robert; for which rebellion, as some have related, he laid an heavy curse upon him, which proved fatal unto him in the end.

Some write, that by the leaping of a horse he got such a strain, (meaning king William) that it was the cause of his death, and when he found that he was past hope of life, he called his three sons unto him, exhorting them to fraternal love and unity; and by his will, appointed to Robert, the eldest, the duchy of Normandy; to William, the second, the kingdom of England; and to his third son, Henry, (because he was a piece of a scholar, surnamed Beauclerk) he bequeathed his moveables and treasure; then he informed his two eldest sons of the disposition of the people, whom they were to govern; advising William to be affable, courteous, and liberal to the English, and Robert to behave himself, roughly and sternly towards the Normans. Which having uttered, he died within few hours after in Normandy, and was buried in the city of Cane, in the third year of his duchy, but of his reign

over England, 21 years and 10 months, in the month of July. In which time of his sovereignty, he kept the English so straight and low, that none of the nation bore any office of profit or honour, but he somewhat favoured the city of London, by granting them their first charter, which is written in the Saxon tongue, and sealed with green wax, and is comprehended in eight or nine lines at the most. With whose death I also conclude this chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWELFTH.

The prediction of the two Dragons made good by the subsequent history in Robert and William, the two sons of the Conqueror.—Who the Lion of Justice was, and what was meant by his alchymy, &c.

WILLIAM, the second of that name, surnamed Rufus or the Red, began his reign in the month of July, in the year of grace 1089, but Rainolf, monk of Chester, in his polychronicon, affirms that Robert was absent at the death of his father, and having heard that he had preferred his younger brother to the crown of England, he was greatly enraged, and laid his dukedom to pawn to his brother Henry for certain sums of money, with which he had hired an army, and landed at Hampton; of which, his brother having intelligence, sent unto him with this submission following, Thy brother William intreateth thee to be no way incensed at what he hath done, for he calleth himself not absolutely king, but viceroy and thy substitute, and to reign under thee, being greater, and therein better, because before him born, who hath taken upon him this charge, only because of thine absence; yet since he is now in place and authority by thy sufferance, he humbly prayeth thee, that he may under thee still so continue, paying unto thee annually 3,000 marks, with condition, that the survivor of the two may peaceably enjoy the kingdom.

Duke Robert, who was not unacquainted with the politic proceedings of his brother, shook his head, and began to pause about an answer, and being of a loving and gentle disposition, bountiful withal, and still, preferring his

o

honour before his profit, (as in all his after proceedings he made manifest) condescended to his brother's request, and returned into Normandy; but William was of a more subtle and crafty condition, and yet, withal, ambitious after vain-glory; to maintain which, he extorted both from the spirituality and temporality. He builded Westminster hall, and by reason that his brother Robert was then in the holy wars, to redeem Jerusalem from the pagans, he spent some time in Normandy, about his brother's affairs. But, at his return, the building of the hall being finished, he seemed much discontented with the littleness thereof, saying, it was more fit for a dining chamber than a king's hall, purposing, if he had lived, to have made a far greater.

In the beginning of the 13th year of his reign, the third day of August, being hunting in the new forest, by the glancing of an arrow shot by the hand of one Sir Walter Tyrrel, the king was wounded to death, in the 44th year of his age; who escaped and saved himself, for none pursued him, and few (in regard of his former tyranny) were sorrowful for his death. Some think that this arrow was purposely aimed at him, to fulfil the prophecy of the two brothers:

“ One aims at, but attains not his desire,
By envies dart the other shall expire.”

Now, Robert, though he still aimed at the kingdom, yet never attained unto it, and the other died, according to Merlin's words, *spiculis invidiæ*, (*by the dart of envy.*) The king, thus wounded, was laid in a horse-litter, and conveyed to Winchester, where he died, and was buried. In his life time, he took upon him great things; the day before he died, one asked him, where he purposed to keep his Christmas, to which he answered, at Poitiers, for the earl intendeth a voyage for Jerusalem, meaning to seize upon his earldom.

Henry of Huntington reporteth of him, that though he was generally reported avaricious and gripple-handed, yet he was in his own condition, bountiful and liberal, as may appear by the narration following: The abbot of a great

monastery being dead, two well-monied monks of the same place, made friends to the king, offering large sums to be promoted to that dignity; there was, also, a third monk, who, out of his meekness and humility, had accompanied them to the court, and to give attendance on him, whom the king should admit to be abbot; who called to the monks severally, and either of them out-bid the other; the king casting his eye upon the third, (who came as their servant) thinking his business had been to the same purpose, demanded of him, if he would give more than his brethren had proffered; who answered him again that he would neither offer nor give to the value of one penny, neither would he take any such charge upon him, which came unlawfully by simony. Whose words, when the king had duly considered, he said, that he of the three was best worthy to take so holy a charge upon him, and gave it him freely.

Duke Robert, being at this time in the holy wars, the youngest brother, Henry, third son to the Conqueror, and first of that name, began his reign the fifth day of August, in the year of our Lord 1101, and this was he, whom Merlin calls *Leo Justitiæ*, the Lion of Justice; who banished from his court all flattering and effeminate sycophants. He was also abstinent, and abhorring gormandizing and the excess of feasts; he was, further, well studied in the seven liberal arts, and used to fight more with council than the sword; and yet, upon just occasion, he would shew himself as valiant as he proved fortunate.

In the second year of whose reign, Robert, his brother, being then employed in the wars of Palastine, against the miscreants and infidels, receiving news that his brother William was dead, and that his brother Henry had usurped the crown of England, notwithstanding that the Christian princes offered to make him king of Jerusalem, yet he refused that honour, but with great speed returned into Normandy, and there raised forces, to claim his right into the crown of England, and landed at Portsmouth, but a meditation of peace was made between them, and that he should have the yearly revenue of 3,000 marks, which he had in the days of king William; with which he returned fully satisfied, at which his lords and peers were much discon-

tented, as also, for other things, which in his easy nature he had yielded to, both against his honour and profit; for which, he was by them less regarded, and at the end, quite neglected.

This Robert, in his father's days, was in all his enterprises victorious, and afterwards, did many brave exploits at the siege of Acan, against the Turks; and (as is before said) was, by the great suffrage of the Christian host, chosen king of Jerusalem; but whether he thought it to be an honour with too much trouble, or for the covetousness of the crown of England, he made refusal thereof, for which it hath been thought, that he sped the worse in all his endeavours afterwards; for a dissention fell between him and his nobles, so that they sent to king Henry, his brother, that if he would come over into Normandy, they would deliver up the whole country into his hands; and acknowledge him their sole lord and governor, of which proffer, it is said, Henry accepted; but before any hostility was threatened, Robert came into England, to visit his brother and new sister, (for the king was lately married to Maud, the daughter of Malcomb, king of Scotland) at whose request, he released to his brother the tribute of 3,000 marks a year, and so departed.

Notwithstanding which, by the instigation of bad and wicked counsellors, this seeming brotherly love was quite abrogated and dissolved, so that the king, with a strong army, invaded Normandy, and by reason that Robert's peers and nobles fell from him, he chased him from place to place, and won his cities, Cane, Roan, and Faloy, with all other places defensible, so that Robert was forced to desire aid of Philip, the French king, and afterwards of the earl of Flanders, but they both failed him, so that with those few forces which he could make, he gave battle to his brother, in which he was surprised, and taken prisoner, and sent over into England, and put into the castle of Cardiff in Wales, where he remained his whole life time, and being dead, was buried at Gloucester; and thus, he who might have been king of Jerusalem, and twice king of England, (had he taken the opportunity offered him) died with no greater title than the bare duke of Normandy.

Wars then grew between the king of England and the

French king, in which they sped diversly; but at the end, Henry beat him in his own country, and had of him a glorious victory, to the great terror and astonishment of all the French nation, and those lesser princes of his confederacy, making good that part of the prophecy:

“The *Lion* next of *Justice*, shall appeare,
Who 'gainst the *Celticke* Towers shall ladders reare,
And cause the *Lily* like the *Aspen* shake,
Whose rore shall all the *Island* Serpents quake.”

By the *Lily* is meant the Flower de Lyce, which the French king bears in his scutcheon, which was said to quake like an aspen, (whose leaf, of all others, is soonest moved by the wind) by reason of the great affright and terror he put the French into at the noise of his drums, the thundering of his horses' hoofs, and the loudness of his warlike instruments.

About the 20th year of this king's reign, when he had been three years together in Normandy, the king took shipping at Harflute, (a part of that duchy) the 24th day of November, and arrived safe in England not many hours after. And soon afterwards, his two sons, William, who was duke of Normandy, with Richard his brother, with Notha the countess of Parsy, Richard, earl of Chester, with his wife, the king's niece, the arch-deacon of Hereford, with knights, gentlemen, and others, to the number of 140 persons, took shipping at the same port, to follow the king, but in their passage, the ship sunk under them, and they were all drowned to one man, saving a butcher, who reported that this disastrous misfortune fell by the negligence of the master and sailors; who, in the night, being at dissention among themselves, ran the vessel upon a rock, and split her. From which danger, the young duke, William, was escaped, by getting into a boat near the shore; but, when he heard the lamentable out-cry of the countess Notha, he commanded the rowers to row back, and if it was possible, to save her life; who, having recovered her into the boat, they were, by a tempestous gust, so over-charged, that it was violently overturned, and they were all swallowed by the sea; of which strange accident, Merlin also prophesied in these words:

"The Lions whelps their nature shall forsake,
And upon them, the shape of fishes take."

The king, to maintain his former wars, which proved so terrible to the French and others, was forced to exact money from all manner of people, not sparing the clergy nor the laity, and therefore, Merlin calls him,

"A cunning Alchemist, who hath the skill
Gold, both from flowers, and nettles to distill."

By the *flowers*, meaning the spirituality; by the *nettles*, the temporality. In the 27th year of this king's reign, died Henry, the fourth emperor of that name, who had before married Maud, the daughter of Henry, king of England; after whose death, she came to her father in Normandy, who, because he had no male heir left of his body, he caused all the bishops and barons, to swear in his presence, that they should keep the crown of England to the use of this Maud the empress, if he died without male issue, and she surviving.

In the 28th year of his sovereignty, Jeffrey Plantagenet, earl of Anjou, was espoused unto Maud the empress, from whom descended Henry the second, surnamed Short-mantle, who after Stephen was king of England. King William being in Normandy, (as some write) fell either with his horse or from his horse, which, afterwards, was the cause of his death. But Ranolph saith, that he took a surfeit by eating a lamprey, and died of that, when he had reigned 35 years, and some odd months, whose body, when it was embowelled, before it could be embalmed, cast such a stench, that none could abide the place where it was dissected, and though it was wrapped in a bull's skin, yet it little abated the smell, insomuch that divers were infected therewith, and the surgeon who cleansed the head, died of the unwholsome scent which proceeded from the brain, which some conjectured to be a just judgment, laid upon him for his merciless cruelty shewed upon his brother Robert, whose eyes (as some have reported) he caused to be torn out of his head during his imprisonment. His body was brought into England, and was afterwards buried in the abbey of Reading, which

he before had founded. After whose death, fame spoke of him as of all other princes, both in the better and worse part. Divers said of him, that he passed his predecessor kings, in three things, in wit, in eloquence, and good success in battle; and others spared not to say that he was pestilently infected with three notorious vices; covetousness, cruelty, and leachery.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRTEENTH.

<p>A brief relation of the troublesome reign of king Stephen, and his opposition against Maud the empress.—Of Henry Short-mantle and his pro-</p>	<p>ceedings, with a continuance of our English history, in every circumstance making good Merlin's prophecy.</p>
---	--

STEPHEN, earl of Bulloigne, and son to the earl of Bloys, and Maud, sister to the wife of Henry, lately deceased, began his reign over the realm of England, in the year of grace 1136, who was valiant and hardy, but as some affirm, contrary to the oath made to king Henry concerning Maud the empress, he usurped the crown, and was inaugurated by the arch-bishop of Canterbury, at Westminster, upon the day of St. Stephen, in Christmas week, which arch-bishop (who had taken the same oath) died shortly afterwards, with divers other lords guilty of the same perjury; which, as some write, was animated and encouraged by one Hugh Bigot, who was steward to king Henry, and presently, after his death, came over into England, and came before the said arch-bishop, other lords took an oath, and swore that he was present a little before his death, when he heard him disinheriting his daughter Maud, for some distaste that he had taken against

her, and had adopted for his lawful heir, Stephen, his nephew; to which, the arch-bishop, with the rest, gave too hasty a battle: neither did this Hugh, for his wilful perjury, escape unpunished, who soon afterwards, with great trouble of conscience, most miserably expired. But before I proceed further in the story, I will deliver unto you Merlin's prophecy of those times, which followeth:

“ Drop must a *Sagittary* from the Skies,
 But against him an *Eglet* will arise,
 (That in the *Morian* Mountains built her nest)
 And against that Celestial signe contest.
 She sayling, will a Lions whelpe appeare,
 Whose rore shall make the *Centaure* quake with feare,
 But when the two shap't Monster shall be tam'd,
 By gentle means, the whelpe will be reclaim'd:
 And when the Iron brood in the Land shal fail,
 The bloud of the white *Dragon* must prevail.”

By the *sagittary*, which is one of the 12 celestial signs, and is the same which he calleth the *two shaped centaure*, is figured king Stephen, who gave not the lions, as his former predecessors had done, but emblazed the before-named *sagittary* in his scutcheons, and therefore, he is by the prophet so stiled. By the *Eglet*, is also intended Maud the empress; and by the *Morian mountains*, a place in Italy so called, figurateivly, including all Italy, by a part thereof. Now let us see, how this, with the rest, is made good by the event.

In the beginning of his reign, king Stephen used great rigour against the clergy, as fining some bishops, and imprisoning others; besides, he seized on all the strong forts and castles within the realm, as still fearing the coming in of Maud the empress. In which time, Robert earl of Gloucester, the base son of king Henry, took displeasure against the king, for seizing the strong holds of Gloucester, Hereford, Webly, Bristol, Dudley, and others, part of which belonged to his inheritance; and therefore, he sent letters to his sister Maud, promising to assist her in the claim of her inheritance.

In the month of July, and sixth year of king Stephen,

Maud the empress landed at Portsmouth, and made towards Bristol; at which time, Stephen laid siege to the castle of Wallingford; who, hearing of her arrival, gathered all the forces he could make, and drew towards the enemy: in which time, Robert earl of Gloucester, and Ranulph earl of Chester, were joined to the empress, and when both their hosts were in the field, ready to give the alarm, Ranulph, earl of Chester, thus spoke to his soldiers, and said:

I require you, friends and countrymen, that I, who am the cause to bring you here to hazard your lives, may be the first man to put mine own in danger; whom earl Robert interrupted, and said, it is not unworthy to thee, who demandest the first stroke and hazard of this battle; who, both for thy nobleness of blood, and thy known magnanimity and courage, far surpasses other men, but the king's false oath hath levied men to this unjust war, in which we must either strive bravely to win the mastery, or else, be basely overcome; and now, we have run into that hazard, that none of us is safe, which shall not acquit himself by his knightly boldness, therefore, shew your valour, and be assured of victory.

Then earl Baldwin, standing in the front of the king's army, began to encourage his soldiers in this manner: To men that shall fight, three things are to be by them observed: First, the justice of the cause, lest they endanger their souls, which is clear on our part, who fight for our king and country. Second, the number of men, and the accommodation of arms, for few are not to oppose a multitude, nor naked men against armed, and we parallel, if not exceed them, both in ammunition and number. Third, boldness and courage, not for defence only, but offence, which methinks I spy in your faces; and therefore, of all these three, our army is sufficiently furnished. Now, what be our enemies? A weak and distressed woman, assisted by two weak supporters; Robert, earl of Gloucester, a man daring without deed, and accustomed to words, with words, not weapons; and Ranulph, earl of Chester, haughty, but withal fool-hardy, constant in nothing, and conscious only of conspiracies, who proposeth great enterprises, but never brings any to good effect; and for

many legions conducted by such leaders; the more they be in company, the sooner they be overcome.

At which word, he was cut off by the violent coming on of the enemy; and now began a cruel battle, resolutely and bravely fought on both sides, the violence whereof lasted long uncertain who should be victors; but, in the end, the king's host was utterly routed; but he, being of a more heroic spirit, (as scorning to fly) maintained the fight with some few of his knights, and was taken prisoner; and being brought before the empress, she commanded him to be conveyed under safe custody to the castle of Bristol, where he remained from Candlemas to Holyrood day next ensuing. After which victory, she was so exalted in thought, and puffed up with pride, that she thought now she had the whole kingdom in her own possession, and came triumphantly to Winchester, afterwards to Wilton, Oxford, Reading, St. Albans, and lastly to London; in all which places, she was royally received; and during her abode there, the queen made assiduate labour for the delivery of the king, her husband, promising he would surrender the whole land into her possession, and either betake himself to some religious order, or to become a banished pilgrim to the end of his life: but all was in vain, she could receive no comfort from the empress upon any conditions.

The citizens of London likewise petitioned unto her, that they might use the laws of Edward the Confessor, as they were confirmed by the Conqueror, and that she would be pleased to disannul the strict innovations imposed on the land by her father Henry; to which, she nor her council would not in the least wise consent. But the tide soon turned, for Kent took part with the king, and the Londoners being discontented at the denial of their suit, and being assured that the Kentish men would in all their enterprizes assist them, they purposed to have surprised her person; of which, she having secret intelligence, left a great part of her jewels and household stuff, and fled to Oxford; in which flight, many of her adherents were disheartened, and a great part of her forces dispersed and scattered.

Then the queen before so much despised, by the aid of

her friends, the Kentish men, Londoners, and others, gathered a strong host, under the conduct of one William de Pre, to pursue the empress; who, understanding the queen's forces daily to increase, and her's assidually to diminish, she left Oxford, and secretly escaped to Gloucester, whither the queen's host followed her. In defence of which city, Robert, brother to the empress, making an excursion from the town, was surprised and taken. Briefly, a communication was held between the two opposite parties, in which, after much debating, the business on both sides was concluded, that there should be one exchange made of the two prisoners, so that the king, upon Holyroad day, in the harvest, was released, and delivered up to the queen and her army; and Robert of Gloucester, was surrendered to his sister Maud the empress.

The land, in this time, was much distressed by these two armies, who were in continual agitation; sometimes the king having the better, and sometimes the empress; to relate which at large, would ask too long circumstance: but, in the end, the king had the better. In the 17th year of whose reign, died Ranulph earl of Chester, and Jeffrey Plantaginet, husband to Maud the empress; after whose death, their son Henry, surnamed Short-mantle, (because he used to go in a short cloak) was created duke of Anjou and Normandy; who, some few years after, married Eleanor, daughter to the earl of Poyctow, who had before been married to Lewis the French king, but for the too nearness of blood divorced, after he had received two daughters from her, Mary and Alice: so that this Henry was the earl of Anjou by his father, duke of Normandy by his mother, and earl of Poyctow by his wife.

This king, Stephen, had a son named Eustace, who, by aid of the French king, warred upon the forenamed Henry; in which the duke so knightly demeaned himself, that it proved to their great disadvantage. Some say that king Stephen would have crowned his son in his life time, but the clergy would not agree thereto, having a command from the bishop of Rome to the contrary, and therefore his purpose took no effect. Then the king laid siege to

the castles of Newbury, Wallingford, Warbÿck, and Warwell, which had been kept by the friends of the empress to her use, in hope of the coming over of her son, duke of Normandy, &c. who, the same year, with a great host entered England, and first won the city of Malmesbury, and afterwards came to London, and possessed himself both of the city and the tower, which more by his policy and promise, than by his potency and power performed.

Then king Stephen with his host, drew near to duke Henry, but by the meditation of Theobald, arch-bishop of Canterbury, and others of the clergy and nobility, (who met at a place called the Water of Urme) they were kept from present hostility; some endeavouring peace, others labouring war, as their humours and affections guided them. After which the king took his way towards Ipswich in Suffolk, and the duke towards Shrewsbury. In which interim, drowned Eustace the son of king Stephen, and was buried at Feversham in Kent, in the abbey which his father before had founded.

After which, Theobald, with others, ceased not to bring these two princes to an atonement, which was so earnestly laboured, that a peace was concluded, upon the conditions following; namely, that the king (having now no heir) should continue in the sole sovereignty during his life, and immediately after the conclusion and establishing of that edict, Henry should be proclaimed heir apparent in all the chief cities and boroughs of England, and that the king should take him for his son by adoption, as immediate heir to the crown and kingdom, wherein that part of the prophecy is fulfilled, which saith :

“ She failing, will a Lions whelp appeare,
Whose rore should make the *Centaure* quake with fear:
But when the two shap’t Monster shall be tam’d
By gentle means the whelp shall be reclaim’d.”

By the *Centaure* and the *two shaped Monster*, or the *Sagittary*, which are all one, meaning the king; and by the *Lion’s Whelp*, Henry, duke of Normandy, &c. and afterwards king of England. In the end of this year died king Stephen, when he had reigned 18 years and odd months, and was buried by his son Eustace at Feversham.

This king spent his whole reign in great vexation and trouble, which (as some conjecture) happened because he usurped the crown contrary to his oath made to Henry the first, that he should maintain the rights of his daughter Maud the empress. This Stephen was the son of Eustace, earl of Bulloigne, and of Mary, sister to Maud, who was married to his predecessor Henry. These two are the daughters of Margaret, the wife of Malcolm, king of Scotland, which Margaret was the sister of Edgar Etheling, and daughter of Edward the out-law, who was son to Edmund Ironside.

Maud the empress, daughter to Henry Beauclerk, had by her second husband, Jeffrey Plantagenet, this Henry, the second of that name, by whom the blood of the Saxons again returned to the crown, partly by king Stephen, but more fully by him, so that, consequently, the blood of the Normans continued but 70 years, 'accounting from the first year of William the Conqueror, to the last year of the reign of Henry the first, completing those words of the prophecy:

" And when the iron brood in the land shall fail,
The blood of the ~~red~~ Dragon must prevail."

^ white

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER FOURTEENTH.

Divers remarkable passages | towards him.—His vices and
during the reign of Henry the | virtues, his good and bad fer-
second.—His numerous issue, | tune; all which were by this
and how they were affected | our prophet predicted.

HENRY the second, son of Jeffrey Plantaginet and Maud the empress, began his reign over England in the month of October, in the year of our Lord 1155; of whom before it was thus prophesied :

“The Eglet of the Flawde league shall behold,
The Feathers of her prime bird shine in gold,
And in her third nest shall rejoyce: but hee
Who from the height of the great Rocke may see
The Countries round (both neer and far away)
Shall search amongst them, where he best can prey:
Some of whose numerous ayrie shall retaine
The nature of the Desert Pelican,
The all commanding keys shall strive to wrest,
And force the locke, that opens to his nest,
But break their own wards: of all flowers that grow
The Rose shall most delight his smell, and so
That least it any strangers eyes should daze,
Hee'l plant it close in a *Dedalian* Maze,
Fortune at first will on his glories smile,
But fail him in the end; alack the while.

The first words of this prophecy seem to reflect upon the empress his mother, *by rejoicing her third nest*, may be intended, that having three sons, Henry, Jeffrey, and William; the two latter failing, (as dying in their youth) she might rejoice in him, whose father being king, she saw to *shine in gold*; or else, being first espoused to Henry

the emperor, and next to Jeffrey Plantaginet, she might in her death, rejoice in her third espousal with her Saviour. But again, where he stiles her the *Eglet of the Flawde*, or the Borbon League, it may be conferred upon the queen, who being first married to the king of France, and through nearness of blood, divorced from him, and sent to her father, and after married to this king, being then duke of Normandy, she may be said first to have built her nest in France, second in Normandy, and the third and last in England.

This prince (as the chronicle describes him to us) was somewhat high-coloured, but of a good aspect, and pleasant countenance, fat, full chested, and of low stature. And because he grew somewhat corpulent, he used a sparing and abstinent diet, and much exercised hunting. He was well spoken, and indifferently learned, noble in knighthood, and wise in council, bountiful to strangers, but to his familiars and servants gripple handed, and where he loved once or hated, constant, and hardly to be removed. He had by his wife Eleanor, six sons and three daughters; the names of five of them were William, Henry, Richard, Godfery, and John, of whom two came to succeed him in the throne, Richard and John, of the sixth there is small or no mention. The eldest of his daughters was Maud, and was married to the duke of Saxony; the second, Eleanor, to the king of Spain; and the third, named Jane, to William king of Sicily.

This king was prosperous in the beginning of his reign, but unfortunate in the end, as the sequel will make apparent. He was of such magnanimity and courage, that he was often heard to say, that to a valiant heart, not a whole world sufficeth, and according to his words, he greatly augmented his heritage, and much added to his dominions. For he won Ireland by strength, and in the seventh year of his reign, (for divers affronts offered him by William, king of Scotland) he made such cruel war upon him, that in the end he took him prisoner, and compelled him to surrender into his hands, the city of Carlisle, the castle of Bamburch, New-castle upon Tyne, with divers other holds, and a great part of Northumberland, which William before had won from the borderers. He likewise added the whole kingdom to his own, and from the south ocean.

to the North islands of the Orcades; he closed all those lands as under one principal: which done, and receiving fealty and homage of the said king, having a certain sum of money promised to be paid into him within nine months following, he suffered him to go at liberty.

He spread his empire so far, that none of all his predecessors had so many countries and provinces under their dominion and rule: for, besides the realm of England, he had at once in his possession, Normandy, Gascoine, and Guien, Anjou, and Chinou, with Alverne, and others; and by his wife, as her rightful inheritance, the Pyrenean mountains, with part of France and Spain; which proves

— that he
 Who from the height of the great rock may see
 The Countries round (both neer and far away)
 Shall search amongst them, where he best can prey.

In the seventh year of his reign died Theobald, arch-bishop of Canterbury, and Thomas Becket, who was then chancellor of England, was translated unto that see. In the ninth year, the king called a parliament at Northampton, where he intended to abolish some privileges which the clergy had usurped, amongst which, one was, that no priest or clergyman, though he had committed felony, murder, or treason against the king's own person, yet had he not power to put him to death, which he purposed to have reformed, which Thomas Becket, then arch-bishop, violently opposed him, and gave him very peremptory and unseemly language, vilifying the king's prerogative and authority to his face; but when he saw he had not power to prevail against the king, he in great heat and haste, sped it unto Alexander, then bishop of Rome, grievously complaining on the king, and suggesting what injuries and innovations he would put upon the holy church, continuing there, partly in Italy, and partly in France, for the space of six years together.

After which time, Lewis king of France, reconciled the king and the arch-bishop, (the king being then in Normandy) and Becket returned to his see at Canterbury, whither he summoned all such persons as in his absence

had spoiled and rifled his moveables and goods, advising them, first, by fair means to restore them; but, when he saw that course prevailed not, he took a more severe and compulsory way, excommunicating and denouncing all such accursed in his anathema, (not sparing the king's royal person) at which the parties here in England, whom it particularly concerned, sailed over unto the king in Normandy, and made a grievous complaint against the said arch-bishop; at which, he being extraordinary incensed, said in the open audience of those then about him, Had I any friend that tendered mine honour and safety, I should ere this time be revenged of that traitorous arch-bishop.

At which time were present, and heard those words, Sir William Breton, Sir Hugh Morvill, Sir David Fitzvile, and Sir William Tracy; which four knights, having communed and considered among themselves, with an unanimous resolution, took shipping, and landed at Dover, and rode from thence to Canterbury, where, the fifth day in Christmas week, they slew the said bishop in the church as he was going to the altar, who had before, in the open pulpit, denounced the king, and divers others of his subjects accursed; which answers to the former prophecy:

“The All-commanding keys shall strive to wrest,
And force the lock that opens to his nest:
But breake their own wards, &c.”

By the *all-commanding keys*, is meant the power of the keys of Rome, who striving to *force the lock opening to his nest*, that is, his principality and prerogative, *broke their own wards*, which proved true in this Thomas Becket, primate and metropolitan, who was slain in the year 1170, over whose tomb, this distich was inscribed:

*Anno milleno, centeno sep'uageno,
Anglorum primus corruit ense thronus.*

Which with small alteration may thus be paraphrased:

*Anno, one thousand one hundred seventy dy'd,
Thomas the Primate in his height of pride.*

Henry, in the fourteenth year of his reign, caused his eldest son Henry, to be crowned king of England, at Westminster, giving him full power over the realm, whilst he himself was negotiated in Normandy, and his many other provinces, which after proved to his great disadvantage and trouble. In which interim, he had cast his eye upon a most beautiful lady, called Rosamond, on whom he was so greatly enamoured, that it grew even to a dotage, so that he neglected the queen's company, insomuch, that she incensed all his sons, who took up arms against their father in the quarrel of their mother, by which, the peace of the land was turned to hostility and uproar; yet, the king so far prevailed, that he surprised the queen, and kept her in close prison, and withal, was so indulgent over his new mistress, that he built for her a rare and wonderous fabrick, so curiously devised, and intricated with so many turning meanders and winding indents, that none, upon any occasion, might have access unto her, unless directed by the king, or such as in that business he most trusted. And this edifice he erected at Woodstock, not far from Oxford, and made a labyrinth which was wrought like a knot in a garden, called a maze, in which any one might loose himself, unless guided by a line or thread, which, as it guided him in, so it directed him the way out. But, in process, it so happened, that the sons having the better of their father, set at liberty their mother, who, when the king was absent, came secretly to Woodstock with her train, at such a time, when the knight, her guardian, being out of the way, not dreaming of any such accident, had left the clue carelessly and visible in the entrance of the labyrinth.

Which the queen espying, slipped not that advantage, but wound herself by that silken thread even to the very place where she found her sitting, and presenting her with a bowl of poison, she compelled her to drink it off in her presence, after which draught, she within few minutes expired, and the queen departed from thence in her revenge fully satisfied, for which cruel act, the king could never be drawn to reconcile himself unto her afterwards, and this makes good that of Merlin :

— of all the flowers that grow,
The Rose shall most delight his scent: and so

That lest it any strangers eyes should daze,
He plants it close in a *Dedalian* Maze.

Rosamond being dead, was buried in the monastery of Godstow, near unto Oxford, upon whose tomb was inscribed:

*Hic jacent in tumba, Rosamundi non Rosamund:
Non redolent, sed olet, quæ redolere solet.*

Which, by an ancient writer was thus paraphrased into English:

*The Rose of the World, but not the clean flower
Is graven here, to whom beauty was lent
In this grave full darke, now is her bowrer
That in her life was sweet and redolent:
But now that she is from this life blent,
Though she were sweet, now foully doth she stink,
A mirrour good for all that on her think.*

Such was their English poetry in those days. Long after the death of Rosamond, was shewed in that abbey, a rare coffer or casket of hers, about two feet in length, in which was a strange artificial motion, where were to be seen giants fighting, beasts in motion, fowls flying, and fishes swimming. This Henry was troubled by the queen's animating of his sons against him; betwixt whom were divers conflicts, which would appear tedious here to be rehearsed. It is written of this king, that in his chamber at Windsor, he had painted an eagle with four young ones, whereof, three of them pulled and picked the body of the old eagle, and the fourth picked at his eyes: and being asked what that picture should signify, he made answer, This old eagle figureth myself, and the four birds my four sons, whom cease not to pursue my life, but most of all, my son John, whom I most have loved, and therefore

"Some of his numerous ayrie will retain
The nature of the Desert Pelican."

The nature of the pelican in the desert being to pierce

her breast with her bill, and feed her young ones with her own blood. In the 28th year of this Henry, died his eldest son, Henry, whom he had before crowned, much repenting on his death-bed, for his unnatural rebellion against his father.

Rainold, monk of Chester, relates, that soon after the death of lady Rosamond, Lewis the French king, and the eighth of that name, sent to king Henry one of his daughters, to be kept for his second son Richard, whom the king vitiated, and laboured to Haguntia, a cardinal then in the land, for a divorce betwixt him and his wife, intending to have married that French lady; but he failed of his purpose, (for he meant by that match to have disinherited his unnatural sons.) It is further recorded, that when William, king of the Scots, was taken by the king of England, he did him homage at the city of York, and in witness of subjection, he offered his hat and saddle upon St. Peter's altar, which were kept there many years afterwards.

This king had many strange admonitions for the amendment of his life: one was, that in his return from Ireland, as he was taking his horse, there appeared unto him a man of a pale and meager aspect; bare-foot, and in a white mantle, who spoke unto him, and said, I am sent to thee from the Lord of the Sabbaoth, who commandeth thee to take order, that no markets be kept, nor any servile work be done on the Lord's day, (dressing of meat accepted only) which if thou seest performed, whatsoever thou purposest, thou shalt bring to a good and happy end. Which speech the king seemed to distaste, and said unto him that held his bridle, Ask of this churl, if he hath dreamed what he speaketh: to which the apparition answered again, Whether I have dreamed or not, take thou heed to my words, and amend thy life, or what thou now mockest, shall return to thy great misery; which having said, he vanished suddenly. The strangeness whereof, though he seriously apprehended, yet of the former there was nothing amended.

He had a second admonition by an Irishman, who told him all things which he had done in secret, which he had

thought none had known but himself, and withal, advised him to repentance and amendment of life; but he regarded it as the former. About which time, being the 24th year of his reign, were taken up the bones of king Arthur, and his queen Guenever, in the valley of Avalon; the hair of her head seeming white, and of a fresh colour, but as soon as touched, they turned to powder. Their bones were afterwards translated to the church in Glastonbury, and there the second time buried. They were found by a bard or singer of rhythmes, under the root of an oak, 15 feet within the ground. His third admonition I leave to the next chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER FIFTEENTH.

The inauguration of Richard the first, surnamed Cordelion.—A prediction of his reign.—His wars in the Holy Land.—His imprisonment by	the duke of Austria.—His brother John's usurpation.—His second coronation, with his unfortunate death, &c.
--	--

A KNIGHT called Sir William Chesterly, alias Lindsey, told him boldly, that there were seven things by him especially and suddenly to be reformed: First, to see better to the defence of the church, and provide for the maintenance thereof. Secondly, to see his laws better executed, and Justice more exercised. Thirdly, not to rob the rich, nor extort from them their goods by violence. Fourthly, to make restitution of all those lands and goods which he had so wrested. Fifthly, to make no demeanour or delay in just sentence, but suffer the right to have a lawful process. Sixthly, to see his subjects satisfied for such things as had been taken up to his use, and to pay his servants and soldiers which fell to robbery for that default. Seventhly, that he should speedily cause the Jews to quit the land. But this advise prevailed with him as the former.

In his 13th year, Heraclius, patriarch of Jerusalem, came into England, to solicit his aid against the Saracens, (who had invaded the christian territories) and to defend the holy city, which by Saladine, king of Surry, was won soon after; for by the relation of Peter Desroy, a French chronicler, Jerusalem was won by Godfrey of Bulloigne, in the year of grace 1099, and continued under nine

christian kings, of which, Guy of Resingham was the last. This Heraclius further proffered the king the keys of the Holy city, and of our Lord's grave, presenting him letters from pope Lucius, the third of that name, which charged him to take upon him the journey, according to an oath by him formerly made: to which the king answered, he could not leave his land in trouble as a prey to the French and his own aspiring son, but he would give largely out of his own coffers to such as would take that voyage in hand.

To which the patriarch replied, we seek a man, not money; every christian prince sendeth us money, but none sendeth us a prince, therefore, we demand a prince that needeth money, and not money that needeth a prince; who, finding no other comfort from the king, departed his presence much discontented: but the king thinking to sooth him up with fair words, followed him to the sea side; but the more the king laboured to humour him, the more hardened and harsh he grew against the king, and said unto him, Hitherto thou hast reigned gloriously, but hereafter, thou shalt be abandoned of him whom thou forsakest; think what he hath given unto thee, and what thou, in gratitude, hast returned unto him again; who, at first, wast false to the French king, and afterwards, slewest Thomas Becket, and now, lastly, forsakest the protection of Christ's faith. At which words the king was much moved, and said to the patriarch, though all the people of the land were one body, and spoke with one mouth, they durst not say to me as thou hast done; true saith the patriarch, for they love thine and not thee; the safety of thy goods temporal, but not the safety of thy soul. Then he offered his head to the king, saying, now do me that right which thou didst to thine arch-bishop, for I had rather be slain by thee than by the Saracens.

The king kept his patience, and replied, should I depart out of the land, mine own sons would seize upon my crown and sceptre in mine absence. No wonder (answered the patriarch) for of the devil they come, and to the devil they shall go, and so he departed from the king in great anger. After which, all things went averse and against him. Giraldus Cambrensis writes of him, that he

cherished strife among his own children, thinking thereby to live, himself, in the more rest: and further saith, that he was peerless for three things, wit, war, and wantonness. He reigned 26 years victoriously and gloriously, four years distractedly and doubtfully, and his last five years unfortunately and miserably, and in the end, by mere vexation and anger, he fell into a fever, and died thereof in the castle of Chinon in Normandy, in the month of July, when he had reigned 34 years, eight months, and odd days, and was buried at Fountblew, fulfilling that of the former prediction:

“Fortunate at first, shall on his glories smile,
But fail him in the end, &c.

Richard, the first of that name, and second son of Henry, surnamed Short-mantle, succeeded his father, and began his reign over England in the month of July, 1189; who, upon the day of his coronation, commanded that all the prisoners, in or about London, which lay in for the king's debt or otherwise (murder and treason excepted) should be set at large, of whose future reign it was thus predicted:

“The Lions heart weel gainst the sarazen rise,
And purchase from him many a glorious prise.
The Rose and Lilly shall at first unite,
But parting of the prey prove opposite.
Jebus and Salem will be much opprest,
As by the lame and blind again possest.
The Lion-hearted amongs Wolves shall range,
And by his art, Iron into silver change.
But whilst abroad, these great acts shall be done,
All things at home shall to disorder run,
Coopt up and cag'd, then shall the *Lion* bee,
But after sufferance ransom'd and set free.
Then doubly crowned: two mighty ones whose prides
Transcend; twixt whom a seas arme only glides,
(Ambitious both shall many conflicts try;
Last, by a poysonous shaft the *Lion* dye.”

This king, soon after his coronation, conferred upon his brother three great dignities and honours, as the earldom of Nottingham, Cornwall, Chester, and Lancaster, and

married him to the daughter of the earl of Gloucester, who was his only child, by which he was heir to that earldom also ; all which he afterwards, but cruelly, requitted : then the king sought to be absolved for his rebellion against his father, which he easily purchased, upon promise to pursue the wars in Palestina, which his father had refused, and to expedite that voyage, he gave over the two castles of Barwick and Rochburgh to the Scotch king, for 10,000 pounds, towards the charges of his journey : moreover, he sold to the old bishop of Durham, that province, for a great sum of money, and (as he had covenanted) made him earl thereof. Which done, the king laughed, and said to the standers by, observe what art and cunning is in me, who can make a young earl of an old bishop. By such means he emptied many of the clergy's bags, and filled his own coffers ; granting large fees and annuities out of the crown ; for which, some (as far as they durst) blaming him, he replied unto them, that it was good for a man to aid himself with his own ; adding, that if the city of London was his, at that time of his need, he would sell that also, if he could meet with a merchant able to buy it.

In the second year of his reign, he made William Longshamp, bishop of Ely, chancellor of England, leaving the whole land to his guiding, then sailed he into Normandy, and thence into France, to Philip the second, and after covenants drawn between them, for the continuance of so great and hazardous a journey, in the spring of the year they set forward, Richard by sea, and Philip by land, appointing their rendezvous in Sicily : where meeting, (as it was agreed) a difference grew between the two kings, insomuch that king Philip left Richard in Sicily, and departed towards Acon or Acris. In which time, the king of Cyprus took two of king Richard's ships, and peremptorily denied their delivery.

For which he invaded the kingdom of Cyprus, making sharp war therein, chasing the king from city to city, insomuch that he was compelled to yield, upon condition that he should not be laid in bonds of iron ; whereof the king accepted, and kept his promise, causing him to be fettered in chains of silver, verifying that part of the prophecy :

"The *Lion*-hearted amongst Wolves shall range,
And by his art iron into silver-change."

When he had remained there for the space of two months, taking his pleasure of the country, and victualled his navy; he steered his course towards Acon, and by the way he encountered a great ship of the Soldans, furnished with store of ammunition and treasure, which he surprised and seized, after which, he safely arrived at the foresaid city, and met with the king of France, of whom he was joyfully received; for not long before, 2,000 of his army were cut off by the Saracens: then king Richard caused the city to be violently assaulted on every side; so that they were forced to yield it up upon these covenants following: To deprat the place, leaving behind them horse, armour, victuals, and all things belonging to war; and further, to restore and set at liberty all such Christian prisoners, as were then under their yoke and bondage, with divers other conditions, but these the chiefest: and this was done in the month of August, and in the year of our Lord 1192.

But in dividing the spoil of the city, which was great and rich, there fell out also a division between the two kings, which kindled a fire that never was quenched; the motives inducing thereto were (as Polychronicon reports) because Richard denied to Philip half of the spoil and booty taken in Cyprus, alledging that their covenants stretched to no further than to those purchased in the Holy Land; another was, that king Richard being in Sicily, married the daughter of the king of Navar, where before he had promised to espouse the sister of the king; for which, and other causes, the French king, with a small number of ships, departed from Acon, thence to Puis, afterwards to Rome, and so into his own country, leaving the duke of Burgundy general of the French in his stead, which fulfils that part of the prophecy:

"The Rose and Lily shall at first unite,
But parting of the prey prove opposite."

During king Richard's stay there, he sold the kingdom of Cyprus to the knight templers for 30,000 marks, and

(as the French chronicle reports) forced it from them again by strength, and gave it to Guy of Resingham, the last king of Jerusalem; and further, for an affront offered him, he took the duke of Austria's banner, and stamped it under his foot, for which, the duke sought all advantages to be revenged on him, (as shall be related hereafter) he then, because the Turks had not delivered to him the Holy Cross, according to their agreement at the taking of Acon, slew all that were in the city with their pledges and hostages, the whole number, as some write, amounting to 5,000 persons; then he provided for the present siege of Jerusalem, which as he was given to understand, was at that time much distressed. For it followeth:

“Jebus, and Salem shall be much oppress,
As by the lame and blinde again possesst.”

Of *Jebus and Salem*, the Holy City, had the denomination of Jerusalem; and by the *lame and blind*, is intended the idols of the infidels, who have feet and walk not, eyes and see not, &c. King Richard, marching within five miles of the place, purposed to environ it around, that no supply or succour might be brought into it, daily expecting the duke of Burgundy with the French to follow him: who, perfidiously against his oath and promise, made an oration to his soldiers as followeth: It is known unto you all, noble friends and countrymen, that though our sovereign lord the king be absent, yet all the flower and chivalry of France are here present, and whatsoever is done to the dignity of the Christians, and disgrace of the infidels, is most likely by us to be achieved, the English being cowards and meacocks, and we courageously and manly; yet, whatsoever noble act shall be attempted by us, the honour thereof shall be attributed to them, their king being resident here, and ours so far remote from hence: my counsel is, therefore, that we march back to Acon, and leave them to the hazard that aim at the honour: which speech so prevailed with his people, that Richard was prevented in his former purpose, and the duke of Burgundy died soon afterwards.

Yet this lion-hearted leader was no way daunted with the French delirements: but raising his siege, he pursued

the Soldans, who then begird the town and castle of Japhath, and won it, taking there many Christian prisoners, and then manned it with his own men, sending them whom he surprised to be elsewhere imprisoned, whom king Richard coming too late to the siege, most fortunately met and rescued. Which done, he set upon the town and castle, and took them, setting there a strong garrison of Christians. After which victory, he won Dacon and Garles, two great cities, and repaired the castle of Askelon, with many others, which the pagans had much defaced and ruined. After which, he commanded all his prisoners to be slain, which others sold to their profit and advantage, by which he grew to be the greater terror of the Turks. But victuals daily diminishing, and sickness increasing in his army, and the French failing him, having set things there in the best order that necessity would permit him, he took shipping at Acon, (called also Tholomida) and from thence he sailed into Cyprus: then he sent his wife and her sister, with the greatest part of his people into Sicily, and because he could not well brook the sea, he thought to make a short cut into Histria, but by force of weather was driven ashore between Venice and Acquilea, where landing, with that small train which followed him, he was espied by some of the duke of Austria's knights, (whose standard he had trod under foot) who after laid wait for him, and took him, the manner whereof I leave to the ensuing chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER SIXTEENTH.

The rest of the prophecy | by the pope, to whom he is
made good in the subsequence. | compelled to resign his crown,
—The troublesome reign of | and afterwards to hold it as
king John.—His loss of Nor- | from him.—His death.
mandy.—His land interdicted |

IN the absence of the king, whilst he was busy in his wars abroad, the bishop of Ely, chancellor, and prorex at home, opposed the lords, abused the commons, and oppressed the clergy: he rode not abroad attended with less than 1000 horses; to maintain which pomp and Luciferian pride, he extorted from the poor, from the peers, but especially from the prelates; holding in his hands at once, besides Ely, the two arch-bishopricks of Canterbury and York, imprisoning whom he pleased, and releasing where he liked; nor was the king more earnest in vexing the pagans and infidels in the lands of Palestine, than he was eager and extreme against his Christian brethren, whose patronage and protection were committed to his charge, so that it verifies,

“ Whilst that abroad such great acts shal be done,
All things at home will to disorder run.”

In which interim, the king being on all sides ambushed by the Austrians, for between Venice and Aquilea, in a province belonging to the duke, he was beset by one Mainart de Goresen, but with the loss of some of his train, he by his manhood escaped. Afterwards, at a town named Frisach, one Frederick de Saint Soon, made a

second attempt upon him, and took six of his knights, but he by his noble valour made his way through the ambush of the enemy without surprisal, and struck up towards Germany; but spies being sent, to know what course he took, he was at length betrayed into the hands of the duke of Lemple, cousin to the emperor, who sent him to the duke of Austria. He presently rifled him of all the treasure and jewels he had about him, and committed him for a month to straight and close prison.

During which time (as some write) the duke put him to cope singly with a great and mighty lion, weaponless and unarmed; who having conquered the beast, ripped his heart, and flung it in the duke's face, and afterwards, with a blow under the ear, he slew the duke's son, and further, that his daughter being enamoured both of his person and great valour, he left her vitiated and deflowered. But howsoever, in this all witnesses agree, that when the month was expired, he sent him to the emperor, who was Henry, the first of that name, and son to Frederick the first, who put him into a dark and obscure dungeon, covenanting with the duke, that he should have the third part of his ransom. There he remained for the space of a year and three months, at length, upon a palm sunday, he caused him to be brought before his princes and lords, to answer what could be objected against him, where he appeared with such a manly and majestic aspect, and withal, answered so directly and discreetly to whatsoever was laid to his charge, that they generally commiserated his unjust durance. Then his ransom was set at 100,000 pounds sterling, and hostages given for the payment by such a time: which done, he was set at liberty. Which verifies:

“Coopt up, and cag'd then shall the *Lion* be,
But after sufferance ransom'd and set free.”

The king in the eighth year of his reign, about the latter end of March, landed at Sandwich, and came straight to London, where he was joyfully received, and then, calling a council of his lords, he first took order to pay his ransom; and because his brother John, in his absence, had usurped the diadem, and was at that time in France, he deprived him of all honour and title, and took

from him those earldoms and revenues that he had conferred upon him, and caused himself at Winchester to be the second time crowned, and then began the ancient grudge to revive between the two kings of England and France, which was the more aggravated, because the French king supported John, against the king his brother: but prince John seeing how much his fame was magnified in the mouths of all men, and that all the parts, both of Christendom and Paganism, resounded with his praise, he made means to his mother, queen Eleanor, by whose mediation, peace was made between her two sons, whilst the wars in Normandy and France went still forward.

Many wearied the battles fought betwixt the two kings, and much effusion of blood on both sides, where sometimes the one, and sometimes the other had the better, but for the most part Richard the best, during which combustion, before the last 20,000 pounds for his ransom was paid, his two hostages, the bishops of Bath in England, and Roan in Normandy, came unto him, and told him that they were set at liberty by the emperor, and further shewed, that his great enemy, the duke of Austria, was accused of Innocent the third, then pope, for the injuries before offered him, and that upon St. Stephen's day, he pricked his foot with a thorn, which gangrened, and should have been cut off, and being told he must die, he sent to his bishops to be absolved, which they had denied to do, till he had shown himself repentant, for the foresaid wrongs, and released his hostages, which being accordingly done, the duke died, and they were delivered.

In the process of the wars before spoken of, king Richard, in the 10th year of his reign, after Christmas, besieged a castle in France near Lymoges, called Gaylyard, the cause was, that a rich treasure being found within the seigniory of the king of England, by one Widomer, viscount of Lemurke, he had denied to render it up, and fled thither for his refuge, and defended it manfully till the fifth day of April, upon which day, the king walking unadvisedly, to take view of the fort, and where it might be best entered, one named Bertrand Genedow (whom some writers call Pater Basale) marked the king and wounded him in the head (some say in the arm) with a poisoned arrow; after which hurt received, he caused a violent and

desperate assault to be made, in which he won the castle, then he made inquiry, who he was that wounded him, who being found, and brought before him, the king demanded of him, why he should rather aim at his person than any of those who were then about him; who boldly made answer, because thou hast slain my father and my brethren, for which I have vowed thy death, whatsoever became of me: the king after some pausing leisure, for that answer gave him his pardon and liberty, but the rest of his soldiers he put to the sword, and caused the castle to be razed to the earth, and died the third day after, whose body was buried at Fountblew, at the feet of his father, which no way errs from the prophecy:

“—————For potent Kings, whose prides
Transcend: 'twixt whom, a sea-arm only glides,
(Ambitious truth) shall many conflicts, try
Last, by a poysonous shaft the King shall die.”

John, the youngest son of Henry the second, and brother to the late deceased Richard, was proclaimed king the 10th day of April, in the year of grace. 1199, and was crowned at Westminster, upon Holy Thursday next ensuing, of whom it was thus predicted:

“ The subtle Fox into the Throne shall creep,
Thinking the Lion dead who did but sleepe,
But frighted with his waking rore, finds cause
To flie the terrour of his teeth and paws,
After this Leopard, stain'd with many a spot,
Shall loose all *Rollo* by his *Gilla* got,
Then shall those keyes whose power awe the fates
For a long time, lock up his Temple gates,
Unburthen him of all the charge he beares,
And wrest from him the Lawrell that he wears.
Woes me, that from one Leopard should be torne
What many Lions in their pride have worne.
Hither the *French Flower* would it self transpose
Where must spring after, many a glorious rose.
He that did (all he might) the Kirk despise,
Against his life shall a base Kirk-man rise.”

The former part of this prediction is apparent in the premises, where John sought, like a fox, subtly and

craftily to insinuate into the people's hearts, and rob him of his kingdom, thinking his brother all that time as dead, when he was utterly despairing of his liberty, but finding him awake, as being enfranchised and set at large, he then was frightened by the least frown of his brows, being glad to mediate his peace by his mother; the rest shall follow in order. He was of a disposition coarse and retrograde, self-willed and proud, in all, or most, of his undertakings very unfortunate. In the first year of his reign, he divorced himself from his first wife, daughter of the earl of Gloucester, pretending too near propinquity in blood, and soon afterwards, married Isabel, daughter to the earl of Angoulesme in France, by whom he had issue, two sons, Henry and Richard, and three daughters, Isabel, Eleanor, and Jane. He was, before his coronation, girt with the sword of the dukedom of Brittany, and suffered it to be taken from him by his young nephew Arthur, son to Jeffrey Plantaginet, to his great derogation and dishonour, he afterwards left all Normandy, which the French king won from him, even to one town and village, approving that of the prophet:

“After this Leopard, stain'd with many a spot,
Shall lose all *Rollo*, by his *Gilla* got.”

The prophet, for his stained and contaminated life and government, would not vouchsafe him the name of a Lion, but a *Leopard*, alluding as well to his spotted fame as his skin, by whose cowardly and unkingly proceedings, Philip the French king, seized all Normandy, and took it into his absolute possession, annexing it into his crown, which no French monarch ever had, since the time of Charles the Simple, who gave that dutchy to *Rollo*, as a dowry, with *Guilla* his daughter, which had successively continued under the sovereignty of the dukes of Normandy and the kings of England, 300 years and upwards.

In the first year of his reign, Stephen Langton being chosen archbishop of Canterbury by the monks, the election was opposed by the king, for which, he complained on him to the pope, who sent unto him loving and kind letters, to admit of the said Stephen, to which his lords advised him; but the more he was importuned, the more impla-

cable he grew, returning the pope's messengers back with peremptory denial. The next year came a strict commandment from Rome, that unless the king would peaceably suffer the said archbishop to enjoy his see, that the whole land should be interdicted, charging these four bishops, William of London, Eustace of Ely, Walter of Winchester, and Giles of Hereford, to denounce the king, and his land accursed, unless his command was punctually obeyed. But though these prelates, with the rest of his peers, were urgent with him to eschew the rigorous censure of the church, all was to no purpose, for which, upon the 26th day of March, they began in London, and first shut up the doors of all temples, churches, and chapels, with all other places where divine service was used; and as in London, so they did through the whole land; for which the king was so enraged, that he seized all their temporalities into his hands, putting them into such fear, that they were forced to fly to the banished archbishop: some write, that this interdiction was of such power and validity, that during the time thereof, which was six years, three months, and odd days, no service was said, no sacraments administered, no child christened, none married, and not any suffered to come to confess.

In this interim, the king from anger grew to rage, proclaiming that all persons, spiritual or temporal, that held any lands or other livelihood here, should by the next Michaelmas return into the land, or failing therein, forfeit their whole estates: besides, that diligent search should be made, what letters should be brought from Rome, which should be delivered to the king: then, he extorted from all the monasteries, not sparing any religious house that had dependance on the clergy: for which, a new commission was sent from Rome, by virtue whereof, the curse of interdiction was again denounced, to which, by the authority of the pope, was added, that this his Bull acquitted, and absolved all the lords of England, as well spiritual as temporal, from all duty and allegiance before sworn to the king, and that they might lawfully rise in arms against him, to depose and deprive him of all regal honour and dignity: but all these took no more impression on him, than if they had been chiselled in the ears of a deaf man, or proclaimed to a statue of marble.

But, by the way, (which I cannot let pass) this king, John, in the 10th year of his reign, and of grace 1210, granted to the city of London, by his letters patent, that instead of two bailiffs, by which their magistracy was held, they should yearly choose themselves a mayor and two sheriffs, which mayor was Henry Fitzallwin, and Peter Duke and Thomas Neale, Sheriffs. The same year, London bridge, which before was of timber, was begun to be built of stone, and St. Mary Overy's church to be erected in Southwark.

• •

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER SEVENTEENTH.

A continuance of some passages in king John's reign.—Henry the third succeedeth his father.—A prediction of his reign.—His brother Richard made king of the Romans.—Henry's long reign.—The mad parliament.—The barons' war.

I PROCEED where I left. In the same year, the pope sent over his legate, Pandolphus, with another A' Latere to accompany him to solicit the same business, who were sent back with a like frivolous answer: yet, he sent again, the year following, the same Pandolphus, threatening wonders if he did not receive Stephen Langton into his archbishoprick, and make restitution of all such moneys and other moveables, of which he had robbed the monasteries, &c. Then, at last, the king considering into what dangers he had intricated himself by his peremptory denials; how he had lost Normandy abroad, and then, in what desperate state his kingdom stood at home; that his lords were acquitted of their allegiance, and in what danger his soul, and his people's were, he and his whole nation standing accursed, he, at length, condescended to submit himself to whatsoever the court of Rome should determine. The articles proposed by the pope, and by him to be performed, were these following:

Peaceably to suffer Stephen Langton to enter into the land, and to enjoy the primacy and profits of his archbishoprick, and that those whom he had banished should be repealed, and their goods whom he had rifled should be to them

restored. And that he should yield up his absolute right and title to the crown of England, and he and his heirs thenceforward, to hold it of the pope and his successors. To which having granted, he and his lords being sworn to observe the same; he kneeling, took the legate to to him, and took the crown from his head, and delivered it to the pope's use, saying these words, I here resign up the crown of the realms of England and Ireland, into the hands of pope Innocent the third, and put myself wholly into his power and mercy. Then Pandolphus, as deputy for the pope, took the crown, and kept it five days in his possession, and then the king received it from him again. First, having sealed and delivered up an instrument or writing; the effect was, that he could challenge no power but by permission of the pope; and further, to pay to the apostolic see yearly 1,000 marks of silver, 700 for the crown of England, and 300 for the kingdom of Ireland; for the payment of which tribute, the Peterpence were afterwards gathered, and this confirms the premises expressed in the prophecy :

“ Then shall those keyes whose power would awe the fates,
For a long time lock up his Temple gates,
Unburthen him of all the charge he beares,
And wrest from him the Lawrell that he wears.
Woes me, that from one Leopard should be torne
What many Lions in their pride have worne.”

It is made so plain, that it needs no further interpreter. In those days, lived one called Peter of Pomfret, a bard (and such then were held as soothsayers and prophets, who predicted divers of the king's disasters, which fell out accordingly. Amongst which, one was, that he should reign but 14 years. But, when the king had entered the 15, he called him into question for a false prophecy, to which he answered, that whatsoever he had foretold was justifiable and true; for, in the fourteenth year, he gave up his crown to the pope, and he paying him an annual tribute, the pope reigned and not he. Notwithstanding which apology, he caused him, as a traitor, to be hanged and quartered.

After which he bore himself so aversly towards his barons, that the greatest part of them fell from his allegiance,

and called in Lewis (son to the French king) into the land, covenanting to make him king, who was received with his whole army, and possessed of London, the tower, and many other strong holds in the kingdom; between whom and the king were fought sundry conflicts and skirmishes, in which they sped diversly. During which dissention, in the 17th year of his reign, he expired (as the author of Polychronicon saith) at Newark, of a bloody flux. But, by the relation of our English chronicle, to which we give more credit, as also, by the authority of Mr. Fox, in his Martyrology, he was poisoned by a monk, (having been a great rifler of their monasteries) and died at Swinsted abbey, in Lincolnshire, (this monk being of the same house) and his body was afterwards buried in the cathedral church at Winchester; which fatal accident happened unto him the day after St. Luke, being the 18th of October, after he had reigned 16 years, six months, and odd days, leaving behind him two sons, Henry and Richard. In his death verifying:

“ He that did (all he might) the Kirke despise,
Against his life, shall a base kirkman rise.”

Not forgetting the former, which was predicted of Lewis coming into the land:

“ Hither the *French* flower would it self transpose
Where must spring after many a glorious Rose.”

Henry, the third of that name, and eldest son to king John, at the age of nine years, began his reign over the realm of England, the 20th day of October, in the year of grace 1216; Philip the second being then king of France. This king reigned the longest, and did the least (of remarkable memory) of any of his predecessors, of whom it was thus predicted:

“ Dreame shall the Leopards issue in the throne,
(Cruddled in rest) carefull to keep his owne:
Nor forcing ought from others: changing then
His Leopards spots, a Lion turn agen,
Abroad the second whelp for prey will rore
Beyond the Alps, & to Joves bird restore:

Her decayde plumes: the King of beasts whose rage
 His youth conceal'd, shall rowse him in his age,
 Against the Boare, the Talbot, and the Beare,
 The Mountain Cat, & Goat: with whom cohere
 Of fowls, the Falcon, Hearn, the Peacock, Swan,
 With Fishes too, preest from the Ocean,
 With whose mixt blouds the Forest shal be dyde,
 Till love unite, what discord did divide."

Presently upon the young king's coronation, the greatest part of the English peers revolted from the French party, and acknowledged him their sole king and sovereign, so that within a short season, they quitted both him and all the aliens and strangers out of the land. In the eighth year of his reign, was held a parliament, in which was granted to the king, and his successor kings, the wardship and marriage of all the heirs; which act was called by the wise men of that age, *Initium malorum*.

In the 13th year of his reign, died Frederiek the emperor, who had before married Isabel, the king's sister; who, for his contempt of the church of Rome was accursed, of whom was made this epitaph :

*Fret: fremit in Mundo, De: deprimit alta profundo.
 Ri: res rimatur, cus: cuspid e cuncta minatur.*

Which, though it cannot sound so well in our English tongue, yet is thus paraphrased :

*Fret: frets the world: De: Height, which depth
 confounds.
 Ri: searcheth all things, Cus with the weapon wounds.*

After whose death, the electors could not agree in the choice of a successor; some nominated the duke of Thoring, others the earl of Holland, and some again stood for Richard, earl of Cornwall, the king's brother; but, in the end, Rodolphus, duke of Habsburg, was inaugurated by pope Gregory the ninth, so that great variance and strife continued for the space of 27 years, to the great impoverishment of Italy and the lands of the empire. In the 40th year of the king, landed in England, upon Innocent's

day, in Christmas week, divers princes of the empire, and did their homage to Richard, earl of Cornwall, as the king of the Romans, and emperor, who, upon ascension day, afterwards was crowned in Aquisgrane, verifying :

“ Abroad the second whelp, for prey will rore
Beyond the *Alps* and to *Joves* bird restore
Her decai'd plumes.”

In the 41st year, about St. Barrabas's day, in the month of June, the king called his high court of parliament at Oxford, which was called the mad parliament, because in it divers acts were concluded against the king's pleasure, for the reformation of the state. For which, afterwards, great dissention grew betwixt the king and his nobles, called the barons' wars, which proved the perishing of many of the peers, and almost the ruin of the whole realm: for, in that session, were chosen 12 peers, whom they called the Douz Peers, who had full commission to correct and reform whatsoever was done amiss in the king's court, the Exchequer, and courts of justice throughout the land; to whose power, the king, and prince Edward, his son, signed and assented unto, though somewhat against their wills. Of all which passages, such as would be fully satisfied, I refer them to our English chronicles, or to Michael Drayton's poem of the Barons' Wars, wherein they are amply discoursed, and my narrow limits will not give me leave to relate them at large, yet I borrow permission to insist a little further on one particular.

• All things being in combustion between the king and his peers, and their armies assembled on both sides, the barons framed a letter to the king to this purpose: “ To the most excellent lord king Henry, by the grace of God king of England, lord of Ireland, duke of Guian, &c. The barons and others your faithful servants, their fidelity and oath to God and to you, coveting to keep, sending due saluting, with all reverence and honour under due obeysance, &c. Liketh it your highness to understand, that many being about you, have before this time shewed to your lordship of us many evil and untrue reports, and have found suggestions, not only for us, but also of yourself, to bring your realm to subversion. Know your excellency, that we intend no-

thing but health and security to your person, to the uttermost of our powers. And not only to our enemies, but also yours, and all this your realm, we intend utter grievance and correction, beseeching your grace hereafter to give to them little credence, for you shall find us your true and faithful subjects to the uttermost of our powers. And we, Simon Mountfort, earl of Leicester, and high steward of England, and Gilbert Clare, earl of Gloucester, at the request of others, and for ourselves, have put to our seals, the 10th of May."

To which letter the king framed this answer: "Henry, by the grace of God king of England, lord of Ireland, and duke of Guian, to Simon de Mountfort, and Gilbert de Clare, and their accomplices. Whereas by war and general disturbance in this our realm, by you begun and continued; with burnings and other enormities, it evidently appears, that your fidelity to us due, you have not kept, nor the security of our person little regarded. For so much as our lords, and others, our trusty friends, which daily abide with us, ye vex and grieve, and them pursue to the utmost of your powers, and yet daily intend, as you, by the report of your letters have us ascertained, we, the grief of them admit, and take for our own, especially when they for their fidelity, which they to us daily impend, stand and abide by us, to suppress your infidelity and untroth. Wherefore, of your favour and assurance we set little store, but you, as our enemies, we utterly defy. Witness our self at our town of Lewes, the 12th of May."

Moreover, Richard his brother, king of the Romans, (who was come over into England with his wife and son) with prince Edward, and other lords about the king, sent them another letter, the tenour whereof was this: "Richard, by the grace of God, king of the Romans, *semper Augustus*, and Edward, the noble first begotten son of the king of England, and all other barons firmly standing and abiding with our sovereign lord the king, to Simon de Mountfort, and Gilbert de Clare, and all other their false fellows, &c. By the letters which you sent to our sovereign lord, we understand that we are defied of you, nevertheless, this word of defiance appeared to us sufficiently before, by the deprivation and burning of our ma-

NUMBER IV.

nors, and carrying away of our goods, wherefore we will that ye understand, that we defy you, as our mortal and public enemies, and whensoever we may come to the revengement of the injuries that you to us have done, we shall requit it to the utmost of our power; and where ye put upon us, that neither true nor good counsel to our sovereign lord we give, you therein say falsely and untruly, and if that saying, ye Sir Simon de Mountfort, and Sir Gilbert de Clare, will testify in the court of our sovereign lord, we are ready to purchase to your surety and safe coming, that there we may prove our true and faithful innocency, and your false and traiterous lying. Witnessed with the seals of Richard, king of the Romans, and Sir Edward, the prince before named. Given at Lewes the 12th of May." The success of the battle followeth in the next chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER EIGHTEENTH.

The deaths of Henry the third; and Richard, earl of Cornwall, king of the Romans.—Prince Edward's victories in the Holy Land.—His coro-	nation.—The prophecy of his reign.—His first reducing of Wales under his dominion for ever. The beginning of his wars in Scotland, &c.
---	--

WHEN the barons had received these letters, they were resolved to try it out by the sword, and on Wednesday, being the 24th day of May, early in the morning, both hosts met, where the Londoners, who took part with the barons, gave the first assault, but were beaten back, somewhat to the dismay of the barons' army; but, they cheered their fresh and lusty soldiers in such wise, that they valiantly came on; by whose brave resolution, those before discomfited resumed their former strength and virtue, fighting without fear, insomuch that the king's vaward gave back and left their places. In this battle the father spared not the son, nor the son the father, (such was the misery of those home-bred wars) insomuch that the field was every where strewed with dead bodies, for the fight continued the greatest part of the day; at last the victory fell to the barons, so that were taken the king, the king of the Romans, and prince Edward, with 25 barons and banerets, and the people slain on both sides amounted to above 20,000.

These royal prisoners being put in safe keeping, a peace was afterwards debated, and at length concluded, and they

released, but it proved to small purpose, for many battles were afterwards fought between them, in which, sometimes the king, and sometimes the barons had the better, (the circumstances are too long to relate) in which prince Edward bore himself bravely. In process, the 55th year of this king's reign, the king of the Romans made atonement between the king his brother, and Gilbert de Clare, earl of Gloucester, who had continued the wars of the barons, upon condition that he should take a voyage into the Holy Land for the king, for which he should have, towards his charge, 8,000 marks in hand, and when he was on ship board, 4,000 more, and to be ready the first of May next following: but this failing in him, prince Edward undertook it in his stead. And the year afterwards, about the end of March, died Richard, emperor of Almain, king of the Romans, and earl of Cornwall, being the king's brother, after he had governed the empire between 15 and 16 years, and was buried at Hales, an abbey of white monks, which he had before time founded. And the year following, upon the 16th day of November, died Henry the third, king of England, after he had governed the realm 56 years and 27 days, leaving for his heir prince Edward, who was then in the Holy Land, and another son called Edmund Crouchback. His body was buried in the abbey of Westminster, and over him inscribed:

*Tertius Henricus jacet hic, pietatis amicus :
Ecclesiam stravit istam, quam post renovavit.
Reddat ei munus, qui regnat trinus & unus.*

Thus Englished:

*Third Henry here doth rest,
Of Piety possess,
Down first his church he threw,
And after did renew.
O grant him thy immunity,
Thou Trinity in Unity.*

The premises confirm the prophecy of his reign towards the latter end of his time, which was turbulent and troublesome, to the exhausting of the king's treasure, the

deaths of many of his noble barons, and almost to the destruction and desolation of the whole realm, therefore it was truly said of him:

“—————The king of beasts whose rage,
His youth conceal'd, shall rouse him in his age,
Against the Boare, the Talbot, and the Beare,
The Mountaine Cat and Goat, with whom cohere, &c.”

By the lion, the king is personated, and by the rest of the beasts and birds named, the several crests and emblems in the barons' arms and escutcheons, by which they were distinguished. Prince Edward, his son, was at the time of his death in the land of Palestine, of whom, also, it was thus predicted:

“ An Occidentall Dragon bright as noone,
Shal breathing flames) dark the Oriental Moon,
The *Cambrian* Wolves he through their Woods shall
chace,
Nor cease till hee have quite extirpt their race.
Then from the North shall fiery Meteors threat.
Ambitious after blood) to quench their heat
(The Dragon's blood) at which his Crest will rise,
And his scales flame: and where he treads as flies
Fright all shall him oppose; the Northern *Dyke*
Passe shall hee then, and set his foot in *Wyke*.
After which, showers of blood will fall upon
And barren the faire fields of *Caledon*.
Then having ended what he took in hand,
Die in the Marches of another Land.”

He, in the year 1271, and in the 55th year of his father's reign, upon the 20th of August, took shipping at Dover, and sailed thence to Bourdeaux, but, because the French army (bound upon the same adventure) was removed from thence, he sped afterwards, and met with them at Tunis, and from thence he took shipping for the Holy Land, and arrived with some French forces joined with his own, at Acris or Acon, that time the Christians possessed that city only, and the city of Tyre, holding some few castles to preserve them from the rage of the Soldan. There he was honourably received, and with great joy; after whose being there, the Soldan or Saladine, who had won all the

country thereabout, came thither with an host of 160,000 Saracens, and besieged the city, and made many bold and and bloody assaults, but the prince so valiantly demeaned himself, that he defended the city, the castles belonging to it, and all the territories about, that, notwithstanding the multitude of the Soldans' army, he was compelled to forsake the siege to his great shame and dishonour.

Even the French chronicles, whose custom it is to write boastingly of themselves, and sparingly of others, bestow on him a character of invincible courage, and that in all his stratagems and martial exploits, he so honourably behaved himself, that his very name was a terror to the Turks for many years afterwards; who seeing his great boldness, and that they were not able to stand him in battle, they plotted how to take away his life by treason, and to that purpose, when he was resident in Acon, they sent to him a Saracen, in the name of a secretary, who, in delivering unto him a counterfeit message, wounded him in the arm with a poisoned knife, which he wresting from the infidel's hand, slew with the same weapon, so that he died incontinently. Then he called for a surgeon, and with incomparable sufferance, commanded him to cut out all the putrified and corrupted flesh, even to the scaling of the bone, without the least shrinking or alteration of countenance. Of which base treachery he was afterwards revenged upon them to their great detriment and damage. And thus:

"The Occidentall Dragon, bright as noon,
Did (breathing flames) dazzle the orientall moon."

He is called *Occidental*, as being bred in this our western island, and the Soldan is figured in the *Oriental Moon*, being a prince in the eastern part of the world, and bearing the semicircled moon in his banner. Prince Edward, during his abode there, had by the princess his wife, a daughter called Joan, who took her name from the place; and was called Joan of Acris, because there born, and was afterwards married to the earl of Gloucester. After his being there two years and upwards, his father dying, he was called home to take possession of the crown of England.

Edward, the first of that name, and son to Henry the third, (by reason of his tall stature, surnamed Longshanks,) began his reign November 17th, in the year of grace 1272, who came to London the second day of August, and was crowned at Westminster, the 14th of December following, being the second year of his reign. At whose coronation was present Alexander, king of the Scotch, who, the morrow following, did homage to the king for the kingdom of Scotland; but Llewellyn, prince of Wales, refused to come to that solemnity, for which king Edward gathered a strong power, and subdued him in his own borders. And in the year after, he called his high court of parliament, to which, also, Llewellyn, presumptuously denied to come; therefore, after Easter, he assembled new forces, and entering Wales, he constrained him to submit himself to his mercy, which with great difficulty he obtained. Then the king built the castle of Flint, and strengthened the castle of Rutland, to keep the Welsh in due obedience.

He gave also to David, brother of Llewellyn, the castle of Froddesham, who remained in his court, and with his seeming service much delighted the king: but David did it only as a spy, to give his brother secret intelligence of whatsoever the king or his council said of him or against him, who took his opportunity, and privately left the court, stirring up his brother to a new rebellion; of which the king being informed, he could hardly think that he could prove so ungrateful, but being better ascertained of the truth, he made fierce war upon them. At length, Llewellyn was strictly besieged in Swandon castle, from which, when he thought early on a morning to escape with ten knights only, he was met by Sir Roger Mortimer, upon whose lands he had before done great out-rage) who surprised him and cut off his head, and sent it to the king, being then at Rutland, who commanded it to be pitched on a pole, and set upon the tower of London; and further, that all his heirs should be disinherited, and their claim to the sovereignty of Wales to be deprived, the right thereof solely remaining in the kings of England and their successors. Soon afterwards was his brother David taken, and afterwards doomed to be drawn, hanged, and quartered, and his head sent to the tower,

and placed by his brother Llewellyn's, in which the prophecy is verified :

"The Cambrian Wolves, he through their woods shall
chace,
Nor cease till he have quite extirpt their Race."

Of this Llewellyn, a Welsh metrician wrote this epitaph.

*Hic jacet Anglorum tortor, tutor Venedorum,
Princeps Wallorum, Lewelinus regula morum,
Gemma Coævorum, flos regum præteritorum:
Ferma futurorum, Dux, Laus, Lex, Lux populorum.*

Thus anciently Englished :

*Of Englishmen the scourge, of Welsh the protector,
Llewellyn the Prince, rule of all virtue,
Gemme of Livers, and of all others the flower:
Who unto death hath paid his debt due,
Of Kings a mirrour that after him ensue,
Duke, and Priest, and of the Law the right,
Here in this grave, of people lyeth the light.*

To which an English poet of those times made this
answer :

*Hic jacet errorum princeps ac prædo virorum,
Proditor Anglorum, fax latida, secta reorum,
Numen Wallorum, Trux, Dux, Homicida piorum:
Fax Trojanorum, stirps mendax, causa malorum.*

Thus Englished :

*Here lyeth of Errour, the Prince if he will ken:
Thief and Robber, and Traytor to Englishmen,
A dimme brood, a Sect of doers evill,
God of Welshmen, cruell without skill,
In slaying the good, and Leader of the bad:
Lastly rewarded, as he deserved had:
Of Trojans blood the dregs, and not the seed;
A root of falshood, and cause of many evill deed.*

In the 20th. year of the king, upon St. Andrew's eve, being the 29th of November, died queen Eleanor, sister to the king of Spain, by whom the king had four sons, John, Henry, Alphons, and Edward; the three first died, and Edward, the youngest, succeeded his father; and five daughters, Eleanor, who was married to William of Bar; Joan of Acris to the earl of Gloucester, Gilbert de Clare; Margaret to the duke's son of Brabant; Mary, who was made a nun at Ambrisbury; and Elizabeth, espoused to the earl of Holland, and after his death to Humphrey Bohun, earl of Hereford.

This year, also, died old queen Eleanor, wife to Henry the third, and mother to king Edward. I now come to the 24th year of his reign, in which, Alexander, king of Scotland being dead, he left three daughters; the first was married to Sir John Baliol, the second to Sir Robert le Bruise, the third to one Hastings; amongst whom, there fell a dissention about the title to the crown, as shall appear in the next chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER NINETEENTH.

The rights that the kings of England anciently had to the crown of Scotland, for which they received homage.—King Edward's victorious wars in Scotland.—The prophecy ful-	filled.—His death and coronation of his son, &c.—The death of Gaveston, with a prophecy of king Edward the second.
---	--

THESE three before-named, Baliol, Bruce, and Hastings, came to king Edward, as chief lord and sovereign of that land, to dispose of the right of their titles to his pleasure, and they to abide his censure: who, to the intent that they might know he was the sole competent judge in that case, caused old evidences and chronicles to be searched; amongst which was Marianus the Scot, William of Malmsbury, Roger of Huntington, and others; in which were found, and read before them, that in the year of grace 920, king Edward, the eldest, made subject unto him the two kings of Cambria and Scotland. In the year 921, the said kings of Wales and Scotland, chose the same Edward to be their lord and patron. In the year 926, Ethelstane, king of England, subdued Constantine, king of Scots, who did him fealty and homage. And Edredus, brother and successor to Ethelstane, subdued the Scotch again, with the Northumbers, who reigned under him.

It was also found in the said chronicles, that king Edgar overcame Alpinus, the son of Kinudus, king of Scots, and received of him homage, as he had done to his father before time. And, that Canutus, in the 16th year of his

reign, overcame Malcolm, king of Scots, and received of him oath and homage. That William the Conqueror, in the sixth year of his reign, was victorious over Malcolm, who before received the kingdom of the gift of Edward the Confessor, who did him fealty. The like did Malcolm and his two sons to William, surnamed the Red, son to the Conqueror. David, king of Scots, did homage also to Stephen, king of England. William, king of Scots, did the like to Henry the third, at the time of his coronation; and when this Henry was dead, he came afterwards to his father, Henry the second, into Normandy, and did the like to him also. Alexander, king of Scots, in the 31st year of Henry the second, (son of king John) married, at York, the daughter of the said Henry, and did him homage for the realm of Scotland, &c.

Further was shewed unto them the pope's bulls sent into Scotland; by virtue whereof, those of their kings were accursed, that would not be obedient to their lords, the kings of England. Briefly, they acknowledging all these to be true, bonds were made on both sides, in which king Edward was tied in an 100,000 pounds, to nominate their king, and the Scots again bound to obey him nominated as their sovereign. After which writings were sealed, they delivered the possession of the kingdom of Scotland to king Edward's hands, to preserve it to his own use, of whom he would make election; who made choice of Sir John Baliol, as true and immediate heir, by marrying the eldest sister, for which he did him homage and swore him fealty. Which done, the Scotch with their new king departed joyfully into Scotland.

But soon afterwards, Baliol repented him of his oath, and as some say, by the council of the abbot of Menrose, others by the instigation of the king of France; but whether by one or both, it is certain, that he perfidiously revolted, and made war upon England; which Edward hearing, he sped with a great host into Scotland, and laid siege to Barwick, but they bravely defended the town, and burnt some of our English, with which they were so inflamed with pride, that they made this scornful rhyme upon the English:

*What ween is King Edward with his long shanks,
To have won Barwicke, all our unthankes,
Gaas pikes him,
And when he had it,
Gaas dikes him.*

At which, king Edward being mightily moved, so encouraged his soldiers, that they first won the ditchcs, and afterwards with great difficulty the Bulwarks, and then came to the gates, which they enforced, and entering the town, slew 25,760 Scots, and lost no man of note, save Richard, earl of Cornwall, and of meaner people 27, and no more. Which, hitherto, upholds the former prediction :

“ Then from the North shall fiery Meteors threat,
Ambitious after blood to quench their heate.
(The Dragon's blood) at which his Crest wil rise,
And his scales flame: & where he treads or flies
Fright all shall him oppose, the Northern Dyke
Pass shall he then, and set his foot in wyke.”

By the *northern dyke*, is implied the river *Tweed*, and by *wyke*, the town of *Barwick*: but I pursue the history. The king having possesst the town and castle, he sent Sir Hugh Spencer, with Sir Hugh Percy, and other noblemen to besiege Dunbar; whither came a mighty host to remove them thence, with whom the English had a fierce and cruel battle, in which were slain of the Scots 22,000, and of the English a very small number. Wherefore, the English to reproach the Scots, in regard of their former rhyme made this :

*The scattered Scots hold we for sots.
Of wrenches unware,
Earely in a morning, in an evill timing,
Came yee to Dunbar.*

After the taking of the town and castle of Dunbar, the king besieged the city of Edinburgh, and won both it and the castle, in which were found the regalities of state, which king Edward took thence, (and offered them at the shrine of St. Edward, upon the eighteenth day of June

the year following.) Then, Sir John Baliol, with divers of his clergy and nobility, submitted themselves to the king's grace; and having settled the affairs of Scotland, he brought them up to London, and then asked them what amends they would make him for all the trouble and damage they had put him to; who answered, they wholly submitted themselves to his mercy. He then replied, your lands nor your goods do I desire, but I will that you take the sacrament to be my true feodaries, and never more to bear arms against me: to which they willingly assented; of which were Sir John Commin, the earl of Stratherne, and the earl of Carick, and four bishops, took oath in behalf of themselves and the whole clergy. Which done, the king gave them safe conduct to their country.

But not long afterwards, they hearing the king was busied in his wars of Gascoine, against the French king, they made a new insurrection, having one William Wallis, a desperate ruffian, and of low condition, to be their chief leader. which the king hearing, having ordered his affairs in France, he sped towards Scotland, and entering the kingdom, he burnt and wasted wheresoever he came, sparing only all churches, religious houses, and the poor people who besought him of mercy. At length, he met with the Scottish army upon St. Mary Mawdlin's day, at a place called Fonkirk, where he gave them battle, and slew of them 33,000, with the loss only of 28 men, and no more; and finding no other enemies able to resist him, he returned into England, and married Margaret, the French king's sister, by which, a peace betwixt England and France was concluded.

Then went king Edward a third time into Scotland, and almost famished the land, and took the strong castle of Estrevelin, and soon afterwards was taken William Wallis, at the town of St. Dominick, who was sent to London, where he received his judgement, and upon St. Bartholomew's eve, was drawn and quartered, his head struck off, and set on London bridge, and his four quarters sent to be hanged up in the four chief cities of Scotland. After this, Robert le Bruce claimed the crown of Scotland, without acquainting king Edward therewith, and drove all the Englishmen out of the land, of which he vowed revenge, and to hang up all the traitors in that kingdom. Who,

before he set forward upon that expedition, made 404 knights at Westminster upon a Whitsun-Sunday, with whom, and the rest of his army, he once more pierced Scotland, and upon Friday, before the assumption of our lady, he met with Sir Robert le Bruce and his host besides St. John's town, and slew of them 7000 at the first encounter, and the rest fled. In this battle was taken Sir Simon Frizell, and sent to London, where he was drawn, hanged, and quartered. There suffered also, John, earl of Athelus, and John, brother to William Wallis, but Robert le Bruce, fled from Scotland into Norway, to the king, who had married his sister.

When king Edward had thus abated the pride of his enemies, he returned again southward, and a great sickness took him at Bozroes upon Sands, in the marches of Scotland, beyond Carlisle; and when he knew he should die, he called unto him Aymer de Valence, earl of Pembroke, Sir Henry Percy, earl of Northumberland, Sir Henry Lacie, earl of Lincoln, and Sir Robert Clifford, baron, and swore them to crown his son, Edward of Carnarvon, after his death. Then, he called his son, charging him with many things upon his blessing, but especially, that he should never receive Pierce Gaveston, his old companion (before banished) into the kingdom, and so died upon the seventh of July, when he had reigned 34 years, seven months, and odd days, and thence his body was conveyed to Westminster, and there buried; approving the prophecy:

“ After which, showres of blood will fall upon,
And barren the faire fields of *Caledon* :
Then having ended what he took in hand,
Die in the marches of another Land.”

Upon whose tomb this distich was inscribed :

*Dum vixit Rex, & valuit sua magna potestas,
Fraus latuit, pax magna fuit, regnavit honestas.*

Thus in those days Englished :

*While lived this King, by his power all things,
Was in good plight,
For guile was hid, great peace was kid,
And honesty had might.*

Of his son, prince Edward, the prophecy runs thus:

“ A Goat shall then appeare out of a Carr,
With silver hornes (not Iron) unfit for warre,
And above other shall delight to feed
Upon the flower, that life and death doth breed.
A *Cornish* Eagle clad in plumes of gold
(Borrowed from others) shall on high behold
What best can please him to maintain his pride.
Whose painted feathers shall the Goat misguide,
Who at length ayiming to surprise the Beare,
Him shall the rowzed beast in pieces teare.
Two Owles shall from the Eagles ashes rise,
And in their pride the Forest beasts despise.
They forc’t at first to take their wings and fie
Shall (back returning) beare themselves so hie,
T’ out-brave both birds and beasts, and great spoyle
winne,
By the Goats casing in a Lions skin.
But after, he themselves depriv’d of breath
By her they scorn’d (the flower of life and death)
And the crown’d Goat, thinking himself secure
Shall (after all) a wretched end endure.”

To confirm which, Edward, the second of that name, and son of Edward the first) born at Carnarvon, a town of Wales, began his reign over England, the eighth of July, the year of grace 1,307, and was crowned at Westminster the 14th day of December, whose father’s obsequies were scarcely ended; but forgetting the great charge and command laid upon him in his death, he sent in haste for his old friend and familiar, Pierce Gaveston, out of France, whom he received with great joy. Then, sailing to France the 15th of January following, at Boulogne in Picardy, espoused Isabell, the daughter of Phillip the air, and returned with her into England, where soon afterwards he made Gaveston earl of Cornwall, and gave him the lordship of Wallingford, to the great displeasure

of the barons, who were sworn to his father not to suffer him to come to the realm.

In the second year of his reign, remembering the complaint that Stephen Langton, bishop of Chester, had made of him and Gaveston, for sundry riots committed in his father's days, for which he was banished, he sent him prisoner to the tower, where he was strictly kept and ill attended. For which end, seeing how by this Pierce, the king's treasury was hourly exhausted; the barons assembled themselves, and contrary to the king's pleasure, banished him into Ireland for a year, where the king gave him the dominion over the whole land, but so mourned and lamented his absence, that, by the consent of his lords, he was shortly called back again, where he demeaned himself with greater pride and insolence than at first, despising the lords and chief peers of the land, calling Sir Robert of Clare, earl of Gloucester, *Whoreson*; the earl of Lincoln, *Sir Henry Lacy Burstenbelly*; Sir Guy, earl of Warwick, *Black dog of Arderne*; and the noble earl Thomas of Lancaster, *Churl*. And moreover, having the keeping and command of all the king's treasure, he took out of the jewel-house, a table of gold, and tressels of the same, which belonged once to king Arthur; with many other invaluable jewels, and delivered them to a merchant called Amery of Friksband, to bear them over into Gascoin; which was a great loss to the kingdom. And further, by his loose and effeminate conditions, he drew the king to many horrible vices, as adultery, (and as some think) sodomy, with others. Therefore the lords again assembled, and maugre the king, banished him into Flanders.

In the first year, upon the day of St. Brice, being the 13th day of November, was born at Windsor, the first and eldest son of king Edward, that after his father was king of England, and named Edward the third. And the same year, Gaveston was called out of Flanders by the king, and restored to all his former honours; and then he demeaned himself more contemptuously towards the barons than before, who besieged him in the castle of Scarborough, and won it, and took him, and brought him to Gaversed, besides Warwick, and there smote off his head, which was done at the instigation of Thomas, earl

of Lancaster, (whom Merlin calls the *Bear*) and this approveth the premises:

"A Cornish *Eagle* clad in plumes of gold,
(Borrowed from others) shall on high behold,
What best can please him to maintain his pride.
Whose painted feathers shall the *Goat* misguid:
Who at length aiming to surprise the *Beare*,
Him shall the rowzed beast in pieces teare."

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTIETH.

The king's unfortunate wars in Scotland.—The battle of Bannockburn, &c.—Berwick betrayed to the Scots.—The pride and insolence of the Spencers.—Their misleading the king.—Their hatred to	the queen.—She is sent over into France.—Her victorious return with the prince.—The king and his minions taken.—The death of the two Spencers, &c.
--	--

BY the *Cornish Eagle*, in the former chapter, is meant Pierce Gaveston, earl of Cornwall; by his *plumes of gold*, his pride and riches, borrowed and extorted from others; by the *Goat*, the king, who was given to all intemperate effeminacy; by the *Bear*, Thomas, earl of Lancaster, &c. This king was of a beautiful aspect and excellent feature; of a strong constitution of body, but unstedfast in promise, and ignoble in condition, as refusing the company of men of honour, to associate himself with lewd and vile persons. He was much addicted to bibacity and apt to discover matters of great counsel and of stupration and adultery, persuaded thereto by his familiars, the Frenchmen, for whose death the king vowed an irreconcilable revenge against the barons, which he afterwards performed. Indeed, so unking-like was his misgovernment, that a base villain, called John Tanner, named himself the son of Edward the first, and that, by the means of a false nurse, he was stolen out of his cradle, and this Edward, being a carter's son, was laid in his place, which the people, for the former reason, were easily induced to believe; but the impostor was discovered, and by his own confession, judged to be hanged and quartered.

In the seventh year of his reign, Robert le Bruce, king of Scots, whom his father made to fly into Norway, hearing of the misguiding of the kingdom, and the dissention between him and his barons, warred strongly against him and his friends in Scotland, and won from them castles and holds, howsoever well munified, to the great damage of the English, who were interessed in the land. For which affront, the king assembled a great power, and invaded Scotland by sea, burning and destroying all such towns and villages as were in his way; which Robert le Bruce hearing, hasted with a strong army, and upon St. John the Baptist's day, both hosts met at a place called Estrivelin, near unto a fresh river called Bannockborn, where between them was fought a cruel battle, in which the English were compelled to forsake the field. For which, in derision of the English, the Scots made this rhyme doggerel:

*Maidens of England, sore may you mourn,
For the Lemans you have lost at Bannockborn
With a heave and hoe:
What weened the King of England, so soone to
Have wonne Scotland?
With a Rumby low.*

In his ninth year, Berwick was betrayed to the Scots, by one Peter Spalding, whom the king had made governor of the town and castle. And in the eleventh year, the Scots entered the borders of Northumberland, most cruelly robbing and burning the country, even the houses of women who lay in child-bed, not sparing age nor sex, religious nor others; therefore, the king raised a new army, and laid siege to Berwick. In which interim, the Scots past the river Swale, and leaving the coast where the king's people lay, came into the borders of Yorkshire, to whom the arch-bishop, with priests and ploughmen, (unexercised in arms) gave battle, but were discomfited; in which so many priors, clerks, canons, and other clergymen were slain, that they called it the *White Battle*. When the king heard of this overthrow, he broke up his siege, and retired to York, and soon afterwards to London.

After this, nothing was done without the advice of the

two Hugh Spencers, the father and the son. And in a council held at York, Hugh Spencer, the son, inaugre the lords, was made high chamberlain of England; who bore it so haughtily as ever Gaveston did. But let me take the prophecy along :

“ A Goat shall then appeare out of a Carr,
With silver hornes (not Iron) unfit for warre,
And above other shall delight to feed
Upon the flower, that life and death doth breed.”

By the *Goat*, is figured lascivious Edward, therefore said to *appear out of a Car*, as born in Carnarvon; *his horns of silcer and not of iron*, denotes his effeminacy, being unservicable for war, as may appear in the success against the Scots; by the *flower of life and death*, is intended his queen Isabel, the flower of France, at first dear to him as life, but in the end, (as most writers have suspected) with Mortimer, accessary to his death. But to proceed with the history,

The barons (to a great number) seeing how the Spencers misled the king, and misgoverned the affairs of the land, assembled themselves, and took a solemn and unanimous vow to remove them out of the kingdom: and at their first attempt, certain of them appointed to that purpose, entered upon the castles and manors of the Spencers, in the marches of Wales, spoiling and ruining them to the earth; of which riot they complained to the king, who summoned them to appear before his council, which they refused to do, but gathered unto them a stronger host, and sent to his majesty, humbly beseeching him to remove from his person the two Spencers, who daily did to him great dishonour, and to the common-weal. Which damage, with humble request the king hearing, and doubting his own safety, called a parliament, to be held at London, to which the barons came with a great host, all suited in demy-parted jackets, of yellow and green, with a list of white cast overthwart, for which the common people called it the *Parliament of White-Bands*, in which the two Spencers were banished the kingdom for ever.

But the year following, the king revoked the acts made in the former parliament, and called them into England,

contrary to the will of the barons, and set them in greater authority than before, to the great disturbance, and almost utter subversion of the realm, for now the whole land was in combustion, and the king animated by the Spencers, took upon him the shape of a lion, and ceased not till he had cut off the chief and prime nobility of the land; for besides those that were slain, none was brought to the bar, but was thence led to the block; who having got the better of his barons, he called a parliament at York, in which, Hugh Spencer, the father, was made earl of Winchester; and soon afterwards, was one Robert Baldock, a fellow of debauched life and condition, made chancellor of England. Then forfeits and fines were gathered, without sparing of privileged places, or others, till a mighty sum was gathered towards another expedition into Scotland: and then his army consisted (according to Caxton and others) of an 100,000 men, but he sped in that as in the former, for on St. Luke's day, at a place called Bella-laund, or Brighland, he was like to have been taken as he sat at dinner, which could not have been, had he not had some traitors about him. And now confer the premises with the prophecy:

“Two Owles shall from the Eagles ashes rise,
And in their pride the Forest beasts despise.
They forc't at first to take their wings and fie
Shall (back returning) beare themselves so hie,
T' out-brave both birds and beasts, and great spoyle
winne,
By the Goat's casing in a Lions skin.”

The *two Owls* are the two Spencers, who *from the ashes of the Cornish Eagle*, Gaveston, grew into the especial favour of the king, who were said to *case the Goat in the skin of a Lion*, by animating the effeminate king to the wars against the barons, by whose deaths they got many rich spoils, and then forced to take their wings to fly, where they were banished from the realm at the parliament of White-Bands, &c.

The state of the kingdom thus standing, and the two Spencers commanding all the land, had wars with France about the duchy of Guian. To attone which difference between the two kings, the two Spencers being in all things

opposite to the queen, whom they had brought to the bare allowance and pension of 20 shillings a day. They further plotted how to rid her out of the land, and persuaded the king to send her into France, to make peace between the two kingdoms, having before seized on all her lands, and those belonging to the prince. Briefly, the queen arrived in France, and was royally received by her brother, who hearing of her base usage, and by whom, he was much incensed against the king and his wicked counsellors, and sent to him under his seal to come in person into France, to do him homage, or he should forfeit the duchy of Guian; of which king Edward took little regard, in hope his queen would salve all things that were amiss between her brother and her husband.

After the queen's three months abode in France, the prince desired of his father, that he might have leave to visit his mother and uncle, which his father granted, and said to him at parting, "Go, my fair son, in God's blessing and mine, and return to me again as speedily as you may." Who passing the sea, and coming to the king's court, he joyfully received him, and said: "Fair son, you be welcome, and since your father came not to do homage for the duchy of Guian, as his antecessors have done, I give you the lordship to hold of me in heritage." And so the prince was created, and thence-forward called the duke of Guian.

Which being known to king Edward, he was highly incensed, especially because the prince was instated into that honour without his consent and pleasure; and finding that (notwithstanding his often sending) they made no haste to return, he made proclamation, that if within such a day prefixed, they made not their repair into the land, they should be held as enemies to the crown and state. But the queen, much fearing the malice of the Spencers, whom she knew to be her mortal enemies, she removed not thence. Then the king made forfeiture of all their goods and lands before seized, and took the profits of them to his own use, and sent sharp and threatening letters to the French king, if he suffered them to sojourn longer in his realm; upon which he commanded them thence, without any further comfort or succour.

At that time Sir John Henand, brother to the earl of

Henaud (a man of great courage and valour) being in the French court, much commiserating the queen and the prince, desired her to go with him to his brother, the earl, of which she was glad, and taking his noble offer, was there honourably received. Then was a marriage concluded between prince Edward and Phillip the earl's daughter, upon certain conditions, one of which was, that the earl should send over into England the queen and her son, with 400 men at arms, under the conduct of his brother. In which interim, the two Spencers sent three barrels of coin, with letters to some of the French peers, that if it were possible they should make away the queen or her son, or at least send them away disgraced out of the realm; which money and letters were taken by a ship of the Henauders, and brought to the queen during her abode there. Which the earl's brother seeing, said unto her, Be of comfort madam, this is a good omen, the Spencers, your enemies, have sent you money to pay your soldiers.

Of which, the king of England having intelligence, sent to all the ports and havens, to interdict their landing. Notwithstanding which, the queen and prince, with these 400 Hollanders, and a small company of English gentlemen, who had fled to her during the time of her exile, landed at a place called Orwel, besides Harwich in Suffolk the 15th of September, (Sir John Henaud, the earl's brother, being their captain and leader) without any opposition or resistance; to whom, after their landing, the people resorted in great companies, and sped towards London, where the king and the Spencers were then resident; who hearing of the multitudes that then drew unto her, left Walter Stapleton, bishop of Exeter, custos of the city, and with a small company fled towards Wales; she came then to London, where the people were willing to receive her, which the bishop with many sharp and bitter words opposing, the commons of the city took him violently, and beheaded him with two of his esquires, at the standard in West-cheap, whose bodies were borne to the Thames side, (where the bishop had begun a new edifice contrary to their liking) and there irreverently buried.

The queen with an easy march followed the king, who came to Bristol with the earl of Arundell, the two Spencers, and his infamous chancellor Baldock; where after

counsel taken, it was agreed, that Hugh Spencer, the father, should stay there, and take charge of the town and castle, whilst the king and the rest took shipping thence for Wales, to rise the Welshmen in his aid. Of which the queen having notice, sent thither the earl of Kent, Sir John Henaud, with others, who with small difficulty took the town and castle, with Hugh Spencer, the father, alive, and delivered them to the queen, who remained there till the greatest part of her army pursued the king and his other minious into Wales, who took the king, the earl of Arundell, Hugh Spencer, the son, and the chancellor, and brought them all prisoners to Hereford. In which interim, the citizens of London won the tower, and kept it to the queen's use.

Upon the morrow after the feast of Simon and Jude, the same day that the lord mayor takes his oath, was Hugh Spencer, the father, put to death, and afterwards buried at Winchester; and upon St. Hugh's day following, being the 18th day of November, was Sir Hugh, the son, drawn, hanged, and quartered at Hereford, and his head sent to London, and set upon the bridge, making good:

“ They after be themselves depriv'd of breath,
By her they scorn'd, the flower of life and death.”

The common fame went, that after this Hugh was taken, he would take no manner of sustenance, and that was the cause he was the sooner put to death, of whom was made this distich following:

*Funis cum lignis, ate, miser ensis & ignis:
Hugo, securus equus, abstulit omne decus,*

*Rope, gallows, sword, and fire, with a just knife,
Took from thee Hugh, thy honour with thy life.*

Four days afterwards was the earl of Arundell put to death, and Robert Baldock, the chancellor, being committed to Newgate, died miserably in prison. Then the queen, with the prince her son, with the rest of the lords, were with great joy the 14th day of December, received at London, and thence conveyed to Westminster, where a parliament was called; the effect whereof expect in the following chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-FIRST.

The deposing of Edward the second.—His repentance.—His death.—His son Edward made king.—A prophecy of his reign.—His great victory over the Scots, with the taking of Berwick.—His famous victory at	sea over the French.—He lays claim to the crown of France.—Instituteth the order of the garter.—His victory at Cressy.—His taking of Calais, &c.
--	--

FROM this parliament were messengers sent to the king, then prisoner in Kenelworth castle, three bishops, three earls, two abbots, two barons, two judges, with Sir William Trussell, procurator of the parliament, to depose him of all kingly dignity; who, on the 25th day of January, in the presence of the aforesaid lords, from the body of the whole house, delivered unto him these words following:

“ I, William Trussell, in the name of all men of this land of England, (procurator of this parliament) resign to thee Edward, the homage that was sometimes made to thee, and from this time forth, deprive thee of all kingly power, and I shall never be attendant on thee, as king, after this time.” And thus was Edward the second deposed, (and his son Edward made king) when he had reigned full 18 years, six months and odd days; who, during his imprisonment, first at Kenelworth, and afterwards at Barckley castle, grew greatly repentant of his former course of life, finding, at length, what it was to be misled by upstarts, and people of mean condition. Many of whose penitential fancies are still extant; and amongst the rest this following:

Y

*Most blessed Jesu,
Root of all vertue,
Grant I may thee sue,
In all humilitie;*

*Sen thou for our good
List to shed thy blood
And stretch thee on the Rood
For our iniquitie:*

*I thee beseech,
Most wholesome leech,
That thou wilt seech
For me such grace,*

*That when my body vile
My soule shall exile,
Thou bring in short while,
It in rest and peace.*

Edward, the third of that name, son of Edward the second, and Phillip, sole daughter of Phillip the Fair, at 15 years of age, began his reign (his father yet living) the 26th of January, in the end of the year of grace 1326, and was crowned at Westminster upon the day of the purification of our lady next ensuing. At which time, the earth yielded plenty, the air temper, the sea quietness, and the church peace. He confirmed the liberties and franchises of London, and gave Southwark to be under the lord mayor's rule and government. Of whose reign it was thus predicted:

“ The spirits of many Lions shall conspire,
To make one (by infusion) so intire:
He by his mighty courage shall restore
What his sire lost, and Grandsire wonne before:
Neptune his Navall triumphs shall advance,
His Coat he quarters with th' Flower of France,
And after mauger the Canicular Tyke,
Tweed shal he passe and win again the Wyke,
A numerous issue shall his Lioness bring,
Black shall the first be. and though never King,
Yet shall he Kings captive, but ere mature,
Die must his brave Whelp of a Calenture,

And then behind him shall he leave a Kid
To undo all, both sire and grandsire did."

The effect of all these will succeed in their order. In the first year of this king's reign, the late king Edward was miserably slain, and put to a most cruel death, by the means of Sir Roger Mortimer, who, notwithstanding, in the parliament after, was made earl of March. The same year, the 24th of January, the young king married the lady Phillip, daughter to the earl of Henault, in the city of York, and soon afterwards called a parliament at Northampton, to which, by the means of Sir Roger Mortimer, and the old queen, an unprofitable and dishonourable peace was made with the Scots, who caused the king to release them of all fealty and homage, and delivered up to them all the old writings sealed by their kings and chief lords of their land, with all charters and patents, and many rich jewels before had been won from them by the kings of England; amongst which, the black cross of Scotland is especially named; and the year following, David, the son of Robert le Bruce, king of Scots, married Jane, sister to the king of England, whom they afterwards, to the derision of the English, called *Jane make Peace*, and amongst other taunting songs made of our nation, this was one:

*Long beards heartlesse,
Painted bodies witlesse:
Gay coats grácelesse,
Makeith England thriflesse.*

But these merry and jigging tunes, were turned to their most lamentable *ay mee's* within few months afterwards.

During the king's minority, all the affairs of the realm were managed by Sir Roger Mortimer and the mother queen, and the great persons appointed to that purpose were vilified and not set by. Which Sir Roger, in imitation of king Arthur, was said to keep a round table, to which many noble knights belonged, to his infinite cost and expence. But howsoever, in the third year of the king, the said Sir Roger was surprised in Nottingham castle, though the keys were day and night in his own keeping, and sent to the tower, who was accused of the lords of the parliament,

of these particulars following: First, of the bloody murder of Edward of Carnarvon in Berkeley castle. Secondly, that he had confederated with the Scots against the honour of the king. Thirdly, that he had received great sums of money from Sir James Douglas, captain of the Scots, delivering unto him the charter called Ragman, to the Scots' great advantage, and impoverishing of England. Fourthly, that he had ingrossed into his hands much of the king's treasure, which he had riotously wasted to his own use; by which means the king was forced to borrow of his friends. Fifthly, that he was more private and familiar with queen Isabel, the king's mother, than was to God's pleasure and the king's honour. Of which articles being convicted, he was, by authority of the said parliament, judged to death, and upon St. Andrew's eve following, at London, drawn and hanged.

In his fourth year, about the beginning of August, Sir Edward Baliol, the son of Sir John Baliol, sometime king of Scots, obtained such favour of king Edward, that with the aid of Sir Henry Beaumont, Sir David Stockley, Sir Jeffrey Mowbray, and 2,000 Englishmen, they entered Scotland by sea, where drew to them such multitude, that in a short time, Sir Edward was a lord of a great host, and kept his way till he came to a place called Gladismore, (or as some write) Crakismore, where he was encountered with the power of Scotland, where between them was fought a sharp and cruel battle, in which a great number of the natives were slain, by reason whereof he was crowned king at the town of Stone shortly afterwards, and met with the king at New-castle, where Edward received of him fealty and homage for the crown of Scotland. But soon afterwards, the Scots laid plots against his life, which he narrowly escaped, being forced to fly from place to place, and hide himself; which king Edward hearing, with a strong army pierced the realm of Scotland, and laid siege to the town of Berwick.

Upon the 19th of July, the Scots with a mighty power made thither, with purpose to remove the siege; whom king Edward met, and encountered on Halidon hill, giving them battle, over whom he had a triumphant victory, inasmuch that he slew of them seven earls, 900 knights and bannerets, 400 esquires, and of the common people

32,000; in which battle were slain of the English but 15 persons. After which glorious victory, the captain of Berwick, the morrow following, being St. Margaret's day, yielded to the king both town and castle; which verifies that

“————mauger the Canicular Tyke,
Tweed shall he passe, and set his foot in Wyke.”

Tyke is that which the northern men call a dog, and by the *Canicular Tyke*, is meant the dog-star; *Tweed* is the water which parted the two kingdoms of England and Scotland; and by the *Wyke*, (as is before mentioned) meant the town of Berwick. I only capitulate this one battle (of many) against the Scots, purposing the like compendiousness in his famous victories over the French.

During the dissention between the two kings of England and France, which by no mediation could be atoned, though there were many meetings to that purpose. The French king sent a strong navy to sea to take our English merchants, and encountered with two good ships of England, called the *Edward* and the *Christopher*, and after nine hours fight, in which were slain of both sides about 600 men, the two ships were taken, and all the wounded Englishmen, alive, cast over board into the sea. Afterwards, king Edward, in his 15th year, in the month of June, took shipping, and sailed towards Flanders, where met him Sir Robert Morley, with the north navy of England, so that his fleet consisted of 300 sail, and at midsummer, upon St. John's eve, he met and fought with the French navy, which were 400 sail, which laid in wait for him near unto a town called Sluce; their chief admirals were Sir Hugh Querret, Sir Nicholas Buchet, and Barbe Nore, in English black-beard. Between these two royal fleets, was a strong and bloody fight, which continued for the space of eight hours, before it could be distinguished which way the victory was likely to incline, yet, in the end, by God's mercy, and the manhood of the king, the French were chased, and many of their ships burned and taken, amongst which were the ships of the two admirals, Querret and Buchet, who maugre the French were hanged up in their own vessels, and among the rest were recovered the *Edward* and the *Cristopher*, manned with the French.

In this battle, the king himself, was sore wounded in the thigh, and of the French were slain 30,000 in that one naval conflict. Soon afterwards, (or as some write) a little time before, by the advice of his confederate princes, he laid claim to the crown of France, as his rightful inheritance, and for the more authority to countenance it, he quartered the English lions with the French flower de lyce, as they remain to this day; so that we see

“ *Neptune his Navall Triumphs did advance,*

(and)

He his Coat quarters with the Arms of France.

I am forced to intermit many and divers conflicts and skirmishes, with winning of forts and castles, challenges, that past between the two kings, with the particular valour and noble gests of some of our nation, to relate which would ask a voluminous tractate, where my confinement is to a mere epitomy of chronicle, passing over all accidents, saving what are most remarkable, which brings me to the 18th year of his reign, in which at a parliament held at Westminster, his eldest son, Edward, was created prince of Wales, and he, in the year following, first instituted the famous and renowned *Order of the Garter*, which was solemnized at Windsor, and is continued to this day. In his 21st year, he landed in Normandy, and burnt and spoiled all the country before him, wasting the province of Constantine. Then he laid siege to Caen the chief city, and won it, and amongst others, he took there prisoners, the constable of France, the king's chamberlain, and all the spoil of the city, which was held to be inestimable, and sent to his ships, which was conveyed into England.

He then entered France, and coasted towards Paris, to Vernon, to Poysie, to St. German, still wasting as he went. Then, he took and made use of all the king's royal manors and palaces, and drank his wine and occupied all such stuff and necessities as he there found, and after his departing set them on fire, as St. German, Mountjoy, Pezzy, &c. insomuch that the French king, thinking it a great dishonour, both to him and the whole nation, that the English should pierce the heart of his kingdom unfought with; he therefore assembled all his prime chivalry, and met with the English (far inferior to them in number) near to a town

called Cressy, and upon the 26th of August, was fought between them a sharp and bloody battle, in which, at the end, king Edward was the triumphant victor; where were slain at that time, of the French party, the king of Bohemia, son to Henry the emperor, the seventh of that name, with the duke of Loraine, the earl of Alonson, brother to the king, Charles, earl of Bloys, the earls of Flanders, Sancer, Harcourt, and of Fiennes, with divers others, to the number of eight bishops and earls, with 17 lords of name, and of bannerets, knights, and esquires more than 1,600; so that their own chronicles report, that the flower of France perished in that battle; besides, of the commons above 8,000, and the French king, with a small company, sore wounded, fled to a town called Bray, and there lay the night following.

Whom king Edward pursued not, being advertised of another great host coming towards him, and therefore he kept the field, and made great fires through the host, and so continued till the Monday following, upon which day, early in the morning, appeared to them a new army of Frenchmen, of which they slew more in number than the Saturday before; and then, having given thanks to God for his victory, he marched towards Bulloine, and thence to Calais, to which he laid siege for the space of a whole year; then came the French king, with a numerous army, to remove him, but, before his coming, it was yielded to king Edward, so that he departed thence sad and ashamed. But king Edward stayed in the town a month, and removed all the old inhabitants, which were French, and stored it with English, but, especially, Kentish men, and having set all things in order, he sailed with great triumph into England, and arrived at London the 23rd day of October, where he was magnificently received of the citizens, and so conveyed unto Westminster.

We have hitherto spoke only of the father. It follows, that something should be said of the son, the unparalleled Edward, prince of Wales, not for his complexion, but for his terror in battle, surnamed the *Black Prince*, who, whilst his father rested himself in Calais, with a puissant host entered Gascoine, and made spoil, at his pleasure, through the whole country, and with great riches and many noble prisoners, he retired himself to Burdeaux. And though

the earls of Armineck and of Foyz, of Poytiers and Clere-
mont, with James de Burbon, with many other knights,
who had double the number to the prince, were in his way,
yet passed he from Tholous to Nerbon, and from Nerbon
to Burdeaux, without battle; where, having reposed him-
self a while, and rested his army, he sent many of his
prisoners into England, and there entered the province of
Berray, and therein made sharp war, which king John, of
France, hearing, gathered a mighty number of people,
and made towards the prince, who, in the mean time, had
passed the river of Loyer, and encountered by divers of
the nobility of France, between whom was a sharp conflict,
but the fortune of the day fell to the prince, who slew
many of his enemies, and took divers prisoners, as the lord
of Craon, and others of note, to the number of 54, whom
he sent to safe custody in Burdeaux, and himself sped to
Towres, whither, also, king John came against the prince,
who took his way to Poytiers, where we, for a while, leave
him upon his march, &c.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-SECOND.

The famous battle of Poitiers, fought by Edward, surnamed the Black Prince, in which he took John, the French king prisoner.—His other victories in France.—His conquests in Spain.—The death of the victorious prince	Edward.—King Edward the third's death and epitaph.—Richard the second made king.—A prediction of his reign.—The insurrection of the commons.—The memorable act of William Walworth, lord mayor, &c.
--	---

WE left prince Edward on his march towards Poitiers. In keeping which way, a French army encountered him, but he chaced their multitude, and besides many slain, took of them 40 prisoners, amongst which, were the earl of Sancer, the earl of Iurigny, the lord Chasterlin, master of the king's palace, and a knight called Sir Guillam de Daneham, whom he also sent to his rendezvous at Burdeaux; and soon afterwards, he lodged him and his host near Poitiers, so that the fronts of both hosts lay within a quarter of a mile of each other; between whom the cardinal of Pernigvort, sent from pope Innocent the sixth, laboured to make a peace, but finding his endeavour frustrate, he retired himself to Poitiers, to attend the success of the battle, which was fought upon Monday the 19th of September, in the year of grace 1356, and the sixth year of king John, the manner followeth:

The duke of Athenes, with such of the nobility as were in the king's vaward, about two o'clock in the afternoon, set upon the English host which was strongly munified with wood

and trees in the manner of a barricado, so that the French cavalry could not approach them, but the shot of the English archers was so violent, that it overturned horse and man. And whilst the duke of Athenes, with Sir John Cleremont, marshal of France, and others, assaulted the prince and his people on one side; the duke of Normandy, king John's eldest son, and the duke of Orleance, the king's brother, set upon him on another part, which two dukes were leaders of two strong armies. But these three battles did little harm to the English, for, by reason of their arrows, the French were so gauled and wounded, that they fled to the great dismay and discomfort of the king and the rest of his people.

Who then in person came on with his main host, but the English kept themselves whole without scattering, and received them on the points of their weapons, with such dexterity and courage, that the French were forced to give back; of which the English taking advantage, routed their whole army. In which battle were slain, of men of note, the duke of Athenes, the duke of Burbon, Sir John Cleremont; marshal of France, Sir Henry Camian, banneret, who bore that day the oriflambe, (a special relick that the French kings used in all battles to have borne before them) the bishop of Chabous, with divers others, to the number of 54 bannerets, knights, and others.

And of prisoners taken in that battle, were John, king of France, Philip, his fourth son, Sir Jaques of Burbon, earl of Poitou, and brother to the duke of Burbon, Sir John of Artoys, earl of Ewe, Sir Charles, his brother, earl of Longevile, Sir Giffard, cousin german to the French king, Sir John, his son and heir, William, archbishop of Sence, Sir Simon Melen, brother to the earl of Canlarvive, and earl of Vandature. The earls of Dampmartin, of Vendosme, of Salisbruch, of Moyson, the marshal Denham, with others, as bannerets, knights, and men of name, according to their own writers, 1,500 and above. From which battle escaped Charles, eldest son of king John, and duke of Normandy, with the duke of Anjou, and few others of name. And king Edward, after due thanks given to the Almighty God for his triumphant victory, retired himself to Burdeaux, with his royal prisoners, where the king and the rest were kept till Easter following.

In the 31st year of the king, the 16th day of April, prince Edward being 28 years of age, took shipping, with his prisoners, at Burdeaux, and the 24th of May, was received with great joy by the citizens of London, and thence conveyed to the king's palace at Westminster, where the king, sitting in his estate royal, in Westminster hall, after he had indulgently entertained the prince, he was conveyed to his lodging, and the French king, royally conducted to the Savoy, where he laid long afterwards. And in the winter following, were royal justs held at Smithfield, at which were present the king of England, the French king, the Scotch king (then prisoners) with many noble persons of both the three kingdoms, and the most part of the strangers being then prisoners.

Whilst king John remained in England, which was for the space of four years and odd days, the king of England, and the Black Prince, his son, with their armies, over-ran the greatest part of France, during the time of Charles, his regency over the kingdom, who was king John's eldest son, against whom they had many memorable victories, spoiling where they list, and sparing what they pleased, insomuch that king Edward made his own conditions before any peace could be granted. At length, the king was delivered, and royally conveyed into his country; who so well approved of, and liked his entertainment here, that in the 37th year of king Edward, he returned into England, and at Eltham, besides Greenwich, dined with the king, and in the same afternoon, was royally received by the citizens, and conveyed through London to the Savoy, which was upon the 24th of January; but, about the beginning of March following, a grievous sickness took him, of which he died the eighth of April following, whose body was afterwards solemnly conveyed to St. Denis, in France, and there royally interred.

In the 40th year of the king, one Barthran de Cluicon, a Norman, with an army of Frenchmen, entered the land of Castile, and warred upon Peter, king of that country, and within four months, chased him out of his kingdom, and crowned Henry, his bastard brother in his stead, wherefore he was constrained to fly to Burdeaux, and to demand aid of prince Edward, who commiserating his case, as being

*Edward the third, who reign'd a jubilee,
In strength & pard: valour a Machabee.*

Richard, the second of that name, and son of Edward, surnamed the Black Prince, eldest son to Edward the third, a child of the age of 11 years, began his reign over the realm of England, the 22nd of June, in the year of grace 1027, and upon the 15th of July, being the day of St. Swithen ensuing, he was crowned at Westminster. In the first year of whose reign, about April, landed in Kent, Anne the daughter of Charles the fourth, emperor of that name, late dead, and sister to Wenceslaus, then emperor, who by the mayor and citizens of London, was honourably met upon Blackheath, and with great triumph conveyed to Westminster, and the eighth day of May, solemnly espoused to king Richard, of whom it is thus predicted :

“ Sport shall the young Kid in his youth, and play
’Gainst whom shall rise the Hedg-hog and the Gray :
And then the hobnayle and the clowted shoone,
Shall the Kids glory, strive to eclipse at noone:
But by a Daulphin (of the City lov’d)
That black disastrous cloud shall be remov’d,
And *Phoebus* in his wonted orbe shine cleare,
Who when he shall in his full strength appeare,
Foure princely Lions were to him allyde,
Gall shall he with his horns in his great pride.
At length a Fox clad in a skin of gold,
Shall snatch the Kid, from midst of all his fold.”

The year before (which was the fourth of his reign) was a great insurrection of the commons throughout the land, especially in Kent and Essex ; the reason was, because in the third year, at a parliament held at Westminster, there was granted to the king a groat of every person, male or female, above the age of 14 years. The chief captains and leaders of the rebels’ army, were Jack Straw, William Wawe, Wat Tyler, Jack Shepherd, Tom Miller, and Hob Carter; these gathered great multitudes of the commons, and assembled themselves upon Blackheath, three miles from London, and upon the 11th of June, entered the tower of London, where the king was then lodged, and took thence by force doctor Sudbury, arch-bishop of

Canterbury, Robert Hales, prior of St. John's, and a white frier, confessor to the king, whom, with a mighty acclamation and voice they drew to tower-hill, and there cut off their heads.

Then, by boats and barges, they returned into Southwark, and robbed all strangers, of what nation soever, thence they went to Westminster, and took thence all the sanctuary men, and came unto the Savoy, which was the duke of Lancaster's house, and first pillage it, and afterwards set it on fire, and then to the palace of St. John, near Clerkenwell, and spoiled it. Afterwards, they searched the temples and inns of court, making haycock of all, burning their law books, and killing as many lawyers and questmongers as they might find. That done, they went to St. Martin's le Grand, releasing all that had there took sanctuary, with the prisoners of Newgate, Ludgate, and the two counters, tearing their registers and books. The like they did to the king's bench and marshals in Southwark, and moreover, they did through the whole city of London, according to their own wills and pleasures.

When Jack Straw, who was prime commander above the rest, had executed all these insolencies, and saw no resistance against him, he was so suddenly tumoured with pride, that he thought no man worthy to be his peer, inso-much that he rode again to the tower, where he found the king but weakly attended, and in a manner compelled him to ride through divers parts and streets of the city, and so conveyed him to Smithfield, where, in the king's presence (to whom he did small or no reverence at all) he caused a proclamation to be made, though using his majesty's name, yet to his own wicked end and purpose, which William Walworth, fishmonger, and then lord mayor, seeing, and not able to endure his so great presumption and insolency, he stepped towards, and first, with a blow on the head, stounded him with his mace, and afterwards, with a short dagger, which he wore by his side, he wounded him to death, then, with a sword struck off his head, and lifted it upon the point of a spear, and shewing it to the rebels, cried out aloud, King Richard, God save king Richard; who when they saw their chief captain slain, they fled in great disorder, of which many were taken, and some slain, and the remnant were chased, so that both city and suburbs

were voided of them that night, being the 15th of June, making good what was predicted :

“ Sport shall the young Kid in his youth and play,
’Gainst whom shall rise the Hedghog & the gray,
And then the hobnail and the clowted shoon
Shall the suns glory strive to eclipse at noon,
But by a Daulphin (of the city lov’d)
This black disastrous cloud shall be removd, &c.

By the young *Kid* is intended the wanton king, by the *Hedghog and the Grey*, beasts frequent in the country, Jack Straw, Wat Tyler, and the rest of the captains and commons ; by the *Daulphin*, William Walworth, who was free of the fishmongers, and they give the daulphin in their escutcheon, &c.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-THIRD.

The duke of Gloucester by a parliament reformeth the common-wealth.—John of Gaunt claims his title in Spain.—King Richard marrieth the French king's daughter.—Difference between the king and Gloucester.—His murder in	Calais.—The murmur of the commons against the present government.—The pride of the duke's court.—The dukes of Hereford and Norfolk banished.—King Richard deposed, and Henry, duke of Hereford and Lancaster, made king.
--	--

WHEN the king saw the great manhood and courage of the lord mayor and his brethren, the aldermen, his assistants, he, in his own person, knighted the said William Walworth, with Nicholas Bremble, John Philpot, Nicholas Twiford, Robert Laundor, and Robert Gayton, aldermen. And moreover, in memory of that noble act, added to the arms of the city, the bloody dagger, as it remaineth to this day. In the 11th year of this king, Thomas of Woodstock, duke of Gloucester, and uncle to the king, the earl of Arundell, with the earls of Warwick, Derby, and Nottingham, taking into their consideration, how much the land was misgoverned, and his majesty misled by some sycophants near about him, they met in counsel at a place called Radecockbridge, and having assembled a strong power, came to London, and there

caused the king to call a parliament, whereof Alexander Nevell, arch-bishop of York, Lionel Vere, marquiss of Divelin, Michael de la Poole, earl of Suffolk, and chancellor of England, hearing, and fearing the censure of that high court, fled the land, and died in foreign countries. Then, the king, by counsel of the aforesaid lords, caused to be apprehended Sir Robert Tresilian, chief justice of England, Sir Nicholas Brembre, late mayor of the city, Sir John Salisbury, of the king's household, Sir John Beauchampe, steward of the house, Sir Simon Burleigh, Sir Thomas Bernes, Sir Robert Belknap, with one John Uske, serjeant at arms, all which, by the foresaid parliament, were convicted of treason, and put to death, some at Tyburne, some at Towerhill, and all such as fled, with those that forsook the land, by the authority of that high court, banished for ever.

In the 13th year, John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, with a strong army, sailed into Spain, to claim the kingdom, in right of lady Constance, his wife, the daughter of Don Peter, with whom joined the king of Portugal, with his forces, so that, of necessity, the king of Spain was forced to treat with the duke, of peace and amity. The conditions were, that the king of Spain should marry the duke's eldest daughter, named Constance, and moreover should give unto the said duke, to recompense the charges of his war, so many wedges of gold as should load eight chariots; and moreover, during the lives of the said duke and his wife, he should, at his proper cost and charges, deliver unto the duke's assignees yearly 10,000 marks of gold, within the town of Bayon, which conditions being ratified, and assurance given for the performance thereof, the duke departed with the king of Portugal, to whom, shortly afterwards, he married his second daughter, the lady Anne, so that the elder and the younger, were made the two queens of Spain and Portugal.

King Richard's first wife being dead, afterwards he married Isabel, the daughter of Charles the sixth, king of France, who was but eight years of age, at whose espousals, in the French king's court, many rich interchangeable gifts passed between them, as first, the king of England, gave the French king a bason of gold and ewer, who

returned him three standing cups of gold with covers, and a ship of gold, garnished with pearl and stones. At a second meeting, Richard gave him a curious ouch, set with rich stones, valued at 500 marks; then the French king gave him two flagons of gold, and a tablet of gold, set with diamonds, and in it the picture of St. Michael, a tablet of gold with a crucifix, another with the image of the trinity, and a fourth with the image of St. George, all of them set with stones of great splendour; Richard then presented him with a belt or bauldricke, set with great diamonds, rubies, and emeralds, which for the riches thereof, the king wore upon him so often as they met together. Many other presents passed between them, and a full peace was concluded between them, for 30 years, and amongst other things, king Richard delivered up Brest, which had been long held by the English.

The year afterwards, in the month of February, the king held a magnificent feast at Westminster hall, whither pressed divers soldiers, lately discharged from Brest, whose minds, when the duke of Gloucester, the king's uncle, understood, went to his majesty, and said, Sir, Do you take notice of yon soldiers; who asked him again what they were; the duke replied, these be your subjects and soldiers, cashiered from Brest, who have done you good service, and now have no means to live upon, who have been ill paid, and now are worse rewarded. To whom the king answered; it was my will they should have been well paid, but if ought have failed therein, let them petition to our treasurer. At length, the duke said, but it savoureth of small discretion to deliver up a strong fort with ease, which was got with great difficulty by our progenitors. At which the king changed countenance, and said, Uncle, how spake you these words? which the duke, with great vehemency uttered again; whereat the king being more moved, replied, think you I be a merchant, or fool, to sell my land? by St. John the Baptist, nay, &c. For these words thus uttered on both sides, great rancour was kindled between the king and duke, which was never extinguished, till by the consent of the king, his uncle was basely murdered.

For the duke, purposing to remove some who were potent about the king, called to him the earls of Warwick,

of Arundel, and of Nottingham, who was marshall of England; and of the clergy, the arch-bishop of Canterbury, with the two abbots of St. Albans and Westminster, and these were solemnly sworn to supplant from their authority the duke of Lancaster, the duke of York, with others prejudicial to the good of the kingdom. But Nottingham, contrary to his oath, revealed all to the king, who, presently, whilst the others thought themselves secure, called another council, in which it was decreed, that the earls of Arundel and Warwick, should be censured and brought to the king, who in person arrested his uncle, Sir Thomas of Woodstock; (some say at Plashy in Essex, others at Greenwich) in the night time, and taking him in his bed, first sent him to the tower, and thence had him secretly conveyed to Calais, where he was piteously murdered. Afterwards, the two earls of Arundel and Warwick were judged and executed. Afterwards was called a parliament, in which divers of the nobility had more honourable titles conferred upon them; and other upstarts, neither of birth nor quality, were advanced to office and honour; in which parliament, also, many true heirs were disinherited, &c.

For which the people greatly murmured against the king and his council, pretending that the revenues of the crown were wasted upon unworthy persons; for which, divers exactions were put upon the commons, that the chief rulers about the king were of low birth, and little reputation, and men of honour kept out of office and favour; that the duke of Gloucester was secretly murdered without process of law; and the earls of Arundel and Warwick put to death, contrary to the king's own proclamation, with divers others, to the number of 38 several articles, all which, at his deposing, were publicly protested against him.

Harding the chronologer reports, that king Richard was prodigal, ambitious, and luxurious, to whose court resorted, at their pleasure, 10,000 persons, pretending business there; that in his kitchen were 300 servitors, and in every office to the like number. Of ladies, chamberers, and landresses 500, who excelled in costly and sumptuous apparel, and far above their degrees. The very grooms and yeomen were clothed in silk, satin, and damask, scarlet, embroidery, gold

chains and gold-smiths' work were then common; such was the pride then in the court. It was also commonly voiced, that he had let to farm the revenues of the crown to Bushy, Baggot, and Green; which caused the nobility also, and the commons to grudge against the king and his government. And this year, being the 21st of his reign, died John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, at the bishop of Ely's palace in Holborne, and was buried on the north side of the choir in Paul's, where his tomb remaineth to this day.

This year also fell a great difference between the two dukes of Hereford (who was son to John of Gaunt) and the duke of Norfolk; the cause was (after some writers) that the two dukes riding from parliament, the duke of Norfolk said unto the other, Sir, you see how unstedfast the king is in his word, and how shamefully he putteth his kinsmen to death, exiling some, and imprisoning others, and no doubt, what hath happened to them, may, in time, fall upon us, &c. Of which words, the duke of Hereford accused him to the king, which the one affirming, the other denying, a day of battle was appointed them at Coventry, upon the 11th of September, where the king and the greatest part of the nobility were present. Where both appearing in the lists, and ready for the combat, the king threw down his warder, and stayed the fight, and forthwith banished the duke of Hereford for 10 years, and the duke of Norfolk for ever. Upon which sentence, Hereford sailed into Britain; and Norfolk, after passing divers countries, lastly, came to Venice, and there ended his life.

In his 22nd year, the common fame ran, that he had farmed the realm of England, to Sir William Scroop, earl of Wiltshire, and treasurer, and to Sir John Bushy, Sir John Bagot, and Sir Henry Green. And in the month of April, the king, with a potent host sailed into Ireland, leaving for his pro-rex in England, his uncle, Edmund Langley, duke of York. In which voyage, he prospered well, and quieted the realm to his pleasure. And whether it was for some noble act done, or out of his grace and bounty, (I cannot say) he there knighted Henry, son to the duke of Hereford, (then in exile) which Henry, after his father's death, was crowned king of England, by the name of Henry the fifth.

Whilst king Richard was thus busied in Ireland, the duke of Hereford, late banished, with the arch-bishop of Canterbury, who had before left the realm, and Thomas, son to the earl of Arundel, lately beheaded, these, with others, being a small company in number, landed at Ravenspur, in the North, and under pretence of laying claim to the dukedom of Lancaster, due to him by John of Gaunt, his father, deceased, he raised the people as he went; to whom multitudes assembled, being weary with the misgovernment of king Richard; who, hearing how the state in England then stood, made speedy return from Ireland, and in the beginning of September, landed in Milford Haven, and sped him thence to Flint castle, in Wales, intending thither to gather more strength to oppose the duke's proceedings.

Who, in the interim, proclaiming himself duke of Lancaster, in the right of his father, John of Gaunt, came to Bristol, where, without resistance, he seized upon Sir William Scroop, earl of Wiltshire, and treasurer of England, Sir John Bushy, and Sir Henry Green, with Sir John Bagot, who escaped, and fled into Ireland, but the other three were judged and put to execution. Which the king (being then in Flint castle) hearing, he much doubted his own safety, and so did all these who were then about him. Therefore, Sir Thomas Percy, earl of Worcester, and steward of the king's household, contrary to his allegiance, broke his white staff openly in the hall, willing every one to shift for himself, by reason of which, the king was forsaken of all his people, and soon afterwards, surprised, and presented to the duke, who put him under safe keeping, and himself hasted towards London.

Who, coming near to the city, sent the king secretly to the tower, of which some evil disposed persons ambushed him in the way, and would have slain him because of his former misgovernment, but the citizens, informed of their malicious purpose, rescued him from their fury. Then, the duke coming to London, (by consent of the king) a parliament was begun the 13th of September, in which many accusations and articles concerning his misruling the realm, to the number of 38, the king was charged with; and for which the king subscribing, (willing as it

was then given to his own deposal, he was deprived from all kingly majesty, the manner of the proceedings therein, were too long to relate) which sentence being published, and openly read in parliament, Henry, duke of Hereford, and now of Lancaster, rising from the place where he before sat, and standing where all might behold him. First, making the sign of the cross upon his forehead, and afterwards upon his breast, (silence being commanded) he spake as followeth: "In the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost, I, Henry of Lancaster, claim the realm of England, with the crown, and all the appurtenances thereto belonging, as I am rightly descended from the right line of the blood, coming from that good lord king Henry the third, and through the right that God of his grace hath sent me, with the help of my kindred and friends to recover the same, which was in point to be undone, for default of good governance and justice, &c."

Which having spoken, he sat down in his place. Then, every one hearing his claim, spake what he thought, and after some distance of time, the arch-bishop of Canterbury, knowing the minds of the lords, stood up, and asked the commons, if they would assent with the nobility in their election, which they thought to be needful, and for the good of the kingdom; to which, with an unanimous voice, they said, yea, yea. After which, the arch-bishop approaching the duke, uttered some words to him in private. Which done, he arose, and taking him by the hand, led him to the king's seat, and placed him therein; afterwards made a long oration to that noble assembly, the effect whereof was to prove the duke's title to the crown, and to justify the deposing of the king, verifying what was before predicted of him:

"Four Princely Lions were to him allide,
Gall shall he with his horns in his great pride.
At length a Fox clad in skin of gold,
Shall snatch the Kid, from midst of all his fold."

By the *four Lions*, are figured his four princely uncles, sons to Edward the third, whom he severally injured, preferring men raised from nothing, to be eminent above

them, both in honour and office; and by the *Fox*, Henry of Halwark, who clothed himself with all the golden ornament of regal majesty, and snatched him from the midst of all the fold, that was, from amongst his own subjects and people, and afterwards, caused him to be put to a violent and cruel death.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-FOURH.

The coronation of Henry the fourth, with his great feast held in Westminster hall.—A great conspiracy intended against him, but prevented.—The lamentable murder of king Richard the second, in Pontefract castle by Sir Pierce Ex-	ton.—His valour at his death.—His epitaph.—The great riches found in his treasury.—A prosecution of sundry passages in the reign of king Henry — He prepares a journey for the Holy Land, but is prevented by death.
---	--

HENRY, the fourth of that name, and son to John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, took possession of the whole dominion of England, upon the last day of September, in the year of grace 1399. After which, he made new officers clean through the kingdom, and then gave order for his coronation, and the eve before, he, in the tower, made 41 knights of the Bath, of which, three were his own sons, and three earls, and five lords, &c. Then, the morrow after, being Monday, the 13th of October, he was crowned at Westminster, by the arch-bishop of Canterbury; after which solemnity ended, a great and sumptuous feast was held in the great Hall, where the king being sat in the midst of the table, the arch-bishop of Canterbury, with three other prelates, were placed at the right hand of the said table, and on the left hand the arch-bishop of York, with four other of the clergy. Henry, the king's eldest son, stood by his father, on his right hand, with a sword pointless; and the earl of Northumberland, new made lord constable, with a pointed sword on his left hand, both swords being held upright. Before the king,

NUMBER V. B B

stood, all dinner time, the dukes of Aumerl, of Surry, and of Exeter, with two other earls, and the earl of Westmorland, late made marshal, roved about the hall, with many tip staves to make room, that the officers, with more ease, might serve the tables.

Of which, the chief upon the right side of the hall, was begun by the barons of the cinque ports; and at the table next the cupboard, upon the left hand, sat the lord mayor and the aldermen of London, which mayor being Drewe Barendine, goldsmith, was presented (according to the custom) with a cup of gold. After the second course came in, Sir Thomas Dimmocke, armed at all points, and sitting upon a good steed, rode to the high part of the hall, and before the king, caused a herald to make a proclamation, that whosoever would affirm, king Henry was not lawful inheritor to the crown and kingdom of England, he was there ready to wage battle against him; which proclamation he caused to be made, afterwards, in three other parts of the hall, in French and English, with many more observances, at such solemnities exercised and done. Which feast being ended, the morrow after, being Tuesday, the parliament was again begun. Of this king and his reign, it was thus predicted :

“ The Foxe being earth’d according to his mind,
In his Kids den, a Magazine shall finde,
Yet all that treasure can his life not save,
But rather bring him to a timelesse grave :
Mean time shall study many a forrest beast,
By a new way to kill the King in jest :
But crafty *Rainold* shall the plot prevent,
And turne it all to their own detriment.
Wales and the north against him both shall rise,
But he, who still was politicke and wise,
Shal quell their rage: much trouble he’ll indure,
And after, when he thinks himselfe secure,
Hoping to wash the Kids blood from his hand,
Purpose a voyage to the Holy Land,
But faile: Yet in *Hierusalem* shall dye,
Deluded by a doubtfull augury.”

In the former parliament were many challenges of the peers, one against the other, which came to none effect,

but one thing was there confirmed, that whosoever had hand in the good duke of Gloucester's death, should die as traitors. For which, divers found guilty, afterwards suffered. Moreover, sundry acts made in the time of Richard's reign, were disannulled and made void, and others held, more profitable for the kingdom's good, and common wealth, enacted in their stead.

Then was king Richard removed from the tower, and thence conveyed to Leeds, and afterwards to the castle of Pontefract. There was provision made for the king to keep his Christmas at Windsor; in which interim, the dukes of Aumerl, of Surry, and of Exeter, with the earls of Salisbury and Gloucester, with others of their affinity, lords, knights, and esquires, made great provision for a mask, to be presented before the king upon the 12th night, which grew near, and all things were in readiness for the performance thereof. But that day, in the morning, came secretly unto the king, the duke of Aumerl, and discovered unto him, that he, with the foresaid lords and gentlemen, had made a solemn conjuration to kill him in the said mask; therefore, advised him to provide for his safety. Upon which notice given, the king departed privately from Windsor, and came that night to London; upon which, the lords finding their plot to be discovered, they fled westward; but the king caused speedy pursuit after them, so that the duke of Surry, and the earl of Salisbury, were taken at Chichester, Sir Thomas Blunt, Sir Benet Sally, and Thomas Wintercell, at Oxford, Sir John Holland, duke of Exeter, at Pitwell, in Essex, and divers others in several places. The noblemen were beheaded, the rest drawn and quartered, but all of their heads set upon the bridge gate at London, approving the premises :]

“ Mean time shall study many a forrest beast,
By a new way to kill the Foxe in jest,
But crafty *Rainold* shall the plot prevent;
And turn it all to their own detriment.”

The king having well considered this great conspiracy, and that they intended, by his death, to restore the imprisoned king to his diadem, he bethought himself that he

could live in no safety whilst the other was breathing, and therefore he determined of his death, and to that purpose, called unto him one Sir Pierce Exton, to see his will executed, who presently posted to Pontefract, and with eight more, well armed, entered the castle, and violently assaulted him with their polaxes and halberts in his chamber, who apprehending their purpose, and seeing his own present danger, most valiantly wrested one of their weapons from them, with which he manfully acquitted himself, and slew four of the eight before he himself fell; but at the last he was basely wounded to death, by the hand of Sir Pierce Exton, whose body was afterwards laid in the minster at Pontefract, to the public view, that all men might be satisfied of his death, and was afterwards brought up to London, and exposed to all eyes in Paul's, least any man should afterwards pretend to lay any plots for his liberty.

And now, king Henry being in peaceable possession of the kingdom, thought it time to rife his predecessor's coffers, in whose treasury he found, in ready coin 300,000 pounds sterling, besides plate, jewels, and rich vessels, as much (if not more) in value. Besides, in his treasurer's hands, he found so many gold nobles, and other sums, that all of them put together, amounted to 700,000 pounds sterling; yet could not all this sum afford him a better funeral than in the poor friery of Langley, which, afterwards, by Henry, the king's son, in the first year of his reign, was removed thence, and with great solemnity interred amongst the kings, in the chapel of Westminster. All this process verifying the former prediction :

“ The Foxe being earth't according to his mind,
In the Kids den, a Magazin shall find:
Yet all that treasure can his life not save,
But rather bring him to a timelesse grave.

Over his tomb, in the chapel, the king caused these verses following to be inscribed :

*Prudens & mandus, Ricardus jure secundus,
Per jutam victus jacet hic sub marmore pictus,
Verus sermone fuit & plenus ratione,
Corpore procerus, animo prudens ut Homerus.*

*Ecclesiam favit, elatos suppeditavit,
Quemvis prostravit, regalia qui violavit.*

Thus Englished :

*Wise and cleane Richard, second of that name,
Conquered by fate, lyes in this Marble frame.
True in his speech : whose reason did surpasse :
Of feature tall, and wise as Homer was:
The Church he favoured, he the proud subdude,
Quelling all such as Majesty pursude.*

Concerning which epitaph, one of our English chronologers, seeing how it savoured more of flattery than truth, thus expressed himself :

*But yet, alas, though this meeter or rime,
Thus death embelisht this Noble Prince's fame,
And that some Clerk which favoured him sometime
List, by his comming, thus to enhance his name,
Yet by his story appeareth in him much blame.
Wherefore to Princes is surest memory,
Their lives to expresse in vertuous constancie.*

In the second year of king Henry's reign, Owen Glendour, rebelled in Wales ; against whom, the king entered the country with a strong army, but at the king's coming, he fled up to the mountains, whom the king, for the endangering his host, durst not follow, but returned, without deeming any thing worthy of note. In the year following, Sir Thomas Percy, earl of Worcester, and Sir Henry Percy, son and heir to the earl of Northumberland, gathered a great power, and upon the 21st of July, met with the king and his army, near unto Shrewsbury, between whom was fought a bloody and cruel battle, but at length the king was victor. In which fight, Thomas Percy, earl of Worcester was taken, and his nephew, Sir Henry, with many a brave northern man was slain ; and upon the king's part, the prince was wounded in the head, and the earl of Stafford, with many others slain. It was observed, that in this battle, father fought against son, son the father, brother the brother, and uncle the nephew. The 25th of July following, was Sir Thomas Percy beheaded at

Shrewsbury; and in August after, the dutchess of Britain, landed at Falmouth, in Cornwall, and from thence conveyed to Winchester, where she was solemnly espoused to king Henry.

Soon afterwards, Richard Scroop, arch-bishop of York, with lord Mowbray, marshal of England, with others to them allied, made a new insurrection against the king, with purpose to supplant him; to whom the king gave battle on this side of York, where, after some loss on both sides, the king had the better of the day, the arch-bishop and the martial being both taken in the field, and soon afterwards beheaded. In that king's reign was the conduit builded in Cornwall, as it now standeth; the market of the Stocks at the lower end of Cheapside, and the Guildhall of London, new edified, and of a small cottage, and ruinous and decayed house, made such a good structure, as it appears to this day. Moreover the famous and stately bridge of Rochester, with the chapel at the foot of the said bridge was fully perfited and finished, at the sole charge and cost of Sir Robert Knolls, who, in the time of Edward the third, had achieved many brave and memorable victories in France and Britain; who, also, re-edified the body of the White Friars church, in Fleetstreet, to which place he left many good legacies, and there lies buried; the foundation of which place was first laid by lord Gray Cotner. But to carry our prediction along the premises, to prove that they differ not in the least circumstance.

*"Wales and the North, against him both shal rise,
But he who still was politick and wise,
Shall quell their rage, &c."*

We read also of divers jousts and martial exercises performed in Smithfield, in the presence of the king, the nobility and ladies, in his sixth year. Lord Morif, a baron of Scotland, challenged Edmund, earl of Kent, in which the earl bore himself so valiantly, that to him was given the honour of the turnament; and in the 10th year, came the Seneschall of Henalt, with a brave company of his own countrymen, and strangers, to perform the like martial exercises, in the same place, before the king. Against the Seneschall, himself, ran the earl of Somerset,

to whom was given the honour of the first day. Upon the second day came in a knight, Henalder, as challenger; against whom rose as defendant, Sir Richard Arondell, who, after certain courses, ran on horseback with their lances, they combated on foot with axes, where the Henalder had the better, for he brought him on his knee. The third day came a third challenger, whom Sir John Cornwayle encountered, and put to the worst. Upon the fourth day, appeared an esquire Henalder, and was met by John Cheyney, who, at the second course, overthrew his adversary, horse and man, for which the king instantly made him knight. On the fifth day came a fifth challenger, him one John Steward, an esquire, opposed, and came off with honour. Against the sixth challenger, came a gentleman called William Porter, who so courageously demeaned himself, that there he won his knighthood. Against the seventh champion, appeared John Standish, esquire, who, for his valour there shewn, the king also knighted. A Gascoine also demeaned himself so well against another stranger, that he was also made knight. Upon the eighth and last day, came in two Henalders, challengers, against whom came two English brothers, who were of the garrison at Calais, between whom was so long and so violent a bickering, that they were commanded by the king to cease combat, lest any of them, who so well had fought, might, in the end, have come off with disgrace. Thus this challenge was finished, to the great honour of the king, who bountifully feasted the strangers, and with rich gifts sent them back into their countries.

In the 11th year, in a parliament held at Westminster, the commons put up a bill unto the king, to take all the temporal lands out of the clergymen's possessions, the effect whereof was, that the temporalities disorderly wasted by the churchmen, which might suffice to find to the king 15 earls, 1,500 knights, 6,200 esquires, and an 100 alms houses, to the relief of poor people, more than were at that time in the land; and besides all those, the king might put yearly to his coffers, 20,000 pound; and of this, by particulars, they made munified proof. To which bill, no answer was made, but that the king would take thereof further deliberation.

In his 14th year, the king called a counsel at White Friars, in which it was concluded, that speedy provison

should be made for the king's voyage to visit the holy sepulchre; but, at the feast of Christmas, whilst he was praying at St. Edward's shrine, to take there his leave, and sped him upon his journey, so grievous a sickness took him, that they feared he would there have expired; wherefore they bore him to the abbot's palace, and brought him to a chamber, and laid him upon a pallat by the fire, who, when he came to himself, asked what place he was in, those that attended him, told him, that it belonged to the abbot of Westminster, and finding himself so extremely sick, he demanded if that chamber had any particular name, they answered that it was called Hierusalem; who presently replied, then, thanks be to the Father of heaven, who hath thus greatly admonished me of mine end; for now I know that I shall die within this chamber, according to a prophecy long since spoke of me, which said I should die in Hierusalem. Which spoken, and having made his peace with heaven, he, in the same place, departed this life, the 20th of March, after he had reigned 14 years, five months, and 21 days, still upholding the former prediction:

“—————much trouble hee'l endure,
And after when he thinks himself secure,
Hoping to wash the kids blood from his hand,
Purpose a voyage to the *Holy Land*:
But faile: yet in *Hierusalem* shall die,
Deluded by a doubtfull Augury.”

This king left behind him four sons, Henry, who was king after him, Thomas, duke of Clarence, John, duke of Bedford, and Humphrey duke of Glocester, and two daughters, the one queen of Denmark, the other dutchesse of Bavaria or Barr. His body was afterwards conveyed by water from Westminster to Feversham, in Kent, and thence to Canterbury, where he was royally interred.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-FIFTH.

The coronation of Henry the fifth.—A prophecy of his reign.—His victorious battle over the French at Agincourt. His second voyage into France.—His victories by sea and	land.—He is made heir (by the marriage of his wife) to the crown of France.—His third voyage into France.—The birth of prince Henry.—The death of Henry the fifth.
---	--

HENRY, the fifth of that name, and son to Henry the fourth, began his reign, the 21st of March, in the year of grace 1412, and on the ninth of April following, was crowned at Westminster. This prince, before the death of his father, applied himself to all irregularity, associating himself only with riotous and evil disposed persons, as gamesters, drunkards, robbers by the highway, and the like. But he was no sooner admitted to the government of the land, but he suddenly became a new man, changing his dissolute life into a discreet carriage, his wildness to wisdom, and his sensuality into a wonderful sobriety. Who, least he should be reduced to his former riots, sent to all those vain fellows, with whom he had been before familiar, such competent gifts as might maintain them in a fair and even course of life, but with this proviso, that not any of them should dare come within 10 miles of his court, after a day by him assigned. Of whom and whose reign it was thus predicted :

“ Note a strange mixture in the planets seed,
For now a *Mercury*, a *Mars* shall breed,

C O

Who in his armes, accomodate and fit,
 Shall compasse more by warre, than he by wit
 The *Caduceus* to a sword shall change,
 And grim *Orion* shal (though it seem strange)
 Sit in *Astræa's* orbe, and from her teare :
 The three leav'd flower she in her hand did bear,
 And turn it to a lawrell to adorn
 The Lions brows, whom late the Toad did scorn.
 And after many a furious victory,
 At length invested shall the Lion bee
 In a new Throne, to which his claim is faire,
 As being matcht unto the Kingdomes heire :
 Living, this royall beast shall lose no time,
 But be at last from earth snatcht in his prime."

Presently after his coronation, he caused the corpse of King Richard to be removed from the Friars at Langley, and solemnly interred upon the south side of St. Edward's shrine, in Westminster, by the body of queen Anne, his wife. In the second year of his reign, he held his parliament at Leicester, where, amongst other things, the commons put up their former bill, against the clergy, who kept so much of the temporalities in their hands. In fear whereof, least the king should give unto it any comfortable audience, certain bishops, and others of the clergy, put the king in mind to claim his right in France, for which they offered him great and notable sums, by reason whereof, that bill was againe put by, and the prince listening to the motion of the prelates, aimed only to set forward his expedition against France, and sent his letters to the French king to that purpose, who returned him answer, full of derision and scorn, wherefore he made speedy provision for war.

And in his third year, he rode (honourably accompanied) through London, and thence to Southampton, where he had appointed his army to meet him. There, Richard, earl of Cambridge, Sir Richard Seroon, then treasurer of England, and Sir Thomas Grey, were arrested of treason, arraigned, and on the 29th of July following were beheaded. The morrow after, the king took the sea, and on the 16th of August landed in Normandy, and laid siege to Harflew, and won it. Then, leaving Sir Thomas Bewford his noble captain there, he sped from Calais; and the Dolphin, who had then the ruling government of France, (by reason of the

king's great sickness) broke the bridges, to hinder the king's passage over the river Sanne; therefore he was constrained to take the way towards Picardy, and to pass the river Pericon. Whereof, the French being aware, assembled their forces, and lodged near to Agincourt, Rolandcourt, and Blangie.

When king Henry saw that he was thus environed with his enemies, he pitched his battle between Agincourt and Blangie; having no more than 7,000 able men. But in those days, the yeomen had their limbs at liberty, their breeches fastened with one point, and their jacks or coats of mail, long and easy to shoot in, drawing bows of great strength, and shooting arrows of a yard long besides the head. King Henry, then considering the number of the enemies, and that the French stood much upon their horse, charged every archer to take a sharp stake, and pitch it aslope before him, that when the cavalry, with their spears assaulted them, they should give back; and so the horse should foil themselves upon the stakes, and then to power their shot upon them. And when the king had thus providently ordered for the battle over night, the morrow after, being the 25th of October, and the day of Crispin and Crispianus, he attended the approach of the enemy, who were in number 40,000 able fighting men.

Who, about nine o'clock in the morning, with great pride and scorn set upon the English, thinking to have over-rid them with their horse, and trod them under foot, but the archers, as they were before appointed, retired themselves within their stakes, upon which the French horses were galled, which the English archers perceiving, and that their horses being gored with the stakes, tumbled one upon another, so that they which were foremost, were the confusion of them which followed. The archers, after their arrows were spent, fell upon them with swords and axes, so that the day fell, with little loss, to the English, of whom were slain that day the duke of York, who had the leading of the van, and the duke of Suffolk, and not above 26 persons more.

But of the French were killed that day more than 10,000 common soldiers, and of the nobility, the three dukes of Bar, of Alonson, and of Braban, eight earls, and of barons

above 80, with gentlemen in coat armours, to the number of 3,000. Besides, in that fight were taken prisoners, the duke of Orleans, the duke of Burbon, the earls of Vendosme, of Ewe, of Richmond, and Bursigant, then marshal of France, with knights and esquires (besides common men) surmounting the number of 2,400. When king Henry, had (by God's help) obtained this glorious victory, and recalled his people from pursuit of the enemy, news was brought of a new host coming towards him, wherefore he commanded his soldiers to be embattled, and then made proclamation through his army, that every man should kill his prisoner, which made the duke of Orleans, and the rest of the French nobility in such fear, that they (by authority of the king) sent to the host to withdraw, so that the king, with his prisoners, the morrow following, took their way towards Calais; where, for a time, he rested himself and his army. Thus it was truly prophesied of him:

“ Note a strange mixture in the planets seed,
For now a *Mercury* a *Mars* shall breed,
Who in his armes accommodate and fit,
Shall compasse more by warre than he by wit.”

The exposition is plain. By *Mercury* is meant the father, who was politic and ingenious; and by *Mars*, the son, who, by his military prowess, achieved more than the other apprehended. But it followeth, the 23rd of November, he was met upon Blackheath, by the lord mayor and his brethren, who conducted him through the city, (where were presented many pageants and shows, to gratulate his famous victory) to Westminster, whither, the same hour, came Sigismond the emperor, who lodged him in his own palace, and afterwards was St. George's feast kept at Windsor; in the time of which solemnity, during the time of divine service, the king kept the estate, but in the sitting at the feast, he gave it to the emperor, where he, the duke of Holland, and a great Almane prince, called the duke of Briga, were made knights of the garter, and after seven weeks abode here, left the land, whom the king in person conducted to Calais. In which time of his being there, the duke of Bedford, with the earl of March, and other lords, had a great sea-fight, with divers caricks of Genoway, and other ships; where, after a long and cruel

fight, the honour fell to the English, to the great loss of the strangers, both of their men and ships, in which, three of their caricks were taken.

In his first year, in a parliament called at Westminster, wherein order was taken for provision, for his second hostile expedition into France. Richard, son and heir to the earl of Cambridge, (put to death at Southampton) was created duke of York, who afterwards was married to Cecile, daughter to the earl of Westmorland, by whom he had issue Henry, who died young; Edward, who was afterwards king; Edmund, earl of Rutland; Anne, dutchess of Exeter; Elizabeth, dutchess of Suffolk; George, duke of Clarence; Richard Crook-back, duke of Gloucester, and afterwards king; and Margaret, dutchess of Burgoin. And when all things were accommodated for the king's voyage, he made John, duke of Bedford, his brother, protector of the land, and about Whitsunday, took shipping at Southampton, and sailed towards Normandy, where he laid siege to a place called Toke, or Towke.

During which, notice was given to the king, that the viscount Narbon, general of the French navy, intended to invade England. To prevent whom, he sent the earl of March, the earl of Huntington, with others, to scour the seas; who meeting with their fleet, after a long and bloody conflict, conquered and overcame them upon the ninth of August, in which they took plenty of treasure, being the money which should have paid the French-king's soldiers. Then was Tooke with the castle delivered up to king Henry, which he gave to his brother, the duke of Clarence, with all the signiory thereto belonging; he afterwards took the strong city of Caen in Normandy, with 14 other strong holds and castles. And whilst he was thus busied, the earl of March, the earl of Warwick, with others, won Lavers, Falois, Newlin, Cherburg, Argentine, and Bayons, &c. where the king kept St. George's feast, and made 15 knights of the Bath.

Then king Henry divided his people into three parts, whereof, one he reserved to himself, the second he committed to the duke of Clarence, the third to the earl of Warwick, which duke and earl so well employed their forces, that in a short time they won many strong towns and

castles, whilst the king laid siege to Rouen, of which one Sir Guy de Boucier was captain, which was also delivered up into his hands, so that having subdued all Normandy, he then entered France, and conquered the cities and towns as he marched, and upon the 20th of May, came to Troies in Champaign, where he was honourably received; for the duke of Burgoin, being slain in the presence of the Dolphin, Phillip, his son, who succeeded in the dukedom, refused the Dolphin's part, and leagneing himself with king Henry; delivered unto him the possession both of the French king, and Dame Catherine, his sole daughter.

Then was such an unity laboured by the lords on both sides, to be had betwixt the two nations, that by the urgency of the said Philip, duke of Burgoin, king Henry, at Troies, in Champaign, was solemnly married to Katherine, heir to the kingdom of France, upon the third day of June, being Trinity Sunday. Before the solemnization of which marriage, certain articles were agreed upon by the two kings, the effect whereof followeth: That Charles should remain king during the term of his life, and king Henry should be made regent and governor of the kingdom, in the right of his queen and wife; and that after the death of Charles, the crown of France, with all the rights thereto belonging, to remain to king Henry, and his heirs, kings, &c. And because Charles was then visited with sickness, king Henry, as regent, should have the whole and entire government of the realm; and that the lords of France, as well spiritual as temporal, should make oath to king Henry, to be obedient unto him in all things, and after the death of Charles, to become his true liegemen and subjects, &c.

Further, the dutchy of Normandy, and all other lordships thereto belonging, to be as one monarchy under the crown of France: and that during the life of Charles, Henry should not name or write himself king of France, but Charles in all his writings should name king Henry his dearest son, and immediate heir to the crown. And that by the advice of both councils of the realms of England and France, such ordinances should be established, that when the crown of France fell to king Henry or his heirs, that it might with such unity join the realm of England, that our king might rule both the realms as one

monarchy, &c. that king Charles, nor Philip, duke of Burgoin, should make any peace with the Dolphin of Vien, without the consent of king Henry, nor he make any accord with him, without the agreement of Charles and Philip, &c. thus you see :

“ His *Caducæus* to a Sword did change,
And grim *Orion*, though it might seem strange,
Sit in *Astræa* Orbe, and from her teare
The three leav'd Flower she in her hand did beare.
And turn it to a Lawrell to adorne
The Lions brows, whom late the Toad did scorn.”

By the *Caducæus* turning into a sword, is meant that *Mercury* was now turned *Mars*, and peace into war. The same is allegorically intended by *Orion*, who is called Lucifer, for the terribleness of his aspect, said by the astronomical poets to bear a sword. He removeth *Astræa*, that is Justice, out of her *orbe*, for in the time of war, force and might sway all, who rends from her bosom the peaceable three leaved flower; which is the flower de l'ycé, with which he crowns the *Lion*, king Henry, whom the Toad did scorn, (thus demonstrated.) Some write that the arms of France, were at first the three toads, which afterwards they changed to the three lilies, as they are now quartered with the English arms, &c. But to continue with the history, these former articles, being by consent of both the princes and their peers ratified, king Henry, with his new queen were honourably received into Paris, where, when they had rested a season, he, with the duke of Burgoin, laid siege to divers towns, which held with the Dolphin of Vien, as the strong city of Meldane, or Melian, to Melden, and others, and took them. And having done all his pleasure in France, he and the queen, took leave of Charles, the French king, and sailed into England, and at Westminster, with great solemnity, she was crowned.

In the beginning of his 10th year, was born at Windsor, the sixth day of December, Henry, the sixth of that name. At Easter afterwards, the queen took shipping at Southampton, and sailed into France, where she was royally received of her father and mother. And king Henry being

still busied in his wars of France, and still gaining from them cities and towns, on the ninth of August, he fell grievously sick, at Boys, in Vincent, and died the last day of the month, when he had reigned nine years, five months, and 10 days, leaving no issue behind him, only Henry, aged eight months and odd days. Then the king's body was embalmed, and afterwards brought to Westminster, and there buried, verifying :

“ Thus after many a famous victory,
At length invested shall the Lion be
In a new throne; to which his claime is faire,
As being matcht unto the kingdomes heir.
Living this royall beast shall lose no time,
But bee atlength from earth snatcht in his prime.”

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-SIXTH.

The duke of Gloucester made protector.—The duke of Bedford regent of France.—Of Joan of Arc.—Henry the sixth crowned in Paris.—A prophecy of his reign.—The death of the duke of Gloucester.—The death of the marquis of Suffolk.—The insurrection of the commons under Jack Cade.—His proceedings and death.—The duke of Somerset gives up Normandy.—The duke of York taketh arms, his person seized against the king's promise, and for fear set at liberty.
--

HENRY, the sixth of that name, and sole son of Henry the fifth, and queen Katherine, began his reign over the realm of England, the first day of September, in the year of grace 1422, who, during his minority, was committed to the guardianship of his two uncles, the dukes of Gloucester and Bedford; the duke of Gloucester being protector of England, and the duke of Bedford regent of France. In the first year of this king's reign, died Charles the seventh, king of France, by whose death, the crown and the realm, with the rights of them, fell to the young king, Henry; the possession of which, was by the lords of France, in general, (excepting some few, who took part with the Dolphin) delivered to the duke of Bedford, as regent, during the nonage of the king, who, in the second year of his reign, won from the Dolphin more

than 24 strong holds and castles, to the great honour of the English nation, and with whom all attempts succeeded prosperously and victoriously till the fifth year, that the earl of Salisbury, (who was called the good earl) with the earl of Suffolk, the lord Talbot, and others, laying strong siege to the city of Orleance, the earl was slain by a shot from the town; after whose death, the English still lost rather than won, so that by little and little, they were compelled from all their possession in France, for where they prevailed in any battle, in three they were discomfited.

In the eighth year of his reign, and upon the ninth of his age, king Henry was crowned in St. Peter's church at Westminster, where were made 36 knights of the Bath. His coronation, with all honour and joy being finished, provision was made for his journey into France, and upon St. George's day following, being the 23rd of April, he took shipping, and landed at Calais, with a great train of the English nobility. During whose abode there, many battles were fought in divers parts of the kingdom, between the English and French, in which, the French, for the most part prevailed, some said, by the help of a woman, called Joan of Arc, whom they stiled, *The maiden of God*, who was victorious in many conflicts, and, at length, came to a town called Compeine, with intention to remove the siege laid unto it by the duke of Burgoin, and the English, but, by the valour of a Burgonian knight, called Sir John Luxemburgh, her company was distressed, and she took alive, and afterwards carried to Roan, and there kept a season, because she feigned herself with child, but the contrary being found, she was adjudged to death, and her body burnt to ashes.

In his 10th year, and upon the seventh of December, king Henry VI. was crowned king of France, in Paris, by the cardinal of Winchester. At whose coronation were present the regent, the duke of Burgoin, with others of the French nobility. After the solemnity of which royal feast ended, the king left Paris, and kept his Christmas at Roan, and thence returned into England, where he was joyfully received. And of whom it was thus predicted:

“ How comes the Sun to rise where he should set?
Or how Lambs Lions, Lions Lambs beget?

Yet so't must be. The Lambe though doubly crown'd,
 And thinking his large empire hath no bound,
 Yet shall a Daulphin at a low ebbe land,
 And snatch one powerful scepter from his hand.
 Thus it falls out twixt father and the sonne.
Windsore shall lose, what ever *Monmouth* wonne,
 A Tigresse then, in title only proud,
 In the Lambs bosome seeks herself to shroud,
 A seeming Saint: at first meek and devout,
 But in small time her fiercenesse will break out,
 Nor can her ravenous fury be withstood,
 Untill, through sated, with best English blood,
 But a young Lion he at length shall tame,
 And send her empty back from whence she came.
 Much trouble shall be made about the crown,
 And Kings soon raised, and as soone put downe, &c."

After sundry conflicts between the English and the French, in which they diversly sped, at length, Charles, the Daulphin, who took upon him to be king of France, by the offer of many towns, castles, cities, provinces, and shires, so wrought upon the duke of Burgoin, that, withstanding he had before slain his father, adhered his party, and proclaimed himself utter enemy to the English, which was in the 13th of Henry. In which year, died the noble and valorous John, duke of Bedford, and regent of France, and was buried with great solemnity at Roan, in the church of our lady. After his death, notwithstanding the incomparable valour of Lord Talbot, whose name was so terrible in France, that with it women frighted their children, to still and quiet them the earl of Arundel and others, yet fortune, for the present part, was averse to the English, &c. And, though there were many treaties of peace to be made between the two kingdoms, yet they came to no effect, and thus for seven years it continued.

During which passages, divers murmurs and grudgings began to break out between the duke of Gloucester, lord protector, and uncle to the king, and divers persons near about the court, amongst whom was chief the earl of Suffolk, which, in the end, was the confusion of them both. In the 21st year, the said earl of Suffolk, who had

broke off a marriage concluded by the English ambassadors, between king Henry, and the daughter to the earl of Arminacke, went over into France, and made a match between him and the king's daughter of Hierusalem and Cicily, who had the bare titles thereof, and was indeed a king without a country. To compass which marriage, he delivered to the said king, the dutchy of Anjou, and earldom of Main, which were called the keys of Normandy, to the great prejudice and dishonour of the English nation. For which service done, he was created marquis of Suffolk; and soon afterwards, with his wife and others, pompously accommodated, brought her into England, where she was espoused to the king, at a place called Southwick, in Hampshire; whence, afterwards, she was conveyed to London, and thence to Westminster, and there, upon the 30th of May, being Trinity Sunday, solemnly crowned.

With which match, it seems, God was not well pleased; for after that day, fortune began to forsake the king, who lost his friends in England, and his revenues in France, for soon afterwards, the whole state was swayed by the queen and her counsel, to the dishonour of the king, the realm's detriment, and her own disgrace, for thereby fell the loss of Normandy, the division of the lords, the rebellion of the commons, the king deposed, her son slain, and she banished the land for ever; all which miseries fell (as some have conjectured) for the breach of that lawful contract, first made between the king and the daughter to the earl of Arminacke.

In his 25th year, was a parliament called at St. Edmondsbury, in Suffolk, which was no sooner begun, and the lords assembled, but Humphrey, duke of Gloucester, was arrested by viscount Beaumont, then high constable of England, the duke of Buckingham, and others, and the sixth day afterwards, found dead (some say murdered) in his bed. Of whose death, the marquis of Suffolk was most suspected. Whose body, after it was publicly shown, was conveyed to St. Albans, and there honourably interred, and soon afterwards five of the principal of his household hanged, but by the king's mercy not quartered.

In his 28th year, was called another parliament, in which the marquis of Suffolk was arrested and sent to the

tower; where he lived a month at his pleasure, and was afterwards set at large, to the discontent of some lords, but all the commons; for he was charged with the delivery of Amiens and Maine, and the murder of duke Humphrey, called the good duke of Gloucester. Upon which, ensued a rebellion of the commons, of which, one Blewbeard called himself captain, but they were soon suppressed, and the chief of them put to death. The parliament was then adjourned to Leicester, whither came the king, and with him the queen's great favourite, the duke of Suffolk. Then the commons made a petition to the king, that all such as had hand in the delivery of Anjou and Maine, and the death of the protector, might be severely punished. Of which they accused as guilty, the marquis of Suffolk, the lord Say, the bishop of Salisbury, one Damial, a gentleman, and one Trivillian, with others, to appease whom, Suffolk was exiled for five years, and the lord Say, treasurer of England, with the rest, were put apart for a while, and promised that they should be imprisoned. And Suffolk, taking shipping in Norfolk to have sailed into France, was met by a ship of war, called the Nicholas of the tower, and being known by the captain, he took him into his own vessel, and brought him back to the port of Dover, where, on the side of the boat, he caused his head to be struck off, and cast it with the body on the sands, and so went again to sea.

In this year, also, being the jubilee, the commons of Kent assembled themselves in great multitudes, under a captain called Jack Cade, who named himself Mortimer, and cousin to the duke of York. Against him the king raised a strong host, and sent Sir Humphrey Stafford, and William, his brother, with certain forces, to subdue them, but the rebels prevailed against them, and left the two noble brothers dead in the field. After which victory, the captain put upon him knight's apparel, with brigandiers set with gilt nails, and helmet, with gilt spurs. To whom was sent the archbishop of Canterbury, and the duke of Buckingham, who had conference with him, and found him very discreet in his answers, but not to be won to lay by his arms, and to blind the eyes of the people the more, he used great justice in his camp; at length, he came to Southwark, (at which time the commons of Essex, lay with an army at Mile-end) and when he approached the

draw-bridge, he hewed the ropes and chains asunder with his sword, and so entered London, where he made proclamations in the king's name, that no man, on pain of death, should rob, spoil, or take from any man, but to pay for whatsoever he called for, which drew unto him the hearts of many of the citizens; and when he came to London stone, he struck upon it with his sword, and said, Now is Mortimer lord of this city. Afterwards, he caused lord Bay to be fetched from the tower, and without any just process, at the standard in Cheap, commanded his head to be cut off, and another called Cromer, who had been high sheriff of Kent, he also commanded to be beheaded, then pitched their heads upon two poles, and as they passed the streets in divers places, caused the poles to join, so that the dead mouths kissed each other.

Thus he had free recourse into the city by day, and at night returned to lodge with his host in Southwark, but at length his malicious purpose broke out, for, dining one day with Phillip Malpas, draper and alderman, he robbed and spoiled his house, and took from thence a great quantity of plate or money, which had he not done, it was supposed, he might have attained his own ends, (for so he served another in the same kind) therefore the mayor, his brethren, and commons, consulted amongst themselves, (having the assistance of the tower) the next day to shut their gates against him, and keep him out of the city, which they did. Then the captain assaulted the bridge, which was valiantly defended, and many slain on both sides, but, at length, they were enforced to keep still in Southwark, whither the arch-bishop of Canterbury, sent a general pardon from the king, so they would disband themselves; of which he multitude took the advantage, every one sped himself home to his country. Then proclamation was made, that he who could take the captain alive or dead, should have 1,000 marks. At length, a gentleman of Kent, called Alexander Iden, found him in a garden in Sussex, and in taking, slew him, whose body was brought through the high streets of the city, to Newgate, there headed and quartered, his head set upon the bridge, and the quarters sent to four sundry towns in Kent, to the terror of like offenders.

In the 29th year, by reason of the duke of Somerset's giving up the dukedom of Normandy, displeasure grew

from some of the lords against the queen and her council, so that the duke of York, father to king Edward the fourth, with many lords to him allied, opposed themselves against her, and in the 30th year, the king, with the duke of Somerset, and other nobles, journeyed towards the marches of Wales, because they were informed, that the duke of York, with divers of the barons, both of note and name, had gathered a great strength. Who hearing the king made towards them, swarved from the king's host, and took their way towards London; but when they knew they could not be received there, they passed over Kingston bridge, so into Kent, and pitched their field on *Blackheath*. Of which the king being informed, followed them, and pitched his field on *Blackheath*.

Both their hosts being thus embattled, mediation of peace was made between the two hosts; and to the duke were sent the bishops of Winchester and Ely, with the earls of Salisbury and Warwick, who answered them, that neither he, nor any of his company, intended any hurt to the king's person, or any of his own council; but his purpose was to remove some evil disposed persons about the queen, by whom the land was oppressed, and the commons impoverished, of whom it was finally agreed, that he should be committed to prison, and to answer what the duke of York should object against him. Upon which promise made by the king, the duke, the first of March, being Tuesday, disbanded his army, and came to the king's tent, where, contrary to the promise made, he found the duke of Somerset waiting next the king, and the duke of York was sent (like a prisoner) to London, and now straightly had been kept, but that news was brought, that Sir Edward, his son, earl of March, was coming thither with a strong power of Welshmen and Marchmen, which so affrighted the queen and her council, that the duke was set at liberty, to go whither it pleased him, and so peace for a while, with feigned love was dissembled. Thus hitherto the prediction hath not failed in any particular, which saith:

“————The Lambe though doubly crown'd,
And thinking his large Empire hath no bound.
Yet shall a Daulphin at a lobbe land,
And snatch one powerful seepster from his hand.

Thus it falls out twixt father and the sonne.

Windsore shall lose, what ever Monmouth wonne."

Henry, for his meekness, was compared to a *Lamb*, being *doubly crowned*, in London and Paris. The Dolphin of Vien, being at the *lowest ebb* of state, yet, in time, by the perfidiousness of the duke of Burgoin, afterwards recovered the whole realm of France, with the dukedom of Normandy, so that he *snatched one sceptre from his hand*. So that Henry the sixth, born in Windsor, no way participating the noble and heroic spirt of his father, lost all by his pusillanimity, that Henry, the first born in Monmouth, had achieved, by his unmatchable prowess.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-SEVENTH.

The ambition of queen Margaret.—The battle at St. Albans.—York made protector.—The queen's practice against the lords.—The battle of Northampton.—York proclaimed heir to the crown.—York slain in the battle at	Wakefield.—Henry deposed, and Edward, earl of March, made king.—A prophecy of his reign.—The battle at Hexham.—King Henry taken and sent to the tower.—The marriage of Edward.—He flies the land.—Henry again made king.
--	--

I PROCEED with the history. In his 31st year, the king held a solemn feast at Westminster, upon the 12th day in Christmas, where he created two earls, who were his brothers by the mother's side. Queen Katherine, who, after the death of Henry the fifth, was married to a knight of Wales, called Owen, who had by her two sons, the eldest, named Edmund, who was made earl of Richmond, the youngest, Jasper, earl of Pembroke, who was afterwards, by Henry the seventh, made duke of Bedford, and so died. And in the 32nd year, the 13th of October, queen Margaret was delivered, at Westminster, of a princely son, named Edward, who, afterwards, grew to be of fair personage and great hope, but was afterwards slain by Edward the fourth, when he had won the battle fought at Tewksbury; whom the people, for the great hate they bore to his mother, would not acknowledge to be the natural son of king Henry, but rather a bastard or changling, to her great sorrow and dishonour.

During these passages, great dissention grew between the king and divers of his lords, but especially between the queen's council and the duke of York. And his bloody and main cause was, because the duke of Somerset

(now her prime favourite) lived at large, was made captain of Calais, and was in greater power about the queen than before, for the queen governed all, and the king was only so in name, but no more than a cypher to fill up a number, for which both the nobles and commons much grudged. At length, the duke of York being in the marches of Wales, called to him the earls of Warwick and Salisbury, with other knights and gentlemen; and in the month of April, gathered a strong host, and marched towards London, where the king, queen, and sundry of the nobility, then made their residence; who hearing thereof, assembled also a sufficient army, and sped towards St. Albans, of which the duke of York being advertised, he also made thither, and was at one end of the town, whilst the king and his people were at the other, and this was on the 23rd of May, the Thursday before Whitsunday. Now, whilst a treaty of peace was communed upon the one part, the earl of Warwick, with the Marchmen, entered the town upon the other end, and fought eagerly against the king's people, so that both the battles joined, and continued the fight for many hours, but, in the end, the victory fell to the duke of York; and of the king's side, were slain, the duke of Somerset, the earl of Northumberland, and lord Clifford, with many honourable knights and gentlemen.

The morrow after, the duke with great honour and reverence conveyed the king back to London, and lodged him in the bishop's palace, then called a parliament at Westminster, by authority whereof, the duke of York was made protector of the realm, the earl of Salisbury, chancellor, and the earl of Warwick, captain of Calais, and all such as were in authority about the king removed, and the queen and her council, who before swayed all, vilified and set at nought; but she, out of her great policy insinuated with divers lords, who were of her faction, and disdaining the rule the duke bore in the realm, by the name of protector, as if the king was insufficient to govern the state, which, as she thought, was a great dishonour to him, and disparagement to her. She made such friends of the lords, both spiritual and temporal, that the duke was shortly discharged of his protectorship, and the earl of Salisbury of his chancellorship; which was the cause of much combustion afterwards. So that it appears:

"A Tigresse then, in title onely proud,
In the Lambes bosom seeks herself to shroud;
A seeming Saint, at first meek and devout,
But in small time, her fiercenesse will break out:
Nor can her rav'nous fury be withstood,
Untill through sated with best English blood."

Which will manifestly appear in the sequel, for she causing the king to remove from London to Coventry, the duke of York was sent for thither by a privy seal, with the earls of Warwick and Salisbury, whose lives were ambushed in the way; of which they having notice, escaped the danger. Afterwards, a day of meeting was appointed at London, whither the lords came, with great trains at their heels; and the earl of Warwick, with a strong band of men from Calais, in red jackets, and white ragged sleeves upon them. But, by reason of the strength the lords had, nothing was attempted against them, but a dissembled peace was made between the two factions; which being tied with a small and slender thread, it happened that in a private quarrel, a servant to the earl of Warwick, hurt one of the king's servants, upon which the earl coming from the council to take his barge, the king's family rudely set upon him, and the black guard assaulted him with their spits, where divers of his followers were sore hurt, and he himself dangerously wounded, with great difficulty escaped, but got to London, and from thence sailed to Calais. He thus secured, the queen then aimed at the life of his father, the earl of Salisbury, who set upon him lord Audley, with a strong company, to way-lay him in his coming towards the city; who mending his train, kept on his journey, and upon Bloreheath, they met both, and after a bloody conflict, lord Audley, with many of his followers were slain, and two of the earl's sons wounded, who, in their way home, were surprised by some of the queen's faction, and sent prisoners to Chester.

Upon which, the duke with the lords assembled themselves for their own security, and the earl of Warwick came with a band of men from Calais, of which he made one Andrew Trollop, captain; against whom the king gathered a strong host, and came to Ludlow, where the

lords were encamped; but, the night before the battle, this Andrew, with his Calais soldiers, left the lords, and joined with the king's army. At which, the lords were much discouraged, because he was privy to all their purposes, wherefore they left their tents standing, and fled. The duke of York took shipping for Ireland, the rest escaped into Guernsey, by the means of one John Dinham, an esquire, who brought them a ship; which Dinham was afterwards made treasurer of England, so that the king was made master of the field, the dutchess of York with her children taken prisoners in Ludlow, and sent to her sister, the dutchess of Buckingham, where she remained long afterwards; and the lords proclaimed traitors, and their goods and lands forfeited, and seized into the king's hand; but, at length, the tide turned.

For the lords (being favoured by the commons, who much murmured at the proceedings of the queen and her council) again entered the land, and upon the ninth of July encountered the king's host at Northampton, where, after a long fight, the victory fell to the earl of Salisbury, and the lords of his party, where the king's host was discomfited, and he taken in the field; afterwards many of his nobility were slain, amongst whom were the duke of Buckingham, the earl of Shrewsbury, the viscount Beaumont, the lord Tiremond, &c. After which victory they returned to London, and brought with them the king, keeping his estate; then sent for the duke of York out of Ireland. In the mean time they called a parliament, during which the duke of York came to Westminster, and lodged in the king's palace; upon which grew a rumour that Henry should be deposed, and the duke of York made king. One day, the duke came in to the parliament chamber, and in the presence of all the lords, sat down in the king's seat, and claimed the crown as his rightful inheritance. At which there was great murmuring amongst the lords, but after divers councils held, it was concluded, that Henry should continue king during his natural life, and after his death, his son, prince Edward, to be set apart, and the duke of York and his heirs to be kings, and he to be admitted protector of the king, and regent of the realm, and upon Saturday following, being the ninth of November, and 39th of king Henry, the duke was proclaimed through the city heir apparent to the crown, and his progeny after him.

And because queen Margaret, with her son, prince Edward, with the dukes of Somerset and Exeter were in the north, and would not come up at the king's sending. It was agreed by the lords, that the duke of York and earl of Salisbury, should rise an army, and fetch them up by force, and to that purpose sped them northward. Of which the queen with her people having notice, with a great power of northern men, met with them upon the 30th of December at a town called Wakefield, between whom was fought a bloody battle, in which was slain the duke of York, with his son, the earl of Rutland, Thomas Nevill, son to the earl of Salisbury, and the earl himself taken prisoner, whom she caused to be, with others, soon afterwards beheaded at Pontefract; then she made haste towards London, and the earl of Warwick, with the duke of Norfolk, who were appointed by York to attend the king, gathered an army, and upon Shrove-Tuesday, in the morning, gave her battle at St. Alban's, in which Warwick and Norfolk were chased, and the king again taken, and presented to the queen. Then, he, the same afternoon, made his son Edward knight, (who was eight years of age) with 30 persons more.

The queen having thus gotten the upper hand on her enemies, thought all things safe, expressing more pride than she before had done; in the height of which, news was brought her, that Edward, earl of March, eldest son to the duke of York, with the earl of Warwick, and others, with a great strength of Marchmen, were met at Cottiswald, in their way to London, wherefore the king and queen returned with their host northward, but before her departing from St. Alban's, she caused the lord Bonsfield, and others, to be belcaded; who had been taken in the former field. Then came the earls of March and Warwick to London, to whom resorted all the gentlemen of the east and south parts of England. Then was a council called of the lords spiritual and temporal, by whom, after much debating of the matter, it was concluded, that, forasmuch as king Henry, contrary to his honour and oath at the last parliament had done, and also that he was reputed unable and insufficient to govern the realm, he was, by their assents, discharged of all kingly honour and royalty, and by the authority of the said council, and agreement of the commons, Edward, eldest son to the duke of York, was elected king, who presently, with his army,

followed Henry, and met with his host at a place called Towton, or Sherbourne, and upon Palm-Sunday gave them battle, which was so cruelly fought, that there were slain £0,000, besides those of note and quality, as the earl of Northumberland, the earl of Westmorland, the lord Clifford, Sir Andrew Trollop, and others. In the same field was taken the earl of Devonshire, and sent to York, and there beheaded. But Henry, the queen, prince Edward, the duke of Somerset, the lord Ross, and others, fled into Scotland, and king Edward entered York, and there kept his easter.

Thus Henry lost the crown after he had reigned full 38 years, six months, and odd days, and the factious and ambitious queen forfeited all her right in the kingdom, verifying what was predicted :

“ But a young Lion hee at length shall tame,
And send her empty back from whence she came.
Much trouble shall be made about the Crowne,
And Kings soone raised, and as soon put down.”

This Edward, the fourth of that name, and son to Richard, duke of York, began his reign over the realm of England the fourth of March, in the year of grace (to reckon after the English computation) 1440, and upon Sunday being the feast day of St. Peter, was solemnly crowned at Westminster ; before which time he made 36 knights of the Bath, and soon afterwards he created his brother George, duke of Clarence, and his brother, Richard, duke of Gloucester. Of this king's reign thus runs the prophecy:

“ The fiercest Beare, who by his power alone,
Had planted the young Lion in his throne,
Is sent abroad a Lionesse to finde,
To be his phear: who having chang'd his mind,
Doats on a Badger, whom some terme a Gray,
And that shall cause much blood on Easter day.
The Beare, who th' exil'd Tygresse meetes in France,
Vowes the suppressed Lambe again t' advance.
And from the Coop where he hath long bin pent,
To raise him to his former government.
The Lion the Land flying, with a small
And slender traine, the ragged staffe swayes all.
But the Beares fiercenesse shall be soon allaid,
As one that is half conquered, halfe betraid;

Then shall the Lambe, whom he did late restore,
(Again coopt up) be slaughtered by the Boare."

After the king had visited the greatest part of the best towns and cities in the kingdom, in the second year of his reign, Margaret, late queen of England, with an army of French and Scotch, invaded the north part of England; which king Edward hearing, sped him thither. At whose approach, the queen with the rest affrighted, she disbanded her troops, and in a carick would have sailed into France, but such a tempest fell, that she was forced to take a fishing-boat, and landed at Berwick, and rode thence to the Scotch king, where news was brought her that the carveil, in which the greatest part of her treasure was, was swallowed up in the sea. And in his third year, the lord John of Montacute, brother to the earl of Warwick, having chief command in the north, was warned of king Henry's coming, with a great power, out of Scotland; against whom he assembled the northern men, and met with him about Hexham, who routed the Scotch army, and chased Henry so near, that he took certain of his train apparelled in blue velvet, garnished with two crowns, and fret with pearl and rich stones. He took also the duke of Somerset, the lord Hungerford, the lord Ross, and others; which duke, with the rest, were soon afterwards beheaded, some at Hexham, others at Newcastle. And the same year was king Henry taken in a wood, in the northern country, by one Cantlow, and presented unto king Edward, who forthwith sent him to the tower, where he remained for a long time afterwards.

Now Richard of Warwick, who, for his many victories and potency in the realm, was called Warwick the Great, was employed by the king into France, to treat a marriage between him and the lady Bona; which, whilst he was earnestly soliciting, the first of May, the king espoused Elizabeth, late wife to Sir John Gray, who was slain at Towton, in the great battle fought against Henry; which espousals were solemnized early in the morning at Grasten, near Stony Stratford, where were present none but the spouse, the spouses, the dutchess of Bedford, her mother, the priest, two gentle-women, and a young man who helped the priest at mass. Which marriage was for a time kept secret, but afterwards she was with great solemnity

crowned queen at Westminster. Which the earl of Warwick taking as a great affront, as being fooled in his embassy, and queen Margaret being then, with her son Edward, in the court of France, he, with the earl of Oxford, who had stood always against the Yorkists, secretly made promise to the queen to wait their time to remove king Edward, and place the diadem upon the head of king Henry, which makes good:

“ The Forest Beare, who by his power alone,
Had planted the young Lion in his throne,
Is sent abroad a Lionesse to finde,
To be his phere, who having chang’d his mind,
Doats on a Badger, whom some doe terme a Gray. &c.”

By the *Bear* is figured Warwick, who gave the bear and the ragged staff, who supported the cause of Edward, earl of March, till he had crowned him king; who being sent into France to negotiate a match between him and the lady Bona, whom he calls the *Lioness*; in the interim he married with a *Badger* or *Gray*, by which is intimated Elizabeth, the lady Gray, &c.

And now, about the eighth year, broke out the long dissembled hate between the king and the earl of Warwick, who confedered unto him the duke of Clarence, who had before married his daughter. In which season, by their instigations were divers rebellions in Lincolnshire, likewise in the North, by a captain who called himself *Robin of Ridisdale*; in Lincolnshire by the lord Wells, &c. Mean time the duke of Clarence, with the earl of Warwick and others, solicited Lewis XI. king of France, to assist them in the restoring of king Henry to his rightful inheritance, who gladly granted their request. Which lords after their departure from England, were proclaimed rebels and traitors; who in September, the 10th year of the king, landed at Dartmouth, making their proclamations in the name of Henry the sixth, to whom multitudes from all parts resorted, so that the king being in the north, with great danger passed the washes in Lincolnshire, and fled into Flanders; and Warwick brought the king from the tower, and conducted him in all state through London to Westminster, and once more set the crown upon his head.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-EIGHTH.

King Edward proclaimed usurper of the crown, and Glo- cester traitor.—His landing at Ravenspur.—The battle at Barnet.—The battle at Tewksbury.—King Henry murdered in the tower, and after him the duke of Cla- rence.—The death of Edward	the fourth.—Glocester takes upon him to be protector of the young king.—His tyranny, when protector.—He is pro- claimed king.—The murder of the two princes in the tower. —A prophecy of them before their deaths.
--	---

KING Henry being thus re-instated, there was daily waiting on the sea-coast for the landing of queen Margaret, and her son, prince Edward, and provision made against the re-entering of the kingdom by king Edward and his company, then was called a parliament, in which king Edward was proclaimed usurper of the crown, and his brother, duke of Gloucester, traitor, and both attained by virtue of the said parliament. Then the earl of Warwick rode into Kent, thinking to meet the queen at Dover, but the wind was so averse to her, that she lay from November to April, and all that while could not put to sea, by reason of which, the earl of Warwick's journey was disappointed.

In the beginning of April, Edward landed at Ravenspur, with a small company of Flemings, who in all could not make up the number of a 1000, and so drew towards York, making proclamation in the name of king Henry, that his coming was to no other intent, than to claim the inheritance of the dukedom of York, where the citizens

kept him out till he had taken a solemn oath, that he purposed no more than he spake; where, having refreshed him and his followers, he departed thence, and held his way towards London, and having paked by favour and fair words the lord marquis Montacute, who lay with an army to stop his way, and finding his strength hourly to increase, he then made proclamation in his own name, as king of England, and so held on his journey till he came to London, where he was gladly received into the city, and so made to Paul's and offered at the altar, and thence to the bishop's palace, where he found the king almost alone, for his servants and others had left him, and having put him under safe custody, he there rested himself till Easter eve.

When hearing of his brother Clarence, with the other lords coming with a strong host to St. Albans, he hasted thitherward, and laid that night in Barnet; in which season, the duke of Clarence, contrary to his oath made to the French king, renounced the title of king Henry, and came that night with his whole strength to his brother; at whose revolt the lords were somewhat abashed, but, by the earl of Oxford they were again comforted; by whose persuasion they marched forward to Barnet, whither he came leading the vaward, and on a plain near the town, pitched his field. Upon the morrow, being Easter day, both hosts met. Upon the one party were two kings present, Edward and Henry; upon the other, the duke of Exeter, the lord marquis Montacute, the earls of Warwick and Oxford, with other men of fame.

In their first encounter the earl of Oxford so manfully demeaned himself, that he bore over that part of the field which he set upon, insomuch that news came to London, that Edward's host was discomfited, and it might have happened if his men had kept their army, and not presently disordered themselves, by falling to rife and pillage; but after a long and cruel fight, king Edward obtained the victory; in which battle, of the lords' party, were slain, marquis Montacute, and his brother, the earl of Warwick; on the king's party, the lord barons; and of the commons, on both sides, 1,500. The same day, in the afternoon, came king Edward to London, and first offered at Paul's, and rode thence to his lodging at Westminster: and soon

afterwards was king Henry brought, riding in a long gown of blue velvet, and conveyed through Cheap unto Westminster, and thence to the Tower, where he remained all his life time afterwards. Thus we find by the premises,

“ The Beare, who th’ exil’d Tigresse meets in *France*,
Vowes the suppressed Lambe again to advance :
And from the Coop where he hath long bin pent
To raise him to his former government.”

All which happened according to former prediction, as also the sequel :

“ The Lion the land flying with a small
And slender train, the ragged Staffe aways all :
But the Bears fiercenesse shall be soon allaid,
As one that is halfe conquered, halfe betraid.”

That is, half conquered by the prowess of king Edward, and betrayed by his perfidious brother, the duke of Clarence. Edward, thus having repossessed the kingdom, provided against the landing of queen Margaret and her son, who, notwithstanding, with an army of Frenchmen entered the land as far as Tewksbury, where the king met her, and chaced her house, and slew many of them ; in which battle was taken her son Edward, and brought to the king, who, demanding some questions, and he not answering him to his mind, the king struck him over the face with his gauntlet, upon which he was dragged into a withdrawing room, and there slain by the duke of Gloucester. In the same year upon Ascension eve, was the corpse of Henry the sixth, late king, brought unreverently from the Tower through the high streets of the city unto Paul’s, and there left for that night ; and on the morrow, conveyed with bills and staves, and the like weapons, unto Chelsea, and there without any solemn ceremony interred, who was stabbed with a dagger, in the Tower, by the hand of the foresaid Richard, duke of Gloucester :

“ So that, the Lambe, the Beare did late restore,
(Again coopt up) was murdered by a Bore.”

For the *Beare* was the cognizance belonging to the said

duke. When king Edward had thus subdued his enemies, he sent over the miserable and distressed queen Margaret into her own country, whence she never returned to this kingdom afterwards. In the seventeenth year of the king, the duke of Clarence, his second brother, was, for some displeasure taken against him, committed to the tower, where he had not remained long, but he was secretly drowned in a butt of Malmsey, as it was commonly voiced, by the instigation of the duke of Gloucester. I let pass the rest of this king's reign, in which happened no great matter of remark or consequence; so that after his many victories (for he was never conquered in any battle) he governed the realm in great tranquillity and quietness, and expired the 11th of April, in the year of the incarnation of our Lord 1483, after he had reigned full 22 years, and as much as from the fourth of March to the 11th of April, whose corpse was conveyed to Windsor, and there with all due and solemn ceremony interred, leaving two sons, prince Edward, the eldest, and Richard, duke of York, the younger, with three daughters, Elizabeth, afterwards queen, Sicily, and Katharine.

Edward, the fifth of that name, and son to Edward the fourth, at 11 years of age began his reign the 11th of April, in the beginning of the year of our Lord God 1483. Of whom, and his uncle Richard, duke of Gloucester, the prediction followeth:

“ From the *Herculean* Lion lately sphear'd,
 And in his Orbe, to *Jove* himself indear'd,
 Shall shine two stars, without eclipse or cloud,
 But they, as to some sacred offering vow'd
 Shall perish on the Altar, ere they grow,
 To that full splendor, which the world they owe
 A bunch-back'd monster, who with teeth is born,
 The mockery of art, and natures scorn:
 Who from the wombe, preposterously's hurl'd,
 And with feet forward, thrust into the world,
 Shall from the lower earth on which he stood,
 Wade every step he mounts here deep in blood,
 He shall to th' height of all his hopes aspire,
 And cloth'd in state his ugly shape admire:
 But when he thinks himselfe most safe to stand,
 From Forreigne parts, a native Whelp shal land,

Who shall the long divided blood unite,
By joining of the Red Rose with the white."

Edward the fourth yielding his due to nature, the long concealed grudge between the king and the queen's allies began to vent itself, for the marquis Dorset, brother to the widowed queen, with others of her proximity, had then the guardianship of the young king, who, being in the marches of Wales, conveyed him towards London, to make provision for his coronation, but the duke of Gloucester, who intended otherwise, attended with a company of northern gentlemen, all in mourning, met with the king at Stony Stratford, and after a dissembled greeting between him and the marquis, discharged him of his office, and took upon himself the government of the king; and thence, accompanied with the duke of Buckingham, who was in great favour with the people, brought him with all honour towards London; whereof queen Elizabeth, mother to the king, hearing, and fearing the sequel, she, with her younger son, the duke of York, and her daughter Elizabeth, took sanctuary at Westminster. Mean time the king was royally met by the citizens of London, and through the city brought to the bishop of London's palace, and there lodged. .

Then the duke of Gloucester so wrought with Bouchier, arch-bishop of Canterbury, that he went with him to the queen, who, upon the arch-bishop's faith, and promise of his safety, delivered to them the duke of York. Then the duke caused the king and his brother to be removed to the tower, and the duke lodged himself in Crosby house, in Bishop's-gate street, and great preparation was made for the young king's coronation. In which time, the duke of Gloucester being made protector, caused Sir Anthony Woodville, lord Scales, the queen's brother, the lord Richard, the queen's son, Sir Richard Hawt and Sir Thomas, to be beheaded at Pontefract, more out of his own tyranny than any trespass by them committed. Next, to further his aspiring purpose, he covertly sounded the hearts of the nobility, how they stood affected, and to that end called many councils; and amongst others, he found the lord Hastings, then lord chamberlain, constant to the supporture of king Edward the fourth's issue.

Upon the 13th of June, being in the council chamber, at the Tower, with the duke of Buckingham, the earl of Derby, the lord Hastings, and others, he caused an outcry of treason to be made in the next room, at which the lords were amerced; and he himself went to the door, and received such persons in as he had before appointed, who laid hand upon the lord Hastings; in which stirring, the earl of Derby was hurt in the face, and for a while committed to safe custody, but the lord chamberlain in all haste was led to the hill within the Tower, and without judgement, or long confession, his head laid upon a log, and cut off by the executioner. After which cruelty thus done, all such as he suspected would oppose him in his claim to the crown, he put in hold; whereof the archbishop of York, and the bishop of Ely were two, but the earl of Derby, for fear his son, lord Strange, should have raised the Cheshire and Lancashire men, he set at liberty to go where he pleased.

Upon the Sunday following, himself and the duke of Buckingham being present, with others of the nobility, doctor Ralph Shaa, in the time of his sermon, laboured to prove the children of Edward the fourth illegitimate, and not right heirs to the crown, preferring the title of the protector. At whom was flung a dagger, which stuck in the post close by his face, but none knew, or at least would acknowledge from whence it came, which doctor, who before had a great opinion of learning, having by this sermon lost all his reputation, died (as some say distracted) not many days afterwards.

Upon the Tuesday following, the commons of the city were assembled at Guildhall, whither was sent by the protector the duke of Buckingham, with other lords, by whom was rehearsed to the mayor and the rest, what title the lord protector had to the crown before his nephews, which, in an excellent oration, was delivered by the duke of Buckingham, whom they applauded for the manner, but no way approved the matter of his speech, for it took no effect amongst them, all departing silent, and keeping their thoughts to themselves. Then the Tuesday succeeding, being the 20th day of June, the protector, of himself, took upon him, as king and governor of the realm, and rode in great state to Westminster, and in the

great hall, placing himself in the seat royal with the duke of Norfolk, who was before lord Howard on the right hand, and the duke of Suffolk on the left; after the royal oath taken, he called before him the judges, and giving them a long exhortation for the executing of his laws, administering justice, with other ceremonies being done, he was conveyed to the king's palace, and there lodged, and upon Friday, being the 22nd of June, throughout the city of London, he was proclaimed king of England, by the name of Richard the third.

Yet thought he himself in no security whilst his two nephews, in the tower were living, concerning whose death (as some have reported) he tasted the duke of Buckingham, but finding him averse to his purpose, (as in his noble spirit abhorring and act so unnatural and execrable) he afterwards long sought all advantages how to insidiate his life, though he had been the only means to rise him to that height of sovereignty, and knowing that it was in vain to work any noble or generous minds to such a bloody and inhumane purpose, he at length observed a melancholy and discontented gentleman, called James Tirrell, to whom some have given the title of a knight, and him he moulded to his own ends; who, having the keys of the princes' lodgings delivered unto him, he hired two bloody ruffians, who, when they were fast asleep, fell upon them, and smothered them in their beds, but in what place their bodies were buried is uncertain; and thus

“ From the *Herculean* Lion lately sphear'd,
And in his Orbe, to *Jove* himself indear'd,
Two luminous stars without eclipse or cloud,
As had they been unto some offering vow'd,
Are perisht on the Altar, ere they grow,
To that full splendor, which the world they owe.”

By the *Herculean* or *Cleomæan* Lion, is figured the victorious and invincible king Edward the fourth, lately sphear'd, that is, by death lately translated above the spheres, to the celestial orb, heaven, and by two shining stars, Edward the fifth, and Richard duke of York, &c. The rest needeth no comment.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER TWENTY-NINTH.

Dissention betwixt the king and the duke of Buckingham. —Richard plotteth the life of Richmond.—Buckingham taketh arms against the king, and is beheaded.—Bannister perfidious to his lord.—Queen	Anne's policy and tyranny.— Richmond landeth at Milford Haven.—The battle at Bosworth.— The death of Richard. —Richmond made king.—A prophecy of his reign, &c.
---	--

RICHARD, the third of that name, son to the duke of York, and youngest brother to Edward the fourth, late king, began his dominion over the realm of England the 20th of June, in the year of the incarnation of our lord 1483, with whose reign I proceed. Some say the noble duke of Buckingham came to demand of him the earl of Hereford's land promised him before he was king, which he not only denied him, but gave him rough and harsh language, which the duke, in regard of his former courtesies done unto him; and not only knowing his ingratitude, but with all his malicious spleen against any that should in the least oppose him in his bloody and most cruel designs, he therefore retired himself from court, and after some discourse held with bishop Morton, who was the king's prisoner, and in his custody, he was brought to have intelligence from the queen and the countess of Derby, by whose instigation he afterwards laboured to bring in Henry Richmond, then a banished man in the court of the duke of Britain, but from the house of Lancaster, the next heir to the crown.

Whilst these things were in secret agitation, the king laboured by all means possible, of friends, gifts, promises,

and the like, to take away the life of the earl, whose projects and pursuits (too long here to rehearse) he miraculously escaped, only comforted by some noble Englishmen, some compulsively banished, others voluntarily exiling themselves, all partners in one and the same calamity. In which interim, the duke of Buckingham's intent of innovation (some think by his perfidious servant, Banister) was discovered to the king, therefore, for his own security, he was forced to take arms, but many of his friends failing, and the indisposition of the weather warring against him, (for by reason of the land floods, he could not join his forces together) he therefore was compelled to dissolve his army, and suffer every man to shift for his best safety; himself retiring to the house of his secretary and servant Banister; who, in hope of a 1000 pounds reward to him that could bring forth the duke, (promised only, but never paid) betrayed him to the king, who caused him to be had to Salisbury, and on a scaffold in the market-place, to have his head cut off; and such was the tragical end of that honourable person.

Of this Banister, and how his falseness to his lord was punished in him and his posterity, much hath been spoken, as that his wife died distracted, his son was found strangled with a cord, his daughter found drowned in a shallow puddle of water, and he suffered on the gallows for robbery; and that since that day, even to this age, none of that house and family, but have some or other of the name been troubled with the falling-sickness: a good caveat for all corrupt and perfidious servants.

King Richard, though he had removed all, or most of his potent enemies, Buckingham, the queen's kindred, and others, yet, knowing he was hated for his many murders, especially for the two princes in the tower, and that he was, moreover, suspected for causing queen Anne, his wife, to be poisoned, (who died suddenly) in hope to have married the lady Elizabeth, daughter to the queen dowager, who, after the death of her two brothers, was immediate heir to the crown. He, to stop the mouths of the multitude, and as far as might be to insinuate himself into the hearts of the commons, made many good and profitable laws to the benefit of the common-wealth, which are yet

called the wholesome laws of the kingdom; but this he did, not that he so much loved their good, but that he so well affected his own safety, and because he was loath to leave the world without some worthy character behind him. He strived to be reputed the best of kings, though he knew himself to be the worst of men.

Amongst other pieces of his justice, it was laid to the charge of one William Collingborn, a gentleman, that he was an author of a libel, the effect whereof was this :

*The Cat, the Rat, and Lovell the Dog,
Rule all England under an Hog.*

By the *Cat* meaning Catesby, by the *Rat*, Ratcliffe, and by *Lovell the Dog*, the lord Lovell, all whom were court favourites, and ruled the land under the king, who bore the white Boar for his cognizance. For which rhyme, and other matters pretended against him, he was arraigned, convicted, and condemned, and afterwards suffered on a new pair of gallows on the Tower-hill, where he was no sooner cast off the ladder, but cut down, and his bowels ripped out of his belly, and thrown into the fire, and lived till the bloody hangman thrust his hand into the bulk of his body to grope for his heart, and even then he was heard to say aloud, O Lord Jesus! yet more trouble, and so died, to the great compassion of many people.

During which passages, Henry, earl of Richmond, lord marquis Dorset, the queen's brother, and Sir James Blont, then keeper of the castle of Guines, who brought with him John, the brave and valiant earl of Oxford, who had been kept prisoner in that castle ever since the field fought at Barnet. These, with others of their noble friends, with a small company of English, French, and Britains, landed in Milford Haven, in the month of August. Which earl no sooner sat his feet on shore, but he incontinently kneeling upon the earth, with a sober and devout countenance, began the psalm, *Indica me domine, & discerne causam meam*, &c. when he had finished and kissed the ground, he rose up, and commanded such as were about him, boldly, and in the name of God to set forward. Of whose landing the king hearing, he set it light, making

no haste to oppose them, as despising them in regard of their small number.

But when the arrival and return of this prince was rumoured abroad through the land, many drew unto him, as well sanctuary men as others, so that his army greatly increased; which the king hearing, he then gathered a strong host, and so sped him, that upon the 22nd of the same month, August, and the beginning of the third year of his reign, he met with prince Henry near a village called Bosworth, besides Leicester, where, betwixt them was fought a sharp and cruel battle for the time, it would have been more bloody if the king's party had been fast and constant to him; for some left him, and fled to his enemy, and others stood, hovering as neuters, to see to whom the victory would fall, of which the lord Stanley, father-in-law to the earl of Richmond, with a strong band of Cheshire and Lancashire men was chief.

Some were of opinion that the king lost the battle by his own fool-hardiness and head-strong spleen; for when the fight was begun, and he mounted on a white steed, was in the centre of his army, to give direction for the field upon any occasion, upon the sudden, he called to know what part of the adverse ground Richmond then maintained; who being pointed to the place, suddenly, without any directions left, or substitute to command in his place, sprung out of his host, and made thither, and calling aloud for Richmond, was known by his guard; who, seeking to press through them, wounding some, and killing others, was himself, with his horse, broached upon their halberts. The news of the king's death being blown abroad, his army stood at a stand, only defending themselves, but not offending any, insomuch that the glory of the day fell to the earl of Richmond and his partisans. Upon the king's party were slain John, duke of Norfolk, (before his late creation lord Howard) with Brakenbury, lieutenant of the Tower, but no other of fame or quality; where was taken the earl of Surrey, son to the duke of Norfolk, who was sent to the Tower, and there remained prisoner a long time afterwards.

Then was the body of king Richard despoiled of his arms, and stripped naked, and then disgracefully cast

behind a man riding upon a lean jade, (the body being almost wholly covered with mire and dirt) and so unreverently carried to the Friars at Leicester, where, after a season he had laid openly that all men might behold him, with little reverence, and less mourning, he was cast aside in an obscure grave, and there buried, when he had reigned, or rather had usurped the crown, by the space of two years, two months, and two days.

It is said of this prince, that he came into the world with his feet forward, which being taunted with (being a youth) by a young nobleman, and one of his peers, he made answer, It is true, and was it not time for me to make haste into the world, there being such a bustling and trouble in the land; which he seemed to allude unto those times when his father laid claim to the crown. He was born also with teeth in his head, which was somewhat prodigious to, and crook-backed he was, but whether so born, or that it came to him by any sinister accident, I am altogether ignorant; only of this I am sure, that all these, with the process of his bloody practices, punctually comply with the prophecy, which saith :

“ A bunch-back'd monster, who with teeth is born,
The mockery of art, and natures scorn,
Who from the wombe, preposterously is hurld,
And with feet forward, thrust into the world,
Shall from the lower earth on which he stood,
Wade every step he mounts knee deep in bloud,
He shall to th' height of all his hopes aspire,
And cloth'd in state his ugly shape admire :
But when he thinks himself most safe to stand,
From forreigne parts, a native Whelp shall land.”

After the battle thus won, prince Henry was received as king, and there instantly so proclaimed, who thence hasted to London, so that upon the 28th of August, he was by the mayor and citizens met in good array at Harnsey park, and thence conveyed through the city, and lodged in the bishop of London's palace for a time, and then he removed to Westminster.

This Henry, the seventh of that name, son to the earl of Richmond, began his dominion over the realm of England the 22nd of August, in the year of grace 1485, and the 30th

day of October following, at Westminster, was crowned; and in the second year of his reign, he espoused Elizabeth, the eldest daughter to king Edward the fourth, who, the year afterwards, upon St. Katherine's day, was crowned at Westminster. And this Henry is that *native Lion's Whelp* before spoken of:

"Who shall the long divided blood unite,
By joyning of the Red Rose with the white."

For by this marriage the long divided houses of York, who gave the white, and Lancaster, who gave the red rose, were happily combined, and from that even to this present day, never parted or sundered. Of him it was also thus predicted:

"The spirit that was merely Saturnine,
Being suppress't upon the land shall shine.
Planets of a more glad aspect, and make
Peace from their Orbs, fixt in the Zodiacke:
Yet from the cold Septentrion *Mars* shall threat
And warme their frigid pulses with his heat.
And *Mercury* shall (though it may seem rare)
Consult with *Cassiopeia* in her Chaire,
To fashion strange impostures: but warres god
By sword, nor *Hermes* with his charming rod
Shall ought prevaile: where power with Princes meete,
And when Religion shall Devotion greet,
Where all these foure at once predominant are,
Vaine are the attempts of stratagem or warre;
But he who of the former is possest,
Shall be abroad renowned, and at home blest.
Fame afarre off his glorious name shall tell,
And *Plutus* (near hand) make his Coffers swell."

By the *Saturnine spirit*, is intended the bloody and malicious condition of Richard the third, which was now suppressed by death; for as Saturn was said to devour his own children, so he hungered and thirsted after the blood of his own brother and nephews, and therefore, not altogether improperly alluded. The rest you shall find made apparent in the sequel.

This religious and wise king being thus peaceably installed in the throne, his old inveterate enemy the dutchess of

Burgundy, raised a new impostor, whom she called Richard, duke of York, the younger brother to Edward the fifth. But hearing, the king intended to make away young Warwick, who was son to the duke of Clarence, and then prisoner in the Tower, they changed his name from York to Warwick, who was no other than the son of a baker. This youth she put to the tutoring of a priest, who so well improved him, that he could now to the life personate a prince; and for no less he was received first into Ireland, to whom the earl of Lincoln came, who also made a pretended right to the crown. To whose aid the dutchess sent 2,000 Almains, under the command of one Martin Swart, an old soldier, and of approved discipline; these, with the lord Lovell and Kildare, landed in Lancashire, and made towards York, with whom the king met at a place called Stoak. In which fight, the army of the rebels was routed, Swart and Lincoln slain, and the lord Lovell, thinking to swim the Trent, was drowned, and Simnel, the mock king taken; whom the king would not put to death, but made him a turn-broach in his kitchen, where he continued long afterwards.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRTIETH.

The earl of Northumberland slain by the commons.—The Machiavelian plot of the dutchess of Burgundy to disturb the peace of king Henry.—Perkin Warbeck, her creature.—He is nobly married in Scotland, and taken for the duke of	York.—The death of lord Stanley and others.—Divers insurrections about Perkin.—His death, with that of the young earl of Warwick.—The death of the king.—A prophecy of the reign of Henry the eighth.
---	---

IN the fourth year of this king's reign, the earl of Northumberland sent to gather some taxes, which were to be levied in the north, was slain by the commons, who still favoured the party of the Yorkists. And further, to countenance the act, they made an insurrection, and choosed for their captains, one Chambers, and another Egremond; to suppress whom was sent the noble and valiant earl of Surrey, who having discomfited their army, and took Chambers, with divers others of the chief rebels, who were led to York, and there executed as traitors; But Egremond fled the field, and escaped to the dutchess of Burgundy, whose court was a sanctuary for all malecontents and fugitives.

“ Thus from the cold Septentrion Mars did threat,
And warm their frigid pulses with his heat.”

This subtle Mercurialist knowing how wisely and politically the king had borne him between the emperor and the king of France, (who had been at mortal enmity about

the marriage of the young dutchess of Britain, she being first contracted by a proxy to the old emperor, but from him divorced before enjoyed, and married to the youthful French king) she I say, observing his provident and cautelous proceeding in all things for the security of his state and kingdom, with a false stamp, coined a new duke of York, a stripling, called Perkin Warbeck, who being christened by Edward the fourth, it might be suspected that (being, as he was, warlike, so also much addicted to the love of women) by too much familiarity with the mother, the child might have some of the Yorkist's blood in him, Edward being both father and god-father. But so or no, most sure it was that the dutchess exposed him to the world for the young duke of York, who was spared from death, which his brother suffered in the tower, (for so it was given out.)

But after she had fully tutored and instructed him to take upon him the majesty and deportment of a prince, least he should be found to be her creature, she cunningly sent him from her court into Ireland, where he was received for no less than he named himself. Thence king Charles sent for him into France, where he had princely entertainment and service, suiting with his stile; but a peace being concluded between England and France, finding no safety there, he came as a distressed stranger to shelter himself under the wings of the dutchess of Burgundy, whom she (cunningly) at first looked upon as strangely, till she had questioned him about all things, in which she had before instructed him, and then, as a prince whose injuries were much to be pitied, she received him to her protection.

The news of a surviving duke of York was greedily swallowed by the discontented commons of England. The chief of note who were drawn to this belief, were the lords Fitswater, Mountfort, and Thwaytes, with the lord Stanley, who was father-in-law to the king, and then lord chamberlain, Ratcliffe, and others. But Henry then understanding the danger likely to ensue, first made it manifest to the world, how both the princes were altogether murdered, with the manner of their deaths, by which he did infallibly evince that he could not be York. Then the politic king thought there was no surer way to disable the impos-

tor's claim, than by taking away his abettors; and whilst these things were thus in agitation, Sir Robert Clifford, who had undermined all the dutchess's proceedings, came over to the king, and disclosed them unto him, who challenged the lord Stanley of treason, as to be a prime encourager of Perkin's faction. For which, the king, notwithstanding the near affinity, as the name of father and son interchanged between them, and forgetting, also, that he was the prime man who set the crown upon his head, he caused him the 15th of February following, to be beheaded upon a scaffold upon Tower-hill, not without great aspersion of ingratitude. Which severity of justice was also executed upon Mountford and Stafford.

Then Perkin, who had wintered with the dutchess, in the Spring made an attempt for England; his forces subsisting merely of male-contents, bankrupts, and fugitives; and hearing the king was in the north, landed to the number of 120, and odd, in Kent; thinking they would have adhered to his faction; but he himself kept a ship-board. But the Kentish men, apprehending the danger of a rebellion, seeing no more would come on shore, set upon them whom they found, slew some, and took the rest prisoners; all which were put to death, and not one amongst them spared. Thence he sailed to Flanders, to fetch more aid, and from thence to Ireland, where he found small comfort, afterwards to Scotland, (whose arrival there, being by commendatory letters prepared by Charles, the French king) where he was royally entertained. And to the Scotch king, and his nobility, he delivered so smooth and passionate a tale, (before dictated by the dutchess) that they took, not only great commiseration of his former disasters, but promised withal, not only to rise, but to establish him in the height at which he aimed; causing him to be espoused to a beautiful virgin, the lady Gordon. And afterwards, with a potent army, entered Northumberland, making proclamation in the name of Richard, duke of York, with sugared promises of several enfranchisements and immunities to the commons, if they would acknowledge him their king and sovereign; all which, nothing prevailed with the people, so that king James, hearing of Henry's marching towards him with a puissant host, he retreated with his army into his country.

After which, there was a marriage concluded between king James and the lady Margaret, the eldest daughter to king Henry, from whom our king James, of blessed memory descended, as immediate and undoubted heir to the crown of England. Which match was consummate in the seventh year of king Henry. And in the same year, landed at Plymouth, Katharine, daughter to the king of Spain, who, upon St. Erkenwald's day, was espoused to prince Arthur, eldest son to the king; who, in April following, expired in the town of Ludlow. The year after, began the famous and most glorious work of the king's chapel at Westminster; and upon the 11th of February, died queen Elizabeth, wife to king Henry, in the Tower, lying then in child-bed, &c.

There was also a commotion in Devonshire and Cornwall about the collection of 120,000 pounds, which the king had demanded in parliament. The first raisers thereof were a lawyer and a black-smith; who coming as far as Wells, the lord Audley took upon him to be their general. Who, passing through Kent, came as far as Blackheath, in the sight of London, but were then encountered by the king's forces. Lord Audley was taken and beheaded, the lawyer and smith drawn, hanged, and quartered; the rest by the king pardoned.

But after that fortunate match between the Scotch king and the lady Margaret, there was no longer residence there for Perkin, who exposed him to his further fortune: yet would not his fair bride, Katherine Gordon, leave him, though he was forced to forsake the land, but associate him into Ireland. From whence he was presently sent for by a new company of Cornish and Devonshire rebels, who began first to assemble themselves at a town called Bodmin, in Cornwall. To whom Perkin was no sooner come, but they made him their captain and prince, who called himself no more Richard, duke of York, but Richard, king of England; under which title, they marched as far as Exeter, and laid siege to the city, making against it many violent assaults. To rescue which, and to remove the siege, the king came with a strong army; at whose approach, the multitude submitted themselves, for their captain, Perkin, had forsook them, and took sanctuary at Bewdley, and of the king's free grace were pardoned.

King Henry, loath to violate the privilege of sanctuary, would not take him thence per force, but, upon promise of life he yielded himself to the king, who, after he had confessed unto him all the manner of his juggling, and from whence it came, brought him up with him towards London, where, by the way, he was made a scorn and mockery of the people. Upon the 28th of November, he was committed to the Tower, and afterwards set at large, and was at free liberty in the court; from whence he made a second escape, and being again taken, his life was again pardoned, and he sent to the Tower.

But for that delicate lady, Katherine Gordon, the wife of this counterfeit, his majesty much commiserating that the nobleness of her blood should be so much abused, he gave unto her the means of a marchioness, a yearly revenue answerable to so noble a birth and rare a beauty.

Whilst the dutchess of Burgundy's creature was thus in the Tower, he plotted with the young earl of Warwick, who had been there a prisoner from his infancy; who had so far prevailed with the lieutenant's servants, that upon promise of reward, they had plotted, by killing of their master, to make themselves keepers of the keys, and set the two prisoners at liberty. Which plot being discovered before it came to proof, upon the 16th of November, in Whitehall, at Westminster, for the former predictory practice were arraigned Perkin Warbeck, and three others; and being convicted of capital treason, Perkin, and one John Awter, were soon afterwards hanged at Tyburn. And soon afterwards, the young earl of Warwick, son to the duke of Clarence, was beheaded at Tower-hill; and the same day one Blewet, and another Astwood, executed at Tyburn.

Thus you see how the dutchess of Burgundy's plots were confounded in the death of this Perkin. Concerning whom it was thus long before predicted :

“ That *Mercury* should (though it might seeme rare)
Consult with *Cassiopeia* in her Chair,
To fashion new impostures,” &c.

And (then the former discoursed of) never were any

that carried such countenance to the deluding of so many foreign princes. The prophet in *Cassiopeia*, (with whom *Mercury* consulted) meaning the factious dutchess, who by all her endeavours studied to disturb the peace of that prudent prince, king Henry, who was able to over-match her in policy, and therefore, Merlin foreseeing her future juggling, by impostures and adulteration, yet seeming heirs to the crown; as also his sundry troubles in the north raised by the Scotch, and qualified again by the valour of the noble earl of Surry, the king's lieutenant, and others. The sequel is verified.

“—————But warres god,
By sword: nor *Hermes* by his charming rod
Shall ought prevail, where power and prudence meet,
And when Religion shall devotion greet.
Where all these four, at once predominant are
Vain are th' attempts of stratagem or warre,
But he who of the former is possesser,
Shall be abroad renown'd, and at home blest.”

This *Cassiopeia*, was the daughter of *Æolus*, the wife of *Cepheus*, and mother of *Andromeda*, who, in her prime of beauty, comparing with the *Nereides*, was afterwards translated amongst the stars; in whom the prophet allegorically comprehends the Burgundian dutchess. I am loath to enter into a further discourse of the passages in this king's reign, being excellently and judicially expressed by Sir Francis Bacon, lord chancellor, in prose; and in an accurate and ingenious poem by Mr. Charles Allein. Briefly, this wise and worthy prince expired the Saturday before St. George's day, being the 21st of April, at his manor of Richmond, when he had reigned 23 years and eight months, wanting but one day. In whose praise no pen can be too prodigal; who studied rather to end his wars by policy, than by the effusion of Christian blood; insomuch that all his neighbouring princes laboured to have with him peace and alliance; and because in all temporal polices he far exceeded all Christian princes in his time reigning. Three sundry popes, Alexander the sixth, Pius the third, and Julius the second, every one of them, during the time they held their ecclesiastical sovereignty, by the unanimous consent of their spiritual councils, admitted him for a chief defender of the church,

above all others. And for a confirmation of the same, sent to him by three several famous ambassadors, three rich swords, and three caps of maintenance; who, notwithstanding his many costly buildings, and infinite expences, as well in foreign parts, as to pacify the domestic tumults and seditions in his own kingdom, left behind him a mighty magazine of treasure, with riches innumerable, complying with the prophecy :

“ Fame afar off his glorious acts shall tell,
And *Plutus* (neere hand) make his coffers swell.”

Him succeeded his sole son (after the decease of prince Arthur) Henry, the eighth of that name, the true and rightfull inheritor to the two crowns of England and France. Who began his sovereignty of this realm the 22nd of April, in the year of the incarnation of our blessed Lord and Saviour 1509, and was crowned at Westminster, on the day of the feast of St. John the Baptist, or Decollations. This royal prince was joyfully received as the successor of so worthy a prince as his father, who was both famous and fortunate, from the beginning to the end of his reign. Of whom it was thus predicted :

“ Rouze him shall this fierce Lion in his den,
Be favoured of the gods, and fear'd of men,
Gallia shall quake, *Albania* stand in aw,
And *Cæsars* stoop, when he but shews his paw.
To league with him, *Hesperia* shall take pride,
Those whom the *Africke Moores* half black had dyde,
He, by his art, shall fashion Musicall grounds
From th' untun'd Harp, that discords only sounds,
And further, from the sceptarchy of Hills,
That *Europe* awes, and triple-crown, that fils
The Christian world with terror: take the power
And bring it home unto his *British* bower :
Blunting the horns of all the *Bashan* Buls,
And rooting from the Land the razord skuls:
O're *Glastenbury*, for the eye that's dim,
May at that day behold a Whiting swim.
But none without their faults since *Adam's* fal:
He shall have many vertues, but not all.
Who never spares, (for who can frailty trust?)
Man in his rage, or woman in his lust.”

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRTY-FIRST.

Prince Henry married to his brother's wife.—He winneth Touraine and Tournay in France.—Flodden-field, with the famous victory against the Scots.—Charles Brandon, duke of Suffolk, marrieth the French queen, the king's sister.—The emperor, Charles the fifth, made knight of the Garter.—Peace with	France.—Both kings defy the emperor.—The death of cardinal Woolsey.—Henry divorced from his first wife.—Marrieth the lady Anne Bullen.—Her death.—He marrieth the lady Jane Seymour.—He revolteth from Rome.—The earl of Hartsford's victories in Scotland.—Boulogne besieged and won.
--	--

HENRY the seventh, who was loath to part with the dowry of the Spanish princess, wrought so by a dispensation from the pope, that his son, prince Henry, was married to the widow of his own brother, prince Arthur, deceased; who, coming to the crown, (some say by the counsel of his father on his death-bed) put to death Empson and Dudley, who had gathered a great mass of money into the king's treasury, by exacting and extorting from the commons, of whom they were extremely hated. For which piece of justice, he won the hearts of the people; and soon afterwards was born at Richmond, upon New-year's day, prince Henry, the king's son, who died upon St. Matthew's day the year following. And soon afterwards, was the lord Dacres sent into Spain, to aid the king against the Moors; and Sir Edward Poynings, into Gelderland, to aid the prince of Castile. And in his fourth year, the king in person invaded France, and took Touraine and Tournay,

having discomfited the French host at a place called Blewmy. During which time, the Scotch king raised against England an 100,000 men, whom the earl of Surry, the king's lieutenant, encountered at a place called Flodden. In which battle the king himself was slain, with eight bishops, and 11 earls; besides, of the common soldiers innumerable. For which service by him done, king Henry created him duke of Norfolk, and his son, earl of Surry.

In his sixth year, a peace was concluded between England and France; and in his seventh year, the French king espoused the lady Mary, the king's sister, in the month of June, and died upon New-year's day next ensuing; wherefore the king sent for her again, by Charles Brandon, duke of Suffolk. In February was born the lady Mary, the king's daughter, at Greenwich; and in April, the French queen came over into England, and was married to the foresaid duke of Suffolk. In which year, also, Margaret, queen of Scots, the king's sister, fled into England, and lay at a place called Hare-bottle, where she was delivered of a daughter called Margaret, and came to London in May, and tarried there a whole year; and upon the eighth of May following, returned again into her country.

In October, the tenth year of the king, the admiral of France came into England, and Tournay was again delivered to the French king, whom afterwards Henry met between Arde and Guines, where were great triumphs. Afterwards, there was a solemn meeting between the emperor, and Charles the fifth and the king of England, who went with him to Graveling, and afterwards he went to Calais with the king, where he was royally entertained and feasted, who in the 15th year of the king, the sixth of June, was honourably received into the city of London, by the lord mayor, the aldermen, and the commonalty, who from London went to meet the king at Windsor, where he was made knight of the garter; which was done with great solemnity; and then, from Southampton he sailed into Spain. Soon afterwards, Christian, king of Denmark, came into England, and had royal entertainment from the king.

During these passages, the earl of Surry, lord admiral, who before had appeased the tumults and manifold com-

bustions stirred up in Ireland, burnt divers towns in Britain and Picardy; and the duke of Suffolk invaded France with 10,000 men, and passing the river Some, spoiled many towns and villages, and returned without opposition. And the duke of Albany in Scotland, who before had made a vain attempt against England, besieged the castle of Wark, but hearing of the earl of Surry's marching towards him, he fled into his country.

In the 18th year of the king, cardinal Woolsey went over into France, pompously attended; where he concluded a league between the king of England and the French king, who both defied the emperor, and sent an army into Italy, to make war against him, and upon the 19th of October the great master of France, came over into England, to ratify the league made between the two kings. All which verify that part of the prediction :

“Rouze him shall this fierce Lion in his den,
Be favoured of the gods, and fear'd of men,
Gallia shall quake, *Albania* stand in awe,
And *Cæsars* stoop, when he but shews his paw.
To league with him, *Hesperia* shall take pride,
Those, whom the *Africke Moores* halfe blacke have
dyde.”

By *Albania*, is meant Scotland, so called from *Albanactus*, the second son of Brute, the first king thereof; and by *Hesperia*, Spain, who after the *African Moors* had long possessed the greatest part of the land, by interchangeable marriages between them and the natives. The Spaniards are black and tawny even to this day.

In the 21st year, the king having cast his eye upon a new mistress. Pretending a matter of conscience, he began to consider with himself, that he had long incestuously lived with his brother's wife; for which cause, the legates of Rome met with the king at Blackfriars, about the lawfulness or unlawfulness of that marriage. Amongst the rest, cardinal Woolsey, standing stiff against a divorce, in October following, was discharged of his chancellorship. And presently afterwards was a peace concluded between the emperor and the king; and in the year afterwards the great cardinal, who had been arrested of high treason,

and by that means forfeited his infinite estate to the king, and died on St. Andrew's day, in a poor friary, not without suspicion of poison.

Afterwards, by a legal course, and due process of law, the king was divorced from the lady Katherine, his brother's wife, and soon afterwards married to the lady Anne Bullen, who, upon Whitsunday, was crowned queen; and on Midsummer day following, died the French queen Mary, the king's sister, and wife to Charles Brandon, duke of Suffolk. And, on the eve of the nativity of the blessed virgin following, was born the lady Elizabeth, at Greenwich; in which year (as an happy presage of her future love unto the gospel) it was enacted that no man should sue any appeal to Rome.

In January, the 27th year of the king, died the lady Katherine, princess dowager, and late wife to the king. And, in the 28th of his reign, queen Anne Bullen, with her brother, the lord Rochford, Norris, Weston, Breerton, and Marks, were attainted of high treason, and beheaded. And soon afterwards, the king married the lady Jane Seymour. In the year 1537, on St. Edward's eve, in June, prince Edward was born at Hampton court; and the 23rd of October following, died queen Jane, and lieth buried at Windsor. Then, was the bishop of Rome, with all his usurped power, quite abolished out of the realm, and the king assumed to himself the supremacy over the church in England and Ireland; to whom were granted the first-fruits, (before paid to the pope) with the tenths of all spiritual possessions.

For denying of whose supremacy, that famous and learned gentleman, Sir Thomas Moore, lord chancellor of England, with the bishop of Rochester, were beheaded; and presently afterwards, three monks of the Charterhouse, for the same offence. Then, followed the dissolution of all the abbeyes, friaries, and nunneries, through the whole realm, when the mass, and all Romish superstition were forbidden; and divers images that had engines to make their eyes open and shut, and their other limbs to move and stir, were broken to pieces and defaced, and all friars, monks, canons, and nuns were forced to change their

habits, and forsake their cloisters. A proclamation also was made, which hath been since established as a law, that the English bible should be read in every church throughout the realm; and that no holydays should be solemnized and observed, except our Ladydays, the Apostles, the Evangelists, St. George, and St. Mary Magdalen; and that St. Mark's eve, and St. Lawrence's eve, should not be kept as fasting days. And that children should not go, decked and garnished (as they do on feasting days) upon St. Nicholas, St. Katherine, St. Clement's, and the holy Innocents, and the like. All which comply with the prophecy :

“——— He from the septarchy of Hills,
That *Europe* awes, and triple crown, that fills
The Christian world with terror, takes the power
And brings it home into his *British* bower :
Blunting the horns of all the *Bashan* Bulls,
And rooting from the Land the razord skulls.”

By the *Septarchy of hills*, meaning the seven hills on which the city of Rome standeth; and further, taking on himself to be the supreme head of the church within his own dominions; he takes away that power from the popes' triple-crown, to which all the Christian kingdoms else were in vassallage. By *blunting the horns of the Bashan bulls*, meaning the pope's writs of excommunications, interdictions, anathemas, or cursings, which are called his bulls, the terror whereof he now vilifies and sets at nought. By *rooting the razord skulls from the land*, is meant the suppression of friars and monks, who had the upper part of their heads always shaven, &c. Many were those who suffered for denying the supremacy, as friar Forrest, who was hanged and burnt in Smithfield; with the image of Darvell Gathren, in Wales. And for the same offence suffered the abbots of Reading, of Colchester, and the great rich abbot of Glastonbury, whose name was Whiting, whom the king commanded to be hanged upon the top of the Tower, an eminent place, and visible afar, for which way soever a man travels towards that town, it might be seen 20 miles distant. Now it seemed a thing impossible, that the sea, with its greatest inundation should swell so high, that any fish should float oyer or upon it;

yet so saith the prophecy, and all such are mystically delivered, parabolically, or in allegorical figures :

“ O’re *Glastenbury*, for the eye thats dim,
May at that day behold a Whiting swim.”

The place being so conspicuous and apparent, that one with half an eye might see his body waving between the two elements of earth and air.

After divers rebellions in Ireland, for which the earl of Kildare was committed, and died a natural death during his imprisonment in the Tower; and that his son made a new insurrection, and slew the bishop of Develin; and that for another rebellion, Thomas Fitzgarret with five of his uncles were drawn, hanged, and quartered, and that the lord Leonard Gray, was beheaded on the Towerhill, for divers treasons done in Ireland, during the time he was there deputy for the king. Yet the king so wisely and discreetly demeaned himself towards that nation, that in the 33rd year of his reign, the earl of Desmond, and the great Oneile, submitted themselves to his mercy and grace. After which the great Oneile was created earl of Tyron, and his son, baron of Doucannon. Thus you see,

“ He by his Art could fashion Muscicall grounds
From th’ untun’d harp, that discords only sounds.”

By the *Harp*, which is the arms of the kingdom, meaning Ireland itself, &c. For treason also were beheaded, at the Towerhill, Thomas Cromwell, earl of Essex, and vicar-general of England, (who had been once a faithful servant to cardinal Woolsey, and afterwards entertained, and raised by the king; who, as it is commonly voiced, put it first into the king’s head to pull down the abbeyes, and make a dissolution of the monasteries) and with him lied the lord Hungerford.

In the 35th year of the king, the earl of Hartford, being made lieutenant general, for his wars in Scotland, in regard of divers affronts given him. The fourth of May he landed at Leith, burning and destroying the country, sparing neither castle, town, pile, nor village, for he

ransacked and laid waste the borough and town of Edinburgh, with the abbey called Holy Rood house, and the king's palace nearly adjoining the town of Leith also, with the haven and pier; the castle and village of Cragmiller, the abbey of New Bottell, with part of Muskleborough town, the chapel of the lady of Lauret, Preston town, and the castle of Harinton town, with the friars and nunnery; a castle of Oliver Sanckers, the town of Dunbare, Laureston, with the Grange, Urilaw, Westcrag, Enderlaw, the pile and the town of Broughton, Chester Fell's, Crawned, Dudistone, Stanhouse, the Fiker, Beverton, Franent, Shenstone, Marcle, Farpren, Kirklandhill, Katherwyke, Belton, Eastbarnes, Howland, Butterden, Quickwoe, Blackbourne, Raunton, Bildi, and the Tower, with many other towns and villages by the fleet on the sea-side, as Kincome, St. Miuers, the Queen's ferry, part of Petinwaines, &c. Which, for their brave and notable service there done, he made at Leith 45 knights. And thus was the king victorious over Scotland.

In this interim, wars were proclaimed against France, so that the king gave free libery and licence to all his subjects, to use the French king, and all that depended upon him to their best advantage and commodity. And the same year he prepared an army to invade France, and himself, in person, the 14th of July, departed from Dover towards Calais, and the next day removed to Morgisen. Upon the 26th of the same month, the camp removed to high Boulogne, and there encamped on the north-east part of the town. Two days afterwards, the watch-tower, called the Old-man, was taken, and the day after, base Boulogne was won. And upon the 13th of September, the town was victoriously conquered by Henry the eighth, king of England, France, and Ireland, Defender of the Faith; who, upon humble petition made by the French, suffered them to depart the town with bag and baggage. And in this year were taken by the English fleet 300 and odd ships of the French, to the great enriching of this nation, and the great impoverishing of theirs.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRTY-SECOND.

The death of Henry the eighth.—Edward the sixth crowned.—A calculation of his reign.—Musselborough field won by the lord protector.—The death of the two brothers,	the lord high admiral, and lord protector.—A character of the duke of Somerset.—The death of king Edward, not without suspicion of poison.—His character, &c.
--	---

THE year following, being the 37th year of the king's reign, upon the 30th of June, being Whitsunday, in London, was proclaimed a general peace between the two kingdoms of England and France, with a solemn procession at the time of the proclamation; and that night were great bonfires made in the city and suburbs for the celebration of the said union. And upon the 21st of August, came over from the French king, monsieur Denebalt, high admiral of France, and brought with him the sacre of Dieppe, with 12 gallies bravely accommodated, who landed at the Tower, where all the great ordinance were shot off, and he received by many peers of the realm, conveyed to the bishop of London's palace, where he rested two nights; and on Monday, the 23rd of the same month, he rode towards Hampton Court, where the king then lay. Whom the young prince Edward met with a royal train, to the number of 540, in velvet coats, and the prince's livery were with sleeves of cloth, of gold, and half the coats embroidered; where were 800 horses, richly capri-

soned, and riders suiting to the state, who brought him to the manor of Hampton Court. The next morning, the king and himself received the sacrament together in confirmation of the late concluded peace. After that were many masks and shows, in which, the very torch bearers were apparelled in gold, with costly feasts and banquets, during the space of six days; afterwards, with many great gifts given unto him, and his chief followers, he returned to his country.

The next year, being the 38th of the king, upon the ninth of January, by the king's express command, was beheaded on the Towerhill, that noble and valourous gentleman, the earl of Surry, who had engaged his person in Picardy, Normandy, Ireland, Scotland, &c. from whence he never came but crowned with victory. And on the 28th of the same month, the king himself departed the world, in the year 1547; whose body was most royally intombed at Windsor the 16th of February following.

King Edward the sixth began his dominion over the realm of England the 31st of January, in the year of grace 1547; and upon the 19th of February ensuing, he rode with his uncle, Sir Edward Seymour, lord governor and protector, and duke of Somerset, with the nobility of the land, from the Tower through the city of London, and so to Westminster, and was annointed and crowned by Dr. Thomas Cranmer, archbishop of Canterbury, who afterwards administered unto him the sacraments, with other divine ceremonies, according to the Protestant reformed church. Of this king's birth and reign it was thus calculated:

“ By birth a *Cæsar*, and in hopes as great,
 Shall next ascend unto th' Imperiall seat.
 Who, 'ere mature, (cropt in his tender bloome)
 Shal more against, then *Cæsar* could for *Rome*.
 He, th' Aristocracy Monarchall makes:
 This from the triple Crowne the Scepter takes.
 Upright he shall between two Bases stand,
 One in the sea fixt, the other on the land.
 These shall his pupillage strongly maintaine,
 Secure the continent and scoure the maine.
 But these supporters will be tane away
 By a *Northumbers Wolfe*, and *Suffolks Gray*.

Then fall must this faire structure built on high,
And th' English, like the Roman *Cæsar* die."

In his first year, Sir Thomas Seymour, the king's uncle, brother to the duke of Somerset, being lord high admiral, by the vice admiral, called Sir Andrew Dudley, having no other vessels but the *Paunce* and the *Hart*, and these singly manned; there was a great conflict at sea with three tall Scottish ships, (in the narrow seas) doubly manned, and trimmed with great ordinance; notwithstanding which, he took them, and brought them into *Orwell* haven, where he had good booty and store of prisoners.

And the same year, in August, the lord protector, the duke of Somerset, with the earl of Warwick, and others, marched with a noble army into Scotland, and not far from *Edinburgh*, at a place called *Musselborough*, the English and Scotch hosts met; where between them was fought a bloody and cruel battle, in which, in the end, the English were victors; and in which were slain of the Scots 14,000, and prisoners taken, of lords, knights, and gentlemen, to the number of 1,500. This year also was ordained that the communion should be received in both kinds; and at that time, Stephen Gardner, bishop of Winchester, for opposing the same, was commanded to the Tower. Commandment was also given to all curates of every parish church throughout England; that no corpse should be buried before six o'clock in the morning, nor after six at night; and that when any died, the bell should ring three quarters of an hour at least.

In this interim, the two great dukes of Northumberland and Suffolk, Dudley and Gray, privately murmuring, and openly maligning that the king's two uncles should bear such great authority in the kingdom, by which their glories seemed not only eclipsed, but quite darkened; the elder brother commanding the land, the younger the sea; the one lord protector, the other lord high admiral, so that the whole dominion and sovereignty of the kingdom, (the king's name excepted) was divided between them. And further, considering that it was in vain for them to attain to their own ambitious ends, but by sundering this fraternal tie, and unloosing this gordian knot of consanguinity, which had so long inseparably continued between them.

They therefore projected among themselves, how this (almost impossible thing) might be brought to pass ; and doubting the event, if they should attempt to work by their servants, as to corrupt them with bribes, or the like ; they therefore took a nearer and more safe course to practise it by their wives, and to draw the balance from out of their own bosoms. And most successively to their purpose thus it happened.

Sir Thomas Seymour, lord high admiral, having married the queen dowager, (whose good fortune, it was, of all the rest of the king's wives to survive her husband) contested with her sister-in-law for precedence and priority of place. To which the protector's wife standing upon her prerogative, could by no means be won to give way. This emulation between the two sister, fitly sorting the dukes' purposes, (for the one challenged the right hand, as once being queen, and the other claimed it as wife to the present protector.) To this new kindled fire, the two dukes brought fuel, Dudley encourageth the one secretly, Gray the other privately, so that the wives set the husbands at odds by taking their parts, so that by the instigation of those emulous and incensed ladies, a mortal hatred grew between the two brothers, insomuch that in the third year of the king, the admiral was questioned for the ill managing his office, and sundry articles preferred in court against him, so that he was condemned in parliament, and his head struck off; the protector, his brother, signing the warrant for his death.

The one being thus removed, there was the less difficulty to supplant the other; for in the same month of February, in which the admiral lost his head, was the protector committed to the Tower by the lords of the council, of which the two dukes were chief; and many articles of treason and ill-government of the state commenced against him. But about a year after his confinement, by his submission to the lords, and intercession made for him by the king upon the sixth of February he was released, and enjoyed his former offices and honours; but all this was but a lightning before death, for his two great and potent adversaries still prosecute their malice against him, insomuch that not long afterwards, calling him to a second account; when he had nobly acquitted himself at the bar

of all treason objected against him, he was in the guild-hall of London, (not by a jury of his peers) by 12 men convicted and condemned of felony; for which, on a scaffold on Towerhill he suffered death, verifying what was before predicted of the young king.

“ Upright he shall betweene two Bases stand,
 One in the sea fixt, th’ other on the land.
 These shall his pupillage strongly maintaine,
 Secure the continent, and scoure the maine.
 But these supporters will be tane away
 By a *Northumbers Wolfe*, and *Suffolks Gray*.”

It is so manifest that it needs no comment.

This Edward Seymour was (the son of Sir Edward Seymour) knighted by Henry the eighth, who had married the lady Jane, his natural sister. He afterwards created him viscount Beauchamp in the year 1536, and the year following earl of Hertford; after that he was installed knight of the garter, made lord great chamberlain of England, and one of the honourable privy council; much favoured of the eighth Henry, who, in his last testament, instituted him one of the chief of his 16 executors. After this, king Edward created him baron de sancto mauro; then duke of Somerset. He was next by a general voice of parliament, made protector over the king’s person, and of all his kingdoms and dominions, governor, and lord general of the king’s forces by land and sea. He was moreover lord high treasurer and earl martial of England, captain of the two islands of Guernsey and Jersey, and chancellor of the university of Cambridge. In all which offices and dignities he demeaned himself with such honourable bounty and singular piety, that some have not doubted to catalogue him amongst our English martyrs.

But to return to the history. By this protector’s means, who was a constant protestant, images were pulled down hrough all churches of England; marriage of priests made lawful by parliament, and Dr. Bonner, with other Romish prelates deposed from their bishopricks, and others of the reformed church supplied their places, making good what was before calculated of the young king.

“ By birth a *Cæsar*, and in hopes as great,
 Shall next ascend unto th’ Imperiall seat.
 Who, ere mature, (cropt in his tender bloome)
 Shal more against, then *Cæsar* could for *Rome*.
 He, th’ Aristocracy Monarchall makes:
 This from the triple Crowne the Scepter takes.”

This needs some explanation. He is called *young Cæsar*, as being produced unto the world by the cutting or ripping up of his mother’s womb, from which the great Roman, Julius, (born after the same manner) had added to him the name of *Cæsar*; which title he left as hereditary to all the succeeding emperors after him; who, as he reduced the aristocracy, which was the government of the senate and optimate into one entire monarchial diadem, placing the empire in Rome. So, of the contrary, this young king, from the great Pontifex of Rome, who in time wearing a triple diadem, and thereby challenging power in heaven potently, upon earth regency, and predominance over hell; and moreover, making earthly kings and emperors to acknowledge unto him a pre-eminence and supremacy, making them to kiss his feet, with other servile offices. He, by opposing this sovereignty, and shrinking his head out of so extreme a servitude, may be truly said to have done more against Rome in his pious devotion, than the Roman Julius did for Rome in his great magnanimity and prowess.

Now, to prove that king Edward was a *Cæsar*. The young lady Jane Seymour, being at Hampton Court when the time of her teeming came, and there was small hope of her delivery, news was brought to the king that her throes were violent upon her, and that the infant could not be brought into the world but by the death of the mother, for by preserving the one, the other must needs perish. When his pleasure was demanded what was to be done in so strict an exigent, he commanded that the child should be cut from the womb, saying, “Sure I am that I can have more wives, but uncertain I am whether I can have more children.”

‡ Upon the sixth of July, in the year 1553, John Barnes, mercer, being lord mayor, and William Garret, and John Mainard, sheriffs; departed out of this world, at Greenwich,

Edward, the sixth of that name, in the 16th year of his age, and seventh of his reign, whom some say, died of pleurisy, others that he was poisoned by a nosegay. It was generally murmured by the people, that the uncle, being removed, the nephew could not long remain afterwards; which best complies with the former calculation, which saith:

"Then fall must this faire structure built on hie,
And th' English like the Roman Cæsar die."

He first made away in the court, the other murdered in capital. Of which hopeful and toward prince, his character is left to future memory.

He was careful for the establishing of the protestant religion; to have it flourish through all his dominions. The mass he abolished, and images demolished; the learning of his time he greatly encouraged, moving them to interpret the scripture to the capacities of the vulgar; and commanded the liturgy and common prayers to be read in English tongue.

In his minority, he had maturity of judgement, and was skilled in all the liberal arts; of a retentive memory. He visited all the ports and havens in England, Scotland, France, Ireland; being as well acquainted with their scites as names. In the Greek, Latin, French, Italian, and Spanish tongues, extraordinary versed; in logic, moral philosophy, and the mathematics, conversant; in Cicero, Livy, Virgil, and Salust, frequent; Hesiod and Sophocles he understood, and was able to interpret Isocrates from the original. He was wisely, witty, even to wonder, his body robust, and his mind modelled almost to miracles. Religiously he lived, devoutly he died. That he breathed is certain, but where his body lies buried, to us uncertain.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRTY-THIRD.

The lady Jane proclaimed queen.—Northumberland's commission to suppress the lady Mary.—He is arrested for high treason.—The coronation of queen Mary.—A prediction of her reign.—The Romish religion restored.—The death of Northumberland.—	Of Suffolk.—Of Guilford Dudley.—Of the lady Jane Grey.—Her character.—The death of Cranmer, Ridley, and Latimer.—The life of cardinal Pole, twice elected Pope.—His coming into England.—Created arch-bishop of Canterbury.—His death.
--	--

THE two ambitious dukes of Northumberland and Suffolk, thinking to disable the two sisters, Mary and Elizabeth, the daughters of king Henry VIII. from any lawful claim to the crown, as reputing them no better than bastards, had made a match between Guildford Dudley, the fourth son to Northumberland, and the lady Jane Gray, sole daughter to the duke of Suffolk; and pretending that king Edward, in his last will, nominated her heir apparent to the crown after his death, they caused the said lady Jane, presently upon the king's death, June the 10th, to be proclaimed queen, and true and immediate heir to the kingdom, in sundry places of the city of London, which proved to her utter ruin.

The lady Mary being at that time at Framingham, in Suffolk, was much troubled at the report of such disastrous news, which the more perplexed her, because she had intelligence that it was done by the nobility and the whole

body of the council ; to whom the Suffolk men assembling, (as not liking such shuffling in state) proffered her their assistance to possess her in her lawful and indubitate inheritance. Before which time, the great duke of Northumberland, having a large commission granted him by the lords of the council, and signed with the great seal of England, had raised an army with intent both to suppress and surprize the lady Mary; which was no sooner advanced, and the rising of the Suffolk men bruited at court. But the lords in general, either for fear of the commons, or repenting them of the injury done to the rightful inheri- trix, they sent a countermand after the duke to lay by his arms; who, when he thought himself in his greatest power, being abandoned by the nobility, he was also forsaken of the commons, so that at Cambridge, he, with his sons, and some few servants, were left alone. Who thinking thereby to make his peace, in the open market-place, proclaimed the lady Mary, queen of England, France, and Ireland, defender of the faith, &c. Notwithstanding which, in King's College, he was arrested of high treason, and from thence brought up to London, and committed to the Tower.

Then was the lady Mary generally received as queen, and so proclaimed through the kingdom the 20th of July; and the third of August following, she took possession of the Tower; and during her abode there, released all the Romish bishops there imprisoned. From thence she rode in great state towards her palace of Westminster, where she was solemnly crowned by Stephen Gardiner, bishop of Winchester; her sister the lady Elizabeth being present at her coronation. Of this queen and her reign, it was thus predicted :

“ Then shall the masculine Scepter cease to sway,
And to a *Spinster*, the whole Land obey,
Who to the Papall Monarchy shall restore
All that the Phœnix had fetcht thence before,
Then shall come in the faggot and the stake,
And they, of Convert bodies bonafires make.
Match shal this Lionesse with *Cæsars* sonne,
From the Pontifick sea a Pool shall runne
That wide shall spread it's waters, and to a flood
In time shal grow: made red with martyrs blood.
Men shall her short unprosperous Reigne deplore
By losse at sea, and damage on the shore:

Whose heart being dissected, you in it
May in large characters find *Calice* writ."

Now ceased the heir male to reign, and the sceptre was disposed to the female, which was not seen or known since long before the conquest, when Bouduca, or as some call her Boadicia sovereignized. In the time of Nero Caesar. And *Spinster* was an ancient British title given to the feminine sex before king Edgar's reign; by which name, even princesses being convented or summoned to any court are called into this day. But to proceed with the history; in the 10th day of the month, after her coronation, began a parliament, in which, besides the supplanting of the protestant religion, which began to be established in the days of king Edward, were convicted and attainted of high treason, John, duke of Northumberland; Thomas Cranmer, late archbishop of Canterbury; Sir Ambrose Dudley, knight; Guildford Dudley, esquire, and husband to the lady Gray; Sir Andrew Dudley, knight, with others, as William, marquis of Northampton; John, earl of Warwick, &c. And the 12th of August, were beheaded on the Towerhill, John Dudley, duke of Northumberland, Sir John Gates, and Sir Thomas Palmer.

Thus you see the end of Northumberland. If any be desirous to know also what became of Suffolk; I can parallel him to none more genuine than to the duke of Buckingham; he had a Banister, this an Underwood, a servant raised by him to a fair revenue, and to whose safeguard he had committed his person, who, in a spacious hollow tree for some months concealed him, whither he brought him meat and drink, with millions of oaths engaged for his truth and fidelity; but being easily corrupted with some small quantity of gold, and many large and liberal promises, he, like Judas, betrayed his master, and delivered him to the noble earl of Huntington, who, with a strong guard, brought him through London to the Tower. He was afterwards arraigned in the great hall at Westminster, and soon afterwards, on the Towerhill, lost his head.

Yet, probable it was, that the queen had pardoned that offence, had he not seconded with another, by confedering with Sir Thomas Wyat, of Kent, to interpose her marriage with Philip of Spain, son to the emperor; and to that

purpose departed secretly into Warwick and Leicestershires, where he knew himself to be best affected, and made their open proclamation to keep all strangers from the land; for which he fell into the queen's irreconcilable displeasure, which, not only hastened his own end, but the deaths of Guilford and the lady Jane, for the statists at that time, especially those that were devoted to the Romish faction, held it no policy to suffer any of the contrary religion to live, especially if they could entrap them in any quiddits of law which might be stretched to be made capital. Therefore, upon the 12th of February, in the year 1554, it being the first day of the week, Guilford Dudley was brought to the scaffold upon the Towerhill, where, when he had, with all Christian devotion, made his peace with heaven, he, with a settled and unmoved constancy, submitted himself to the stroke of death, which was given in the sight of his excellent spouse, who, to that purpose, was placed in a window within the Tower; the object striking more cold to her heart than the sight of that fatal axe, by which she was presently to suffer, which she most patiently endured.

Never was a lady's death more passionately bewailed, being remarkable in judge Morgan, who pronounced the sentence against her, who presently after fell mad, and in all his distracted ravings, cried, "Take away the lady Jane, take her from me." And in that extreme distemperature, with these words in his mouth, ended his life. Some report that she was young with child at the time of her suffering; but though her Romish opposites were many, and the times bloody, Christian charity may persuade they would not use such inhumanity, especially against a person of her royal blood and lineage. She was an excellent lady, endued with more virtues and extraordinary endowments than is frequently found in that sex; being a pattern to others for true religion and piety; of which her godly oration to the people, and holy prayer at her death, extant in Mr. Fox's Martyrology, abundantly witnesseth. She exceeded not 16 years of age, of an excellent feature, and amiable aspect, of learning incredible, in wit incomparable, of enforced honours so unambitious, that she never attired herself in any regal ornaments, but constrainedly and with tears: divers of her Latin verses have been spread to posterity; and of her works in the English tongue, an epistle to a

learned man fallen off from the truth, and turned apostate; another epistle to her sister, with a colloquy or reasoning with one Freckman, a Romist, about faith and the sacraments, &c.

Soon afterwards followed the deaths of Dr. Cranmer, archbishop of Canterbury, (acquitted of treason, and condemned of heresy) Nicholas Ridley, late bishop of London, and Hugh Latimer, with infinite others; inso-much that scarce any city or market-town through the whole kingdom, in which some pious professor or other, had not felt the scorching of the fire and faggot. I should fill whole pages to reckon up particulars. Only thus in brief, it is observed, that queen Mary's reign was the shortest of any prince since the conquest, that wore the crown, (Richard the third's only excepted) and that more Christian blood was spilt in her few years, (concerning religion and matter of conscience) than had been shed in any one king's reign since the time of king Lucius, the first establisher of Christianity in this his realm of England, which recollects the memory of the former prophecy, where he speaks of the spinster :

“ Who to the Papall Monarch shall restore,
All that the Phœnix had fetcht thence before.
Thenshall come in the Faggot and the Stake,
And they of convert bodies bonfires make, &c.”

By the *Phœnix*, meaning king Edward, so termed by Hieronymus Cardanus, because he was unparalled in his time. And by the *convert bodies*, those who were converted to the reformed and protestant religion, for which cause thousands in sundry parts of the kingdom suffered. Now why queen Mary was so zealous to propagate the Popish faith, it followeth next to enquire. She was brought up under her mother's wing, a Spaniard, who being of the Spanish blood, persisted in the Spanish belief; but when her mother, after three years divorce from the king, expired, she was committed to the guardianship of Margaret, countess of Salisbury, and daughter to George, duke of Clarence, brother to Edward the fourth, who died in the Tower. This countess had only one son called Reginald Pole, who was of great familiarity with the lady Mary in their minority,

and devoting himself wholly to the study of the arts, was initiated in Magdalen College, Oxford; but being a very young man, left the university; and having a great desire to travel, crossed the seas, and went into Italy. Seven years he spent in the academy of Padua, where, entering into great familiarity with Peter Brent, (chief secretary to the pope then reigning) he brought him into such reputation with his holiness, that in the year 1538, he was made cardinal, and employed in embassies both to the emperor, and to the French king; in which negotiations he is said to have dealt perfidiously with his own liege lord and sovereign, king Henry the eighth. (For dangerous is an Englishman being once Italianated.)

The incensed king not able to reach the son, who was the actor, yet, used his power against the mother as an accessory; who being questioned for sending her son some daily supplies of money from England into Italy, was for that convicted of treason, and being 80 years of age, was beheaded. This cardinal Pole was of the royal blood, as lineally descended from George, duke of Clarence, of singular learning and approved modesty, insomuch that in the twice vacancy of the see of Rome, he was in both selected and nominated as pope; but, refusing it as too great a charge, (for such was his apology) he rather choosed a solitary and sequestered life, and so retired himself into a monastery near Verona, of which (according to rumour) he was first founder and patron; in which he spent a great part of his age, as a man exterminated from his native country, so continuing the latter part of Henry the eighth, and the entire sovereignty of Edward the sixth. But queen Mary, his first acquaintance, being invested into the English throne, having the sovereign power in her own disposal, she sent to call him home, with purpose (as it was then rumoured, having the pope's authority to dispense with all his ecclesiastical dignities) to have made him her husband.

Of which Charles the emperor having notice, partly by his power, and partly by his policy, wrought so by his engineers, that he was detained in Italy till a match was fully concluded between his son, prince Philip, and the queen. Which being perfected, and then past prevention,

the cardinal was at liberty to dispose of himself. And for his great honour, was sent over by the pope, with the title of Legatus a' Latere. At which time, Dr. Thomas Cramer, was not only suspended, but dispossessed of the archbishoprick of Canterbury, instead of whom, cardinal Pole was installed into that see; where having been three years archbishop, when news was brought him of the death of his cousin queen, he the same hour expired, in the 58th year of his age, and lieth buried within St. Thomas's chapel, in Canterbury church, with this short inscription only:

Depositem Cardinalis Poli.

The prophecy aiming at him, where it saith:

“ From the Pontificke Sea a Poole shall runne,
That wide shall spread its waters, and to a flood
In time shall grow, made red with Martyrs blood.”

The next chapter leads me to the entrance of prince Philip, son to the emperor Charles, into the land, and his marriage with queen Mary, &c.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRTY-FOUR.

King Philip's reception in the land.—Presented with the garter.—He is made king of Naples and Jerusalem.—The great solemnity of the king and queen's marriage at Winchester.—Their titles.—Their riding through London.—The queen rumoured to, be with child.—King Philip's	wily proceedings.—He favour-eth the lady Elizabeth.—He leaveth the land.—Queen Mary's discontent at his departure.—The loss of Calais.—The death of queen Mary.—The inauguration of the lady Elizabeth.—A prophecy of her birth and reign.
---	--

TO omit all the insurrections (in her time) of the discontented commons, as that of Sir Thomas Wyatt, in Kent, to keep king Philip out of the land, in which the duke of Suffolk was a partisan; with another commotion in Devonshire by Gowen and Peter Carow, Giles Champenham, and others; with a third about Woodhurst, in Sussex, which was soon appeased; a fourth by Udall, Throgmorton, Daniel, Peckham, Stanton, &c. a fifth by Henry Stafford, who took Scarborough castle in the north. I come now to prince Philip, who after all those that interposed his landing, were cut off, in the year of grace 1554, the 20th of July, made his safe arrival at Southampton, where he was honourably received by the greatest part of the nobility, and was presented with the order of St. George, and the garter, set with rich stones, fastened about his leg. Who, before he would enter into any house, went

first into Holy Rood church, which standeth just opposite to the Town-hall, where he gave thanks to God for his safe and prosperous arival. And, having spent some half an hour in his devotion, he mounted upon a goodly jennet, richly caprisoned, (which was that morning sent him by the queen) and so rode back towards his lodging, which was near unto the Water-gate.

The Monday following he left Southampton, and attended by the lords and gentlemen of England, rode towards Winchester, but, by reason of the great store of rain that fell the same day, the journey seemed something unpleasant, but there, about seven o'clock towards night, he was magnificently received, and rode to the church before he would see his lodging. Loud music entertained him at his alighting, and the bishop of that see, with four others, met him at the church door, attended with priests, singing-men, and choristers, all in rich coaps, who had three fair crosses or crucifixes borne before them. In the first entrance of the church, the priest kneeled down to pray. Which done, he arose, and went under an embroidered canopy from the west door up to the choir; who, when he saw the host, put off his hat, to do it reverence, and then entered into a goodly traverse, hung with costly arras, and there kneeled again, till Winchester, the chancellor, began *Te Deum*, whom all the choir seconded. That done, he was brought thence by torch-light, and went on foot through the cloisters to his lodging, whither the queen's guard attended him to a fair house belonging to the dean.

He was at that time aparelled in a coat or mantle, curiously embroidered with gold; his hat suitable, and a white feather in it, with a rich oriental jewel. All the way as he passed, he turned himself to the people on both sides, with a pleasant countenance; and after supper, which was about 10 o'clock, a certain number of the council, by a private way, brought him to the queen, who entertained him graciously and lovingly. They had conference together for about half an hour, in the Spanish tongue; which ended, he took his leave, and was conducted back to his lodging. Upon the Tuesday following, about three o'clock in the afternoon, he came from his lodging on foot, attended by the lord Steward, the earl of Derby, the earl of Pembroke, and other lords and gentlemen, as well strangers as English.

And that day he was attired in a cloak of black Spanish cloth, embroidered about with silver, a pair of white silk stockings, and the garter of the order about his leg, where he shewed himself freely and openly to all men. At his entrance into the court, loud music was heard, and in the great hall the queen met and kissed him before all the people. Then (she taking the right hand) they went together, in the presence chamber, and talked under the state cloth about a quarter of an hour. He then took leave of her majesty, and coming into the open court, the pensioners, and yeomen of the guard, stood on both sides as far as the gate; from whence the lords conducted him to the cathedral, where he heard even song; which ended, they brought him back to his lodging with torch-light, and so left him.

The same night, the emperor sent a message to the queen, to give her to understand, that his son was not a prince only, but a king of Jerusalem and Naples, with other dominions after mentioned in his stile. Upon St. James's day, being the 25th of July, about 11 o'clock in the morning, the king and queen came from their lodgings towards the church on foot, both richly attired in gowns of cloth, embroidered with gold, and set with pearl, stones, and gems. He with his guard, and she with her's, both having a sword borne before them, before her by the earl of Derby, before him by the earl of Pembroke. Being come unto the church, he went to one altar, and she to another, hanged with curtains of cloth embroidered with gold, which being afterwards drawn, it was imagined that they were shriven; afterwards, they come from their places, and meeting, they very lovingly saluted each other, he also being at that time bare-headed.

Then six bishops went to the place prepared for the nuptial ceremony, the king standing on the left hand, and she on the right; then the lord chancellor asked the banns between them, first in Latin, and then in English. The ring was a plain hoop of gold, without any stone, for she desired to be married as maids used to be of old. The nuptials being ended, the king and queen went on hand in hand under a sumptuous canopy, by six knights borne over them, and two swords carried before them. Coming before the altar, they kneeled down; with both of them a

lighted taper in their hands; then they arose and withdrew, she into a traverse on the right side, he into another on the left. After the gospel read, they again appeared, and kneeled before the altar all the time of mass. Which being ended, the king of heralds openly proclaimed their majesties king and queen, with these titles following:

Philip and Mary, by the grace of God, king and queen of England, France, Naples, Jerusalem, and Ireland, defenders of the faith; king and queen of Spain, Sicilia, Leon, and Arragon; archduke and duchess of Austria; duke and duchess of Millain, Burgundy, and Brabant; count and countess of Husburch, Flanders, and Tyroll; lord and lady of the islands of Sardinia, Majorca, Minorca, of the Firm land, and the great Ocean sea; palatines of Hanaült, and the Holy Empire; lord and lady of Freezeland and of the isles, and governors of all Asia and Africa.

The trumpets ceasing, the king and queen came forth hand in hand, royally attended, and so went on foot to the court, and dined together openly in the hall, at one table. Thus you see

“The Lioness hath matcht with Cæsars sonne.”

I have been the longer in this relation, to shew the magnificent solemnities of princely nuptials used in those times. The 18th of August, the king and queen went to Suffolk place, in Southwark, and there dined; after dinner they rode together over London bridge, and so passed through the city, the streets being hanged sumptuously, and divers pageants and shows presented unto them, having relation to their persons, and the great joy of the people, conceived at their royal marriage, and unity of the nations; being afterwards received by the bishop of London into the cathedral church of St. Paul with procession. Where having done their devotion, they rode on in great state towards their palace at Westminster. Then came divers ambassadors from several countries; from Russia, Poland, Denmark, Hungary, Naples, &c. to congratulate the nuptials of these two potent princes.

Afterwards it was bruited that the queen was with child, for which there was great thanksgiving and prayers

through all the churches of London, for her safe delivery to come, and king Philip chosen to be protector of the infant, male or female, (by a decree in parliament) in case the queen should not miscarry in child-birth. But some having whispered in his head that he should be deluded by a suppositious infant, prepared for that purpose; and loath that a counterfeit should be heir to all his realms and dominions, he would not depart the chamber at the time of her delivery, by which the plot took no effect, and bred some distaste between the king and the queen. Again, to second this, the king greatly favoured the lady Elizabeth; and observing what tyranny was used against the dejected princess, he began to be somewhat jealous of the English nation, and their proceeding in state, apprehending that if they insidiated the life of a native, being their queen and sovereign's sister; with what small scruple of conscience might they aim to supplant him, or any of his followers, who were aliens and strangers, which made him so suddenly to forsake the queen and the land; his excuse being to visit his father, the emperor, and to take possession of the low countries, to the great sorrow of her majesty, of whom he took his leave the fourth day of September.

In her days Calais was lost by the English and taken by the French, by the ill-management of the state, especially the clergy, who in her days swayed all, and were so busied in the butchery and burning of matyrs at home, that the honour and state of the kingdom was much neglected abroad; which town had 200 and odd years belonged to the crown of England. It was first won by Edward the third, the eleventh king from William the Conqueror, after a siege of eight months, and was lost by Mary, the eleventh from the said Edward, in eight days. Who, when she heard the town was taken, in a great passion uttered these words, "The loss of Calais is written in my heart, and may be there read when my body is dissected." Besides martyrdom, in her time was great mortality of people, much harm done by lightning and thunder, a great part of her fleet suddenly fired; king Philip's second return into the land, and his short sojournment here, ere he left it again. These, with other discontents so wrought upon her princely nature, that verifying the former prediction, which saith:

"Men shall her short unprosperous reign deplore,
 By losse at Sea, and damage on the shore:
 Her heart when 'tis dissected, you in it
 May in large Characters read *Callis* writ."

These cogitable remembrances brought her into a consumption, or (as some say) into a burning fever, so that in the 42nd year, and sixth day of her age, she departed the world at the manor of St. James, near Westminster, the 17th of November, in the year of our blessed Saviour's incarnation 1558, after she had reigned five years, four months, and 11 days, whose body lieth buried in a chapel belonging to the cathedral of St. Peter's church in Westminster, in a bare grave, without either tomb or any inscription; either of which might have been some memorable decorement to adorn her hearse.

The same day of her death, was proclaimed queen, the lady Elizabeth, sister to queen Mary, and daughter to Henry the eighth, and the lady Anne Bullen, who was appointed by parliament to succeed her sister, dying without issue; who shortly came to London, where she was joyfully received by all ages, sexes, and degrees; (the Romists only excepted) and passing through the city to the Tower, she shewed to all her people and subjects, the deportment of so sweet and a gracious lady; and they so mutual and alternate a joy for her happy and prosperous inauguration, that it almost wanted precedent. And of whom it was thus predicted:

"From th' others ashes shall a Phenix rise,
 Whose birth is thus predicted by the wise,
 Her chief predominant star is *Mercury*,
Jove shall with *Venus* in conjunction be.
 And *Sol* with them shine in his best aspect:
 With *Ariadnes* Crown, *Astræa* deckt,
 Shall then descend upon this terrene stage:
 (Not seen before, since the first golden age)
 Against whom all the Latian Bulls shall rore,
 But at *Joves* awfull summons shall give ore.
 Through many forges shall this metall glide
 Like gold, by fire repur'd, and seven times tryde
 Her bright and glorious Sun-beams shall expell
 The vain clouds of the Candle, Booke, and Bell.

Domestick plots, and stratagems abroad,
French machins, and the *Italianated* god,
 The *Spanish* Engine, *Porteguized Jew*:
 The Jesuitick mine, and politick crew
 Of home-bred Vipers, let their menaces come
 By private pistoll, or by hostile Drum,
 Though all these Dogs chace her with open cry,
 Live shall she lov'd, and fear'd, then *Sainted* die."

Concerning the astrological calculation of her birth, in her it proved most infallibly true; for where Mercury's star is predominant, it portends a rare acuteness and sharpness of wit, a volubility in speech and retentiveness of memory, with a natural inclination to acquire learning and knowledge. Jupiter's star infuseth honour, state, power, and majesty. And Venus feature, beauty, affability, and clemency; both of which being at that time in conjunction, conferred their general gifts upon her in particular; and Sol shining at the same hour, with a favourable aspect ratified the former, of which part of the prophecy there needs no further explanation.

To write largely of her troubles, being a princess, or of her rare and remarkable reign after she was queen, I should but feast you with diet twice dressed, having myself published a discourse of the first, from her cradle to her crown; and in another bearing title of the *Nine Worthy Women*, she being the last of them in time and place, though equal to any of the former, both in religious virtue, and all masculine magnanimity. And yet, because the present occasion enforceth it, I will give you only a recapitulation in brief of those passages which were at large related in the former, which I refer to the following chapter.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRTY-FIFTH.

A brief nomination of her troubles, wrought by the popish clergy.—Her passage through London to her coronation, with the speeches spoken in the pageants.—A short	remembrance of the prime passages in her reign.—The former prediction fulfilled.—Her death—Other predictions, fathered upon Merlin, explained, &c.
---	--

SHE was born the seventh of September, and baptized the third day following, in the friars church at Greenwich; her god-father was Thomas Cranmer, archbishop of Canterbury; her god-mothers, the dutchess of Norfolk, and marchioness of Pembroke, both widows. At her birth, Mary, the eldest daughter to the king, by queen Katherine, was disabled of any claim to the crown, and his heirs by queen Anne Bullen admitted, during her childhood, she came not near her sister, but was brought up in the Protestant faith, and to her brother Edward much endeared. Her uncle, the protector, brought her suitors of honourable quality in her minority, whom she refused with great modesty. At queen Mary's coronation, she graced her with her company, but soon afterwards confined her at the instigation of the clergy; no insurrection in her sister's time, to which they would not have made her accessary, as that of Wiat's in Kent, the Carowes in Devonshire, Throgmorton's, &c. for which she was by them

maliciously questioned, but, by the power of heaven, miraculously acquitted; from Ashrege she was sent for to London—from thence committed to the Tower—her barge grating on the arches by the way—her landing at the traitors' stairs—her close imprisonment there—her dangers in being conveyed thence—her train untutored soldiers—her bondage under Benningfield—his fury at Woodstock, and the firing of her lodgings—a private warrant for her death accidentally discovered, and by king Philip prevented. But these with infinite others appear,

“ That against her the *Latian* Bulls did rore,
But by *Joves* awfull power at length give o're.”

This hath not only reference to her pupilage, but the time of her principality, in which the *Latian Bulls*, meaning the bulls of pope Pius Quintus, so' raged in the land, that they deposed her from the crown as an heretic, and released her subjects from their allegiance. All which, by the power of God, her chief and only supporter, proved no other than flashing false fires, and words vainly uttered against the wind. But now *Astræa* decked in *Ariadnes's* crown;

“ Descends again upon this terræ stage,
Not seen before since the first golden age.”

Astræa, in whom is figured justice, (and here queen Elizabeth is personated) borrowing *Ariadnes's* crown, which is one of the celestial constellations, who left the world in Saturn's reign, called the *golden age*, when the seven deadly sins began first to peep into the world, and claim chief predominance on earth. Who now, at this restoration of true religion, is said to descend from her place in the Zodiac, where she sat constelled by the name of Virgo, and be tarrased over this blessed queen's tribunal, in which all justice (with mercy mixed) was continually exercised.

I come now to her passing through the city. At her first coming forth from her lodging in the Tower, before she would suffer herself to be mounted in her chariot, she

devoutly lifted up her eyes and hands towards heaven, speaking these words: "My God, I thank thee, who hast been so merciful as to spare me to see this joyful and blessed day; and I confess that thou hast dealt as mercifully and miraculously with me, as thou didst with thy faithful servant Daniel, whom thou didst save from the lion's den; for so was I distressed, and by thee so delivered; to thee therefore, and thee only, be thanks, honour, and praise for evermore. Amen."

The first pageant to entertain her was at Fanchurch, near unto which was placed a stately scaffold, with a curious consort of sweet sounding instruments, upon which stood a young man of good aspect, and gorgeously apparelled, ready with a speech in Latin, in the city's behalf, to give her welcome; who seeing him preparing for that purpose, commanded her chariot to stay, and beckoning with her hand to the people for silence, he spake to her in Latin, as followeth:

*Urbs tua, quæ ingressu dederit tibi munera prima.
O Regina, &c.*

Which, for the more general understanding, I deliver you thus interpreted into our vulgar tongue.

*Behold, O queen, what to thy great renown,
Thy city doth present thee, two things are,
Instead of gifts, to guide thee to thy crown:
Loud tongues, and loyal hearts without compare.
Their tongues thy welcome in loud tones proclaim
Their hearts' rejoice when they but hear thy name.
Then welcome gracious sovereign: happy we,
And above hope bless'd to behold this day,
As our tongues speake, our hearts with them agree,
And what save welcome can we think or say?
Rich, poor, young, old, who all these places fill,
Have both in tongue and heart your welcome still."*

At the conclusion of this speech, the people made a loud acclamation, every one crying, "God save queen Elizabeth," with other zealous wishes, as their fancies led them. Here was observed her constant attention to what was deli-

vered, with a change of countenance when any phrase reflected upon her own private person, and thereby her great courtesy and clemency in giving the people public thanks for their so hearty votes and wishes.

Thence she removed forward to Gracious-Street, where was erected a very sumptuous structure, extended from one side of the street to another, curiously vaulted below, and decorated with battlements above; it had three ports, over the middlemost were advanced three several stages, one degree above each other. On the lowest was a seat royal, in which were placed two persons in rich robes of state, the one representing Henry the seventh, the other the lady Elizabeth, his wife. He (being of the house of Lancaster) environed with a branch of red roses, and she, being of the house of York, inclosed with a branch of white roses. Out of these two, being of divers colours, sprung two branches of damask, or white intermingled with red, which were directed upwards to the second stage, where sat environed, one with a diadem upon his head, personating king Henry the eighth, (her father) and a second personating queen Anne Bullen, (her mother) In a third degree surmounting their heads, to which the former branch reached, sat one resembling her majesty's person. The motto inscribed was "The uniting of the two houses of Lancaster and York." The speech directed to her being to this purpose:

*Hii quos jungit idem solium, quos annulus idem
Hæc albente nitens, ille rubente rosa, &c.*

*Those princes that upon this state are seen,
One with the red rose, th' other with the white,
Are the seventh Henry and his royal Queen,
One marriage Ring, one throne doth them unite.*

*Heir to the house of Lancaster, the King:
The Queen to York: both in one blood combin'd.
From these king Henry (stil'd the eighth) did spring,
The seat aloft is to your place assign'd.*

*(O royal Queen) and as all civill wars
Long reigning, did in their uniting cease,
So may you live free from domestick jars,
Amongst us stil'd the Queen of prosperous peace.*

There were, moreover, divers Latin sentences inscribed upon several labels, persuading to unity and concord, which for brevity's sake I here omit.

Thence she passed to Cornhill, where stood another pageant composed with three open gates; over the middle part thereof sat one magnificently enthroned, figuring her royal person. In the frontispiece was written in large characters, "The seat of worthy government;" which seat was so artificially framed, that it seemed to have no prop or stay, on which to subsist. In four several compartments, stood four reverend persons; one figuring true religion, treading upon ignorance and superstition; the second stood for the love of subjects to their prince, spurning at insolence and rebellion; the third, wisdom tyrannizing over folly and vain-glory; the fourth, justice having dominion over flattery and bribery. Divers other ingenious fancies there were of virtues and vices, with moral sentences inserted and interlaced to adorn the fabric. Her royal arms being richly garnished, and set in the apex, or top thereof, supported by a lion and a dragon. The speech being to this effect:

*Quæ subnixæ alti solio regina superba est,
Effigiem sanctæ principis Alma refert.*

*Behold, O queen, thy picture in this frame,
Richly inthron'd to celebrate thy name.
Whilst true Religion in thy Reign shall tread
On ignorance and superstition's head,
Whilst subjects love, rebellion shall distress,
And overtumour'd insolence make less;
Whilst justice keeps an incorrupted place,
To have all flattery and bribes in chace,
Whilst wisdom, arm'd with robes devout and holy,
Shall have a power above ostent and folly;
Whilst these continue (which we much desire)
So long thy people shall thy Reign admire.*

To this she answered, that she had taken notice of their good meaning towards her, and most graciously promised her best endeavour for the continuance and encouragement of those virtues, and suppressing of the said vices. Passing

from thence to Soper-lane end, where stood another sumptuous and goodly pageant, spreading from one side of the street to the other, being raised three degrees or stories high; in the upper sat one child, in the second three, and in the third and lowest four, representing the eight beatitudes. The following speech was delivered to her in Latin :

*We that thy great afflictions late have seen,
Acknowledge thou art bless'd eight times (O Queen)
Blest hast thou been, because so poor in spirit,
And therefore thou a kingdom dost inherit.
Bless'd, for thou mourned hast, and therefore see
Great comforts are prepared now for thee.
Bless'd, for thy meekness next with thoughts divine,
Therefore this earth from henceforth shall be thine.
Hunger and thirst for godlinesse thou hast
Suffered, now all good things shall please thy taste.
Bless'd, since to all th' art merciful and kind,
Therefore thou mercy shalt hereafter find.
Bless'd, because pure in heart, therefore thy grace
Shall be to look thy Maker in the face,
Bless'd, as contentions having reconcil'd,
All peace-makers, God's children shall be stil'd.
Bless'd art thou, since for righteousness's sake,
Thou persecution suffered hast, to make
Thy patience greater, thy reward more strong,
For to all such salvation doth belong.*

At the conclusion of this speech, the people wished all together, with one general vote, these blessings abundantly to fall upon her, whom she much thanked, and past on to the standard in Cheap, which was garnished with divers banners, penons, and streamers, and upon it placed a noise of trumpets, the cross being very beautifully trimmed; upon the porch of St. Peter's church door, stood the waits of the city, with cornets and hautboys, and played loud music. Moving onward, she espied another pageant erected at the Little Conduit in the upper end of Cheap, and demanded what it might signify; one told her majesty, that there Time was placed. Time, replied she, and Time, I thank my God, hath brought me hither; and being further informed that the English Bible was there to be delivered unto her by Truth, the daughter of Time, she

answered, she was beholding to the city for that present above all others, which she would maintain with the best blood that ran in her royal veins, and commanded Sir John Parrot, one of the knights that held the canopy, to fetch it from the child; but, understanding that it was to be let down by a silken string, she caused him to stay, and proceed no further. Then met her the lord mayor and the aldermen.

There the recorder made a learned speech, and delivered unto her withal a purse of crimson satin, richly embroidered, and in it a 1,000 marks in gold, which she received with her own hands; and to his speech she made answer as followeth:

“ I thank my lord mayor, his brethren, and you all. Where your request is that I should continue your good lady and queen, be assured I will be as good and gracious unto you as ever a princess was to her people; no will in me shall be wanting, and I persuade myself, no power shall be deficient to provide for the safety and security of you all, for which I shall not spare my best blood. God thank you all.” The Bible being presented unto her, and all the pertinences of that show being past, coming over against Paul’s school, one of the scholars delivered her a Latin oration, with divers Latin verses. The oration began, *Philosophus ille divinus Plato, &c.* and the verses,

Anglia nunc tandem plaudas, lætere, resulla, &c.

It would require too long a time to interpret them. She passed thence through Ludgate, which was gorgeously beautified and adorned, where were trumpets, cornets, shalms, and hautboys; and thence into Fleet-Street, where, at the conduit, she was received by the fifth and last pageant, in which was expressed Debora, the judgess, and restorer of the house of Israel. At St. Dunstan’s church stood the children of the hospital, and by one of them a speech delivered unto her, to which she attentively listened; and promised to be their future benefactress. Upon Temple Bar were placed the two giantlike figures of Corinæus and Gogmagog, holding a table wherein the

effects of all the former pageants were in Latin inscribed. Thence she departed towards Westminster, where she was the next day, being the 15th of January, with all royal solemnity crowned.

“Thus *Sol* shines on her with his best aspect,
With Ariadnes Crown, *Astræa* dect,
Doth now descend upon this terrene stage,
Not seen before since the first golden age.
Through many forges did this metall glide,
Like gold by fire repur'd, and seven times tryde.”

In regard that her inimitable reign and government, bath so oft, and amply, so largely and learnedly, both in the Latin and the English tongue, been voluminously discoursed, I will only present you with a table of their tractates and treatises, as a brief register, to prompt the reader's remembrance: as first, by refusing a marriage with her brother in law, Philip, king of Spain, she made him her public and professed enemy—that the French, animated by the Guisians, in the right of Mary, queen of France and Scotland would have invaded her kingdom—that Spain, France, and Scotland, all, and at once combined against her—the thundering bull of Pius Quintus, which acquitted all her subjects from their allegiance—rebellions in the north—duke Dalva's attempts in the low countries—Pools and Dacre's conspiracies—John of Austria, from Spain—Stukely in Ireland—Saunders and Sam Josephus—Desmond and Fitzmorris—Paget, Throgmorton, and Arondel Bernardine, Mendoza, and cardinal Allan, the Spanish Armada, stiled Invincible—the 14 traitors—Englefield and Ross! Spanified; Parry, with his pistol, Italianated; Aubespineus and Trappius, his secretary, Frenchified; Walpole, the Jesuite, Lopez, the Jew, and Squire, who would have poisoned her saddle's pummel, &c. These prove what was before by the prophet predicted:

“Her bright and glorious Sunbeams shall expell
The vain clouds of the candle, booke and bell,
Domestick plots and stratagems abroad,
French machins and the Italianated god,
The Spanish Eugins, Porteguized Jew.
The Jesuitick mines, and politick crew

Of home-bred Traytors, let their menaces come
By private pistoll, or by hostile drum," &c.

Yet, notwithstanding, over these and many others (strengthened and protected by the hand of the Almighty) she was miracurously victorious, whose fame can never fail, or her memory perish, and therefore I draw my present conclusion from the premises.

" Though all these Dogs chace her with open cry;
Live shall she fear'd and lov'd, then Sainted die."

Many other prophecies have been dispersed abroad under the name of Merlin, of which I will give you the taste of one only, and that is this:

" When Hempe is ripe and ready to pull,
Then Englishman beware thy scull."

In this word *Hempe* be five letters, H, E, M, P, E; now, by reckoning the successive princes from Henry the eighth, this prophecy is easily explained. H, signifieth Henry, before-named; E, Edward, his son, the sixth of that name; M, Mary, who succeeded him; P, Philip of Spain, who, by marrying queen Mary, during the time of her life, participated with her in the English diadem; lastly, by E, queen Elizabeth, after whose death there was great fear that some troubles might have risen about the crown, or that king James, her successor, of like blessed memory, might have come in after an hostile manner, and so to have made that good:

" Then Englishman beware thy scull."

Yet proved this augury true, though not according to the former expectation or imagination, for after his happy and peaceable proclamation and inauguration, there was great mortality, not in London only, but through the whole kingdom, from which the nation was not quite clean in seven years afterwards.

CONTENTS OF CHAPTER THIRTY-SIXTH.

The title of king James to the crown.—His coming into England.—A prophecy of his reign.—The gun-powder treason, and who the conspirators were.—The king of Denmark twice cometh into England.—An	epitaph on prince Henry.—One on the duke of Richmond and Lenox.—Another on queen Anne.—An epitaph upon king James.—Charles proclaimed king.—His father's funeral, &c. &c.
--	---

UPON Thursday, being the 24th of March, about two o'clock in the morning, died queen Elizabeth, of blessed memory, at her palace of Richmond, aged 70 years, and having reigned 44 years, five months, and odd days; and the same day, about 11 o'clock in the forenoon, was proclaimed James, the sixth king of Scotland, king of England, Scotland, France, and Ireland, at the high cross in Cheapside, with the title of Defender of the Faith, being lineally descended from Margaret, eldest daughter to king Henry the seventh, by Elizabeth his wife, who was the eldest daughter to king Henry the fourth; the same Margaret was married to James, the fourth of that name, king of Scotland, in the year of grace 1503, who had issue James the fifth, who was father to Mary, queen of Scotland, mother to James the sixth, monarch of Great-Britain, and king of France and Ireland. Of whom, ere I further

proceed to speak any more, let me acquaint you with one thing most remarkable, namely, how ominous the Thursday hath been to Henry the eighth, and to all his posterity, for he himself died upon Thursday the 28th of January; his son, king Edward the sixth, on Thursday the sixth of July; queen Mary, on Thursday the 17th of November, and queen Elizabeth on Thursday the 24th of March. But I return to king James, and the prediction made of him and his prosperous reign:

“On *Boreas* wings then hither shall be borne,
Through *Week*, o're *Tweed* a Princely Unicorn
Who brought into the world, his own fair crest,
A rampant Lion figured on his brest,
And to his Armes six Lions more shall quarter
With six *French* Flowers inviron'd with the Garter,
Joyning (by fates unchangable dispose)
The Northern Thistle to the Southerne Rose,
He shall the true Apostolike Faith mayntain,
With pious zeale: During the blessed Reigne
Of this faire sprig deriv'd from *Richmond's* stock,
No Noble head shall stoop unto the block.
Yet shall from th' old Lupanar Wolves be sent
To undermine both Crown and Government,
Striving in Hell to register their names,
By blowing up the State in powder flames.
Ah (wo the while) Rebellion, and prestigion,
Should masque themselves in visors of religion.
All which the holy book meerly gain-says,
But man's corrupt, God, Just in all his wayes,
Witnesse the wretched ends, but happy they
Who keep for that, an annuall holiday
That King shall be a second *Salomon*,
Whom all Kings else with wonder gaze upon:
Who, as to an Oracle to him shall come,
And when he speaks, be silent all and dumbe,
Peace shall he keep within him and without him,
Whilst all lands else combustions are about him.
Him shall a second issue male succeed,
Gracious in word, victorious in his deed.”

Though divers adulterate copies, something alluding to this purpose, have been frequent in the mouths of many, yet this best agreeing with the author's meaning, ought to be first received, which, though it need no explanation at all, yet thus much briefly, for the satisfaction of the vulgar.

By *Boreas* is meant the north-wind, upon whose wings the Unicorn is borne, is implied king James, who gives the Unicorn in heraldry. *Through Week over Tweed*, that is, he came through Berwick, over the river Tweed, which parteth England and Scotland. He was also borne with the exact portraiture of a Lion upon his breast, presaging that the White Lion of Scotland, should have a proximity and alliance with the three Red Lions of England, quartered with the three Flower de Lyces of France, (the noble remembrance of Edward, surnamed the Black Prince, son to Edward the third, who, by taking the king prisoner in battle, added them to the arms of England) which are encompassed by the Garter, an order first made by the said Edward the third. These came into the peaceable possession of king James, who also brought the Thistle, (part of the arms of Scotland) to join with the two united Roses, (the white and red) figuring the two divided houses of York and Lancaster, to make one perfect damask.

I omit the manner of his majesty's coming out of Scotland, and his royal entertainment unto this kingdom, with joyful acclamations of the people, and the unanimous suffrage of the whole nation, with his inauguration, coronation, and solemn and pompous passing from the Tower through the city of London to Westminster, with the several pageants and shows; his creating of barons, viscounts, and earls, and making of knights and knights baronets in great number, &c. the several ambassadors that came from all parts of Christendom, to congratulate his coming to the crown; his peace established with all Christian princes, especially with Spain; consisting of 37 articles; the calling of his first parliament, and his excellent delivery of his mind therein, &c. which would ask too long circumstance. I come to the first treason attempted against him, for which were arraigned at Winchester, the 15th of November, George Brook, brother to lord Cobham, Sir Griffin Markham, and Sir Edward Parham, knights; Watson and Clarke, Romish priests; Bartholomew Brooksby, esquire, and one Anthony Copley, gentleman, indicted.

*To conspire to kill the King,
To raise Rebellion,
To alter Religion,*

*To subvert the State,
To procure invasion by Strangers.*

And this was in the first year of his majesty's reign. For which were afterwards, also, arraigned and convicted, Henry Brook, lord Cobham, late lord warden of the Cinque Ports; Thomas, lord Grey, of Wilton, and Sir Walter Raleigh, late lord warden of the Stanneries. For which, the two priests, Watson and Clarke were executed at Winchester, the 29th of November, and George Brook was beheaded the fifth of December, but all the rest, by the king's gracious clemency had their lives pardoned, though some of them were brought to the block, expecting no other mercy but what the sharp axe of justice could afford them.

The second treason (of the like to which there was never a precedent) was the attempt to blow up the parliament house, in which, because it was so long predicted, I could desire to be the larger, but that it is of such late memory, and new in the mouths of all men, and so shall (no doubt) continue to all posterity. The fatal day appointed for that horrid and most execrable fact, was the fifth of November, in the third year of his majesty's reign. The names of the conspirators were Henry Garnet, a principal Jesuit resident in England; Robert Catesby, gentleman; Francis Tresham, esquire; Thomas Winter, gentleman; Thomas Percy; John Wright; Guy Vaux, who went by the name of John Johnson; master Percy's man; John Grant; Ambrose Rookwood; Sir Everard Digby, &c. The discovery thereof was as followeth: about ten days before the parliament should begin, the lord Monteagle, son and heir to lord Morley, living in the Strand, a stranger met his man in the street, and delivered him a letter to give to his lord, the contents were as followeth:

"My lord, out of the love I have to some of your friends, I have care of your preservation; therefore I would advise you, as you tender your life, to devise some excuse to shift off your attendance on the parliament, for God and man have conspired to punish the wickedness of this time; and think not slight of this advertisement, but retire yourself into your counntry, where you may expect the event in safety; for, though there be no appearance of any stir, yet, I say, they shall receive a terrible blow this

parliament, and yet they shall not see who hurt them. This counsel is not to be contemned and can do you no harm, for the danger is past so soon as you have burnt the letter; and I hope God will give you grace to make good use of it, to whose holy protection I commend you."

And this came to him without either date or name, in a counterfeit and imperfect hand. Which letter coming to the king's hand, when none of the council could sound the depth thereof, (though they were men of great wisdom and experience) his majesty was the first that took notice of these words in the letter, "They shall receive a terrible blow," which he conjectured to be by a blast of powder, and therefore commanded all the places under the parliament house to be searched the night before their first sitting; which charge was given to Sir Thomas Knevet, gentleman of the king's privy chamber, who, attended with a small number, came to the place at midnight, where, at the entry, he found Vaux, (Percy's pretended servant) booted and spurred, and apprehended him; and having removed certain billets and coals laid there under a colour, he first discovered one small barrel of powder, and afterwards all the rest, being in number 36, with other engines fit for that bloody purpose; there was also found in Vaux's pockets, a piece of touchwood, and a tinderbox to light it, and a match, which Percy and he had bought the day before to try conclusions for the long or short burning of the touchwood, prepared to give fire to the train of powder. Then they carried him bound, to be examined before the council, who would acknowledge no other name but John Johnson, Percy's man, stiffly denying that he knew any complotters in that horrible treason, justifying the act good and warrantable by religion, denying the king to be his liege lord, or God's annointed, because he held him for an heretic; only repenting that the deed was not done, saying that good would have concealed it, but the Devil himself only discovered it.

This treason afterwards broke into a practice of rebellion, of which the circumstances are too long to stand upon. Divers of them being besieged in an house together, as they were drying of wet powder, a blunt miller let a coal fall amongst it, by which most of them were cruelly scorched; tasting themselves, in some measure of that fire-plot prepa-

red for others. Catesby and Percy, issuing out of the house, were shot to death, and their heads afterwards set upon the parliament house, and their quarters upon the gates of Warwick; after them issued both the Wrights, who were slain also; Thomas Winter, hoping the same fate, was taken alive. These following were by an honourable trial arraigned at Westminster, Thomas Winter, late of Hardington in Warwickshire, gentleman; Guy Vaux, late of London, gentleman; Robert Keyes, late of London, gentleman; Thomas Bates, late of London, yeoman; these were first called to the bar, and alledged against them for plotting to blow up the parliament house with gun-powder, for taking oath and sacrament for secrecy, for hiring an house near unto it, for digging a mine, and finding the mine faulty, hiring a cellar for lodging of powder, match, and touchwood, into the cellar, to effect their treason.

(Robert Winter, late of Hardington, esquire, eldest brother to the aforesaid Thomas; John Grant, late of Yarthbrook, in Warwickshire, esquire; Robert Rookwood, late of Sunningfield, in Suffolk, esquire; these were indicted for being acquainted with the treason afterwards, for giving their full consents thereto, for taking the sacrament for secrecy, Sir Everard Digby, late of Galhurst, in Buckinghamshire, knight, for being acquainted with the treason, for giving assent, for taking an oath; all which were convicted, condemned, drawn, hanged, and quartered. Also, upon Friday the 28th of March, in the fourth year of the king, Henry Garnet, the provincial or principal of the English Jesuits, was arraigned at guildhall, in London, upon the same treason, and condemned, and afterwards drawn from the Tower to the west end of Paul's; and executed like the former traitors. Thus we see:

“ That from the old Lupanar Wolves were sent,
To undermine both crown and government:
Striving in Hell to register their names,
By blowing up the State in powder flames,” &c.

■

The word *Lupanar* comes from *Lupa*, a she wolf or prostitute, so was the wife of Faustulus, the nurse of the two infants, Romulus and Remus, (the first erectors of

Rome) called from Lupa, comes also Lupanar, that is a brothel-house; and idolatry is called fornication almost through the whole scripture, and from Rome had these archtraitors their incendiary, &c.

Amongst other royal visitants, Christianus, the fourth of that name, king of Denmark, came into England, royally attended, to see his brother-in-law, king James, and his natural sister, queen Anne, whom the king in person met on shipboard with prince Henry, the duke of Lenox, and divers of the nobility, and dined with him in his cabin; the two kings afterwards rode triumphantly through the city of London; the ambassadors of France, Spain, and Venice, being spectators of the solemnity. Here he was royally and magnificently entertained and feasted till his return, &c. who liked his welcome so well, that he came hither the second time. And in all the passages of his majesty's reign, there was nothing seen but peace, tranquillity, and quietness, there is no subject to write on, but of sundry plantations during his reign, as in Virginia, Bermudas, or the Summer Islands, &c. of men raised to office and honour, of his several embassies into foreign countries, to make peace and atonement between divided kingdoms, and his interchangeable entertaining of their ambassadors; of the marriage of the lady Elizabeth to the prince Palatine; of the death of that most hopeful plant of honour and royalty, prince Henry, of whom I have read this epitaph:

*In nature's law, 'tis a plain case to die;
No cunning lawyer can demur on that,
For cruel death and fatal destiny,
Serve all men with a final Latitat:
So brave prince Henry, when his cause was tried,
Confess'd the action, paid the debt, and died.*

I may also put you in remembrance of the new erecting of the artillery garden, of the new river brought to London, of the building of the New Exchange in the Strand, and Hick's hall, of censures in the Star-chamber, in the high commission court, the burning of the banqueting-house, &c. of Sir W. Raleigh's execution at Westminster.

ter, &c. the creating of George Villiers, gentleman, duke, and his mother, countess of Buckingham, with infinite other peaceable passages, but these are now out of my road. In the year 1618, upon Wednesday, the 18th of November, a blazing star appeared, and upon Tuesday, the second of March following, at Hampton Court, died queen Anne, to whom was made this epitaph:

*Her to invite, the great God sent his star,
Whose friends and kindred mighty princes are,
Who though they run the race of men and die,
Death seems but to refine their majesty:
So did this queen from hence her court remove,
And left the earth to be enthron'd above:
Then she is chang'd, not dead, no good prince dies,
But like the day-star, only set to rise.*

Upon Monday, the 16th of February, 1623, the king with the nobility, prepared to go to the parliament house, but that morning, died Lodowick, duke of Richmond and Lenox, at his lodging at the court in White-Hall, who is worthily remembered in this epitaph following:

*Are all diseases dead? or will death say,
She could not kill this prince another way?
Yes, it was so, for time and death conspired,
To make his death (as was his life) admired,
The commons were not summoned, (now I see)
Merely to move laws, but to mourn for thee.
No less than all the bishops could suffice
To wait upon so great a sacrifice.
The court, the altar was; the waiters, peers.
The myrrh and frankincense, great cousin's tears.
A braver offering, with more pomp and state,
Nor time, nor death, could ever celebrate.*

Of king James, his wisdom, integrity, bounty, his study of peace, which he made good in his motto, "Beati Pacifici," and for all his other singular virtues. He with a supererogative overplus made good what was before for many years predicted of him, all which may be concluded in this one epitaph made upon him:

*Can Christendom's great champion sink away
 Thus silently into a bed of clay?
 Can such a monarch die? and not to have
 An earthquake (at the least) to open his grave?
 Did there no meteors fright the Universe,
 Nor comet hold a torch to light his hearse?
 Was there no clap of thunder heard to tell
 All Christendom their loss, and ring his knell?
 Impartial fates; I see all princes then,
 Though they liv'd gods, yet they must die like men,
 And the same passing bell may toll for them,
 Which rung but now the beggar's requiem.
 When such a soul is from the earth bereaven,
 Methinks there should be triumph made in heaven;
 The stars should run at tilt at his decease,
 To welcome him into the place of peace:
 Who whilst he liv'd, in peace liv'd, and did strive,
 Being in peace, to keep peace still alive.
 No widow's curses, and no orphant's cries,
 Shall interrupt his hallow'd obsequies:
 For their slain husbands, or their father's lost
 In bloody war, to wake thy peaceful ghost.
 Let thy great predecessors boast the prize
 Of glorious (and yet bloody) victories.
 Let them upon their sepulchres expose,
 Triumphs of war, and spoil of foreign foes;
 And glory to have turn'd the harvest field,
 To a pitch'd camp, and ploughshare to a shield,
 So that on bloody furrows there were born
 As many blades of steel as now of corn;
 Yet shall they praise be greater, since thy joy
 Was to plant nations rather than destroy;
 And though no mortal trophy speak thy praise,
 Because no drop of blood hath stained thy days.
 Yet this sure truth, their greatest fame controls,
 They subdu'd bodies, thou hast conquered souls.
 Truth was thy banner, the thrice sacred word,
 Thy target and thy pen a two edg'd sword.
 But lo, when Spanish coast, Rome's canon shot,
 False Gowry's treason, Catesby's powder-plot,
 Could not destroy (all these thy fate did brave)
 A fever would needs bring thee to thy grave.
 For (being mortal) fate could not invent*

*His passage by a nobler instrument
 Than his own blood; which made him comprehend
 Within himself the glory of his end.
 Like to a circle, this rich diamond must
 Be cut by no means else than it's own dust.
 Thus is our sun set, never to return,
 Pay therefore tribute to his funeral urn.
 All peaceful souls, and with true sorrow's sense,
 Give unto him your hearts' benevolence.
 Of pious tears, then turn you from the west,
 To see the new sun rising in the east.*

Charles, the first of that name, king of England, began his reign on Sunday the 27th of March 1625, and the next day afterwards commanded by proclamation, that all officers and magistrates, of what degree or quality soever, throughout his whole dominions, should still use and exercise all such power and authority as they held from his father, (of blessed memory) until his pleasure was further known. And on Saturday, the seventh of May next ensuing, were performed the funeral rites of his father, king James, and his corpse, with all magnificence and state carried from Denmark-house, in the Strand, to Westminster abbey church; king Charles being the chief and principal mourner, attended with all the nobility, clergy, and judges, with sundry ambassadors, and all his officers and domestic servants, in mourning habits. His hearse being more royally adorned and attended than any of his predecessor kings; in which magnificent solemnity, his corpse was interred in the chapel royal, &c.

I should now proceed to the reign of the high, mighty, and invincible prince Charles, concerning whose sacred person, my rude pen dare not be so bold, nor with any of his just and royal proceedings, but am rather content to leave them to those of more knowing and better approved judgments, and more frequently versed in state business, and the laws and limits that belong to history and chronology than myself. Yet thus far, according to my weak talent, and *crassa minerva*, let me borrow leave to confer on him (though far short of his great meed and merit) a brief character. He is a prince wise and just, crowned with all the especial gifts of nature and fortune, but (which far transcends the rest) plenteously endowed with all heavenly

graces. Blest in a royal, chaste, and beautiful consort; blest with a most hopeful and numerous issue, conspicuous in the four cardinal virtues, justice, prudence, temperance, and fortitude; grounded in the three theological graces, faith, hope, and charity; illustrious in all other virtues, which generally adorn men, but make a prince greatly admired and gloriously eminent. Whom, with his incomparable queen, the unparalleled prince his son, with the rest of his royal issue, God Almighty, in his great providence, and infinite mercy, continue in long life, health, prosperity, and happiness, &c. &c.

THE END OF MERLIN AMBROSIOUS'S PROPHECIES.

A PROPHETICAL CHRONOLOGY of
MERLIN SILVESTRIS, by way of Questions and
 Answers between **MERLIN** and his Sister
GWENDOLINA; wherein is laid out most of the
 Kings successively that should reign in Great
 Britain from the Time wherein he lived, till
 the coming of the British Conqueror; and
 that such and his Race shall imperially reign
 for ever, both in Great Britain and elsewhere;
 copied literally from the *Myvyrian Archai-
 ology of Wales*, and the Translation from
Pugh's British and Out-landish Prophecies.

GWENDDYDD
CYFARCHAF i'm ehelaeth
 frawd

A welais i feddfaeth
Pwy a wledych oddiynaeth

MERDDIN
 Pan dyvo dylat dilyet uchaf
 O vor hyt ueryt dylat
 Diued, rlein orffen byt

GWENDDYDD
 Neu endy dylat dilyat uchaf
 Puy a vyd drevnaur a vi
 Llann a rann periglaur

MERDDIN
 Na rann periglaur na chierdaur
 Ny byd nac adreidyau'r allaur
 Yn y digwydo nef ar laur

GWENDDYDD
 Llallauc kan am hatebyd
 Myrdin mab Morvryn gelvyd
 Truan a chuedyl a duedydd

MERDDIN
 As dyuedaf y Wendyd
 Kany's duys ym kyverchyd
 Dylat diued rlein vyd

GWENDDYDD
 Cyfarchaf i'm ehelaeth frawd
 A welais i feddfaeth
 Pwy wledych oddynaeth

MERDDIN
 A rydywedais i hyt hyn
 Y Wendyd waessaf unbyn
 Diderbyd kymmeint timmyn

GWENDDYDD
 Llallauc kan am diderbyd
 Neu yr eneit dy vrodyr
 Pa bennaeth ynaeth a vyd

MERDDIN
 Gwendyd wenn ben mynogi
 As dyweduyf yn divri
 Na byd pennaeth byth uedy

Och anuyf or oer escar
 Guedi dyvot yn trydar
 Gan unben dewr diarchar
 Dy olo-di y dan dayer

Guascaraut auel awyr
 Puyll drut o duyff ot gerddir
 Guenassaut byt vraut ys dir

Och leas dy vedvaeth
 Neut yn ddiammaeth
 Hoet pa adoet pan dygir clot
 urno

Pwy draetho guir

O olochuyt kyvot a thravot
 llyvreu

Awen heb arsuýt	Diovrýt o haub a gar
A chuedyl Bun a hun brèu- duýt	Ym byu nyth diovrýdaf A hyt vraut yth goffaaf Dy ffosaut trallaut trymmaf
Maru Morgeneu marw Kyv- rennin	Escýt goruyd gynt Amlum ar dy afrddwl gynt Yt a fyn ol a aethynt
Maru Moryen mur trin	GWENDDYDD
Trymmaf oed am dy adoed di Vyrdin	Ámcnyrnaf fy eirýoes vrant Y ren ryw goreu Kymer gymun kyn angen
Digones Dovyð dicued arnaf	MERDDIN
Maru Mergeneu maru Mordaf	Ny chymmeraf gymun Gan ysgymun veneich Ac eu tuygeu ar eu clun Am cymuno Duw e hun
Maru Moryen maru a garau	GWENDDYDD
Vy un braut na cheryt arnaf	Gorchymynaf vy eirýoes vrant Yn y Gaer Werthevin Gogelit Duw o Vyrdin
Yr gueith Arderyd uyf klaß	MERDDIN
Kyvaruydyt a geissyaf	Gorchymynaf inheu vy eirýoes chwaer Yn y Gaer ni wesgrydd Gogelet Duw o Wendyð
Y Duw yth orchmynaf	
Ath orchmynaf ditheu	
Y ben y creaduryeu	
Guendyd wen atlam Kerdau	
Y Kerdau rydrigassant	
O dyvot clot Bodrydant	
Och Duw huyut a advant	
Guendyd na vyd anhylar	
Neu roet y lluyth ar y dayar	

THE TRANSLATION.

QUEEN Gwendolina, saluting her brother Merlin, demanded who should reign after such as by the rest of the prophecy is expressed?

MERLIN. When the wages of the dull people comes to be paid, which will come to pass after the reign of a virgin, then an end is at hand.

GWEN. I demand of my kind and wise brother, after the wages of the dull people comes to be paid, who will be ordained to rule? I will yet fully demand will churchmen share?

MER. Churchmen will not share, neither will bards, poets, and harpers, be in esteem; but I will not have thee

openly to publish that there shall be an ox born, which shall fall to the ground.

GWEN. Liberal Merlin, the son of Morvryn, be pleased to yield me an answer to three questions?

MER. I will resolve, Gwendolina, who art very importunate with me for thy request, the wages will be paid when a virgin queen is come and gone.

GWEN. I will demand of my kind and wise brother, who will reign after that?

MER. Thou foolish and naughty Gwendolina, I have told thee already, and yet thou art endless in thy proposals. A powerful and mighty army will come, with a strong band, who shall bear, rule, and continue, and then paradise to thy brethren the Britains.

GWEN. What kind of ruler will be then?

MER. Fair Gwendolina, I do shew and tell thee in sobriety, that there shall be no other ruler for ever after?

GWEN. Woe is one my dear of such cold separation, and to be deprived of a valiant and courageous brother, and of his good discourse, when thou art put to banishment under earth?

MER. An impatient storm shall make separation of men, which will prove a dear bargain, and as a sore plague to the strong, but let us betake ourselves away till the judgment day under the ground.

GWEN. When thy weakness fails, or thy life gone, which will be sorrowful unto me, then, who shall predict and deliver truth after thee?

MER. There will arise woe and misery, yet, after a certain world, with suppressing of books, but Gwendolina will be without feeling of these, so likewise thy discourse and revelations for a while without esteem.

GWEN. Morgenaf, Kowrenin, Moriab, and Morien the mason, all dead; but to be deprived of my kind brother, Merlin, will be a loss more sorrowful to me than all the rest.

MER. The Lord God was displeased with me, when he took from me my dear Morgenaf, Mordaf, and Morien, most dear unto me.

GWEN. My brother, check me not, notwithstanding my

unpleasing humour, for I am very weak and sick, therefore I commend thy body and soul to the Lord God.

MER. And I commend thee likewise to the head of the creatures, yes, thou fair Gwendolina, which art to leap off from thy songs.

GWEN. After thee my brother, wages shall fall, laud and praise shall grow to the vile people, but woe, how straight will their conditions be yet?

MER. Gwendolina, be not hopeless, but faithful, not sorrowful, but comfortable; thou that art dust and ashes, take thy farewell from the world, while I live, I will not forget thee, I will remember thy tender care and trouble with me, but now, I must be gone away after the race of the sons of men, which are gone from hence in peace, and shall be carried away swifter than the race of a horse, or blowing of the wind.

GWEN. I commend my kind and fair brother to be interred in the city of Gwrthenyn, at the north—whom God take to his blessed rest.

MER. I do commend my kind and fair sister to the tuition of the city, which shall never be scattered; which is the north city, or throne of God.

A PROPHECY OF MERLIN SILVESTRIS, set forth by way of discourse with a prophet which lived in his days, called by the name of PARCHELL, in English a PIG, wherein is foretold a conquest of Britain.

OIAN a parchellan mor enrhuffed
 Na budd un ennyd y Byd yn unwedd
 Pelled son saeson sael cywryssedd
 Ar brithwn haelon hil cymmwyedd
 A mi ddisgoganaf cyn fy niwedd
 Brython dros saeson brithwyr ai medd
 Ac yna in dawni ddawn gorfoledd
 Gwedi bod yn hir yn hwyr frydedd.

Oian a parchellan nym daw y cyngyd
 O glybod llais adar mor ddiergryd
 Teneu gwallt fy mhen fyllen nyd clyd
 Dolydd fy esgubawr nid mawr ei hyd
 Fyngrawn haf a mi nid ymweryd
 Cyn ysgar a Duw didawl cywyd
 A mi ddisgoganaf cyn diwedd byd
 Gwagedd heb wyledd a gwyr heb wrhyd

Oian a pharchellan, a phorchell ryni
 Teneu yw fy llen nyd llonydd imi
 Er gwaith Arderydd mi nym dorbi
 Cyn syrthiai awyr i lawr a llyr yn lli.

THE TRANSLATION.

HOEAN PIG, how strange it is, nay how unconstant the world is, that it will not continue one minute in the same mind or temper; and how, the subtle foundation of the English be far spread abroad, whose race will rule over the liberal Britons. But I will predict before my end, that the Britons will over-rule the English, and be possessed of Britain, and then shall they come to perfect honour after their long bondage.

HOEAN PIG, the long expected time will at last come to pass, by the noise of birds, which shall be heard at sea in a

and warlike manner; by such time, the hair of my head will be thin, and my skull will become cold; the treasure of my barn is but short, my summer crop of grain cannot save me; but I will predict that, before the end of times, women shall be without feast, and men without graves.

HORAN PIG, and a pig ready to starve for cold, my skull is but thin, and there is no hopes of rest unto me, yet all this shall come to pass before the dissolution of heaven and earth.

A prophecy grounded upon Taliesin and both the Merlins.

WE shall have London divided, with fierceness unto it—we shall have uproar upon the mountains and rich vallies—we shall find the neighbouring nations bestiring themselves for offensive and defensive wars, and in the end we shall be possessed of a valley abounding with wheat, and before a settlement, we shall find a neighbour that will condole our troubles.

We shall have uproar and treacherous attempts, with willing prepensed plots and combinations—we shall have sorry tokens of the heaving down of great oaks, and after a white spring, we shall have wars from the woman—for want of patience, we shall have deceitful troubles from the Lily.

We shall gain by the loss of one field, strongly armed and fortified cities; and when we begin to carry the conquest, we shall obtain Brecknock—we shall have heavy troubles and distractions from the man with the white robes crossed in his proceedings and enterprizes, who shall come to his end; and then the council of a prisoner will be as unconstant as the wind.

They will hatch a snare from the open flaming fire, but we shall have a timely separation, as true as the penny is

round; and then the chief flowers of England will vanish and decay, and also, the cat and weasel will be in havock.

The remembrance of old dragons will be disputed by force of sharp pointed weapons; the lion with the strong and sure grappling will bridle the body of the clawed lion by the maw, then shall we have the bemoaning of a divided face, but we shall have a gift from a mighty powerful man.

We shall have hot constitution with the vanquished Mouldwrap about castles and forts, then the wings of the Scots will appear like a violent burning fire. I have sung a line of prophecy from the ancient prophecies to the dark and cloudy council, and that the hawk shall challenge too far.

A Raven and a Swallow will make a brave and valiant chace—there will arise from the south a sword with a golden cloak—we shall have a Stag that will conquer and keep towns and castles with mighty strength—we shall have the golden horns and aged stag.

We shall have nine of the same name, and shall have watchful men—we shall have fair weather after a storm, for clouds or the noise of wars will vanish away, and we shall have a renowned king—the noise of trumpets will likewise vanish, and then we shall have a day of coronation, which will be in the chastising month before the month of May.

We shall have a summer overflown with blood, and England in havock, and shall be possessed of the territories and treasures of the unhappy conquered enemy, and shall have an aged and white bearded conqueror that shall bear rule over Jaek and John, and shall scatter them to a wandering condition.

The poet after his long progress in discovering what shall befall England after Henry the eighth; pours his hearty prayer to Christ for the British conqueror, as also of the ninth Henry; and that Christ (for his passion's sake) may preserve, protect, and exalt them more and more in their glorious conquests.

CAN

BROPHWYDOLIAETH

MYRDDIN.

Wedi ei chymmeryd allan o Llyfr y Daroganau

GAN W. B. EGLWYSIG.

CHWI fonedd a chyffredin, y Cymry a'r Saeson pur,
O dewch yn nes i'r winllan i weithio am eich hur;
Mae'r udgorn wrth ein drysau, ni wa i ddim pa bryd
Y daw ein Prynwr Iesu i farnu hyn o fyd.

2.

Ceir gweled byd aflonydd, mewn trefydd ac mewn gwlad,
Pob un yn ladd ei gilydd—yn ymolch yn eu gwa'd;
Ni chredir mo'r gwirionedd na'r sawl y sydd ag e',
Y celwydd, dyna'r testun, sy'n cael ei barch a'i le.

3.

Ceir clywed cloch hen Arthur yn canu'n fawr ei rhwysc,
I maes o dre Caerlleon yn ymyl dyffryn Wysc,
Yn seinio dan arwyddion yn erbyn Owen draw,
Medd Llyfr y D'roganaus y'n warent yn ein llaw.

4.

Fe ddaw y Llew i'r Mwythig yn gwisgo arfau Cent,
A'r Hebog heno ynteu yn rowndio castell Gwent;
Fe ddaw y Milgi a'r Llwynog i Aberhonddu fawr,
Fe ddaw y Gath a'r Weingci ar hyd glân Towi i lawr.

5.

Fe ddaw y Twrc o'r India â nifer mawr eu stwr,
A'r fraint bydd coron Lloegr yn ennill ar y dw'r;
Fe ddaw yr holl Iuddewon i gyd i gredu yn Nghrist,
A'r Highlanders i Loegr, ond dyna newydd trist.

6.

Ceir gweled daear grynfaau (a'r coedydd mawrion sy'),
Ceir gweled gwaed y Saeson yn Aberhonddu fry,
Yn rhedeg hyd heolydd fel tonau'r môr eu swm,
Waith brad y cillill hirion, hwy gant ddialedd trwm.

7.

Ceir gweled Owen lawgoch yn d'od i Frydain Fawr,
Ceir gweled newyn ceanog yn nhref Caerlleon Gawr:
Ceir gweled Towi'n waedlyd, a chlwyf ar Edmwnt goch,
Waith bod yn aber Milffert o blaid i'r Saeson moch.

8.

O cawn ni weled gwaefyd yn lle llawenydd clir,
A'r Pasg ar fai newidir, a hyny cyn b'o hir;
Ceir gweled lach yn ddifrad gan Gymry ar y tir,
Medd Llyfr y D'roganau, mae'r geiriau yn ddigon gwir.

9.

Cewch glywed taro larwm, cewch hefyd ddeigran drud,
Gwylofain mawr gwylofus, cyn diwedd hyn o fyd;
Trwy ryfel hwy ddifethant wrth rodio tua'r dw'r
Nes b'o saith o fenywod wrth odre' yr un gwr.

10.

Gwaefydd i'r Saeson creulon eu geni i'r byd erioed,
Can's rhai fydd yn y creigydd ac ereill yn y coed,
Fe dorir pen ei cadpen wrth allor bord Llandaf,
Waith lladron fydd yn fwrddrwy'r, ond dyna gredit braf.

11.

Daw yno emprwr arall yn fwy ei rwysg yn rhydd,
Fe orfydd cilio'n gandryll i gastell tre' Caerdydd;
Pan elo gynta' i'r castell, fe roddiff uchel gri,
Ac yna llef e' dair-gwaith, gwae fi! gwae fi! gwae fi!

12.

O'r castell i'r drws bychan fe ddiango hwn i ma's,
Ar ben y Rhiwiau Cochion fe-leddir brwnt ei ffâs,
Ac yna fe amwisgir mewn tŷ a'i wedd o 'whith,
Medd Llyfr y D'roganau, mae'r *warrant* yn ein plith.

13.

Fe godir gwŷr Morganwg o gastell tre' Caerdydd,
I'r Ffilldir Aur yn amlwg, ond dyna newydd prudd,
I'r frân i gael ei hymborth o gig a gwaed yn llif,
Nes delo'r Frân big-felen i gwpla hyn o rif.

14.

Pan delo'r Frân i'r canol, ac yna lldia'r Ci,
Y goreu o farchogion, fe dorir penau tri,
Wrth ffynon Llys-ar-Fronydd, ar foreu llariaidd llon,
Medd Llyfr y D'roganau, mae'r *warrant* ger ein bryn.

15.

Ceir gweled y gâd a'r dyrfa yn dwad i Nant-y-glo,
Wrth gyfri' rhai'n a'u swmo, ceir gweled beth y f'o;

Ceir gweled y crog-brenni a'r croesau mawr yn llyn,
A naw mis y cebystrau tu fewn i'r ynys hyn.

16.

Clywir llef yn Abertawe, ac ochain mawr a ohri,
Clywir llef yn Abermyrddyn, pan cwrddo deunaw llu;
Ac yno bydd rhyfela, a diwedd rhyfel tyn,
Medd Llyfr y D'roganau, os gwyrthiau Duw a'i myn.

17.

Bydd penau plant deunaw mlwydd yn ddigon llwyd
grudd,

Bydd disglair arfau, gloywon gan Iesu yr hwn a fydd;
Ac yno fe ddaw'r G'lomen, ni bydd hi hanner iach,
Nes llosgi nyth y Barcut am ddwyn ei chywion bach.

18.

Ceir gweled yn Nghaerfyrddin ymrafael cethin tyn,
Cyn delo dial arni, ei chaerau syrth yn syn;
O achos ymgynghori y'mhlaid y Barcut du,
Mae Llyfr y D'roganau yn dweud y geiriau yn hy.

19.

Ceir gwel'd yn Aber Milffwrdd ymladdfa fel y tân,
A'r milwyr fydd yn cwmpo trwy'r cleddyf fawr a mân,
Fe saif y Protestaniaid yn ddewr o blaid y ffydd,
Hwy gant y fuddugoliaeth yn odiaeth ddiwedd dydd.

20.

Daw newid dyddiau ac amser, ceir gweled ger ein bron,
Ddiffyg dw'r a ffrwythau tu fewn i'r ynys hon:
Ceir clywed llosgi Dublin, mae hyn yn ddigon gwir,
Medd Llyfr y D'roganau, a hyny cyn bo hir.

21.

Ceir gwel'd ymladdfa greulon ar Gefen-cethin fryn,
A'r gwaed a fydd yn lifo ar hyd cleddyfau'n llyn;
A'r cyrn a fydd yn canu o gwmpas Abernant,
Ac ar Riw-cyrph, ond odid, y lleddir llawer cant.

22.

Ceir gwel'd y dyddiau enwog pan fyddo'r aur yn nghrog,
A'r arian wedi eu colli, yn talu llawer hog,
Ceir gweled aur dieithriaid yn reuno yn ein bro,
A phawb fydd yn eu caru, trwy'u gosod dan y clo.

23.

Ceir gweled pobl Cymru cyn hyny rony'n bach,
~~Yn gwerthu eu hŷd a'u henllyn i'r cefnfor am aur crach,~~
Bydd gwasgu ar dlodion, ond ydyw hyn yn chwith,
Medd Llyfr y D'roganau, mae'r warant yn ein plith.

24.

Cyn delo hyn mewn effaith, ceir gwel'd arwyddion maith,
 Daw llong dros Gefen-berwyn, fe gyll y Cymry'u hiaith;
 Daw tarw i ben y clochdy Caerfyrddin hoywedd sydd,
 A'r dw'r a deriff dani, ond dyna newydd prudd.

25.

Chwi glywsoch losgi Llundain, cewch wel'd ei mharc o
 bell,

Waith cysgu yn ei phechod heb ofni Duw na dyn,
 Er nad yw'n ulw i'w gweled, nid yw hi ronyn gwell;
 Hi gaiff ei llwyr ddystrywio, ni welir ond ei Hun.

26.

Un fil a chwech cant cyfain, a thrugain mlwydd ac wyth,
 Oedd oedran Crist ein Prynwr pan gwnaethpwyd hyn o
 fwyth,

I gael rhybuddio'r Cymry a chyffro pawb o'r byd,
 I alw ar Dduw'n garedig, i attal hyn o lid.

DIWEDD.

INDEX.

	PAGE
RCHIGALLO, the character of	11
the death of	12
agus made king	16
us made ruler of Britain	19
the death of	ib.
piodotus king of the Britons	20
rica first called Little Britain	26
s denies succour to Britain	28
enus commiserates the Britons	ib.
is de Insulis (Dr.)	43
's predictions from the planets	ib.
osius and Uter, the king's younger brothers	46
invade the land at Totness	55
ius and Uter maintainers of the true religion	56
r (King) meant by the Boar of Cornwall	57
ius Ambrosius's heroical acts against the Saxons	59
r, (King) a summary of his conquests	67
a custom derived from	ib.
the death of	68
acy, a just reward for	70
r (King) and his queen's bones found in the vale of A-	
na	125
(city) taken by the Christians	130
ia, (Duke) the death of	135
rity by which England claimed homage from the Scots	
gs	154
ourt, the victorious battle of	202
es of peace concluded between England and France	205
, (St.) the battle of	218
r, (Prince) marrieth to Catherine of Spain	242
the death of	ib.
, called Virgo—Justice	275
(Queen) the death and epitaph of	290
E, how descended	1
cousin to Corinæus	2
how he divided the kingdom	ib.
Q Q	

	PAGE
Brute, the death of	2
Bath, by whom built	4
(Hot) the first founder of	ib.
Bladud, the death of	ib.
Britain governed by four dukes	7
Belinus and Brennus, the unity of	8
Belingsgate, the building of	9
Brennus, the death of	ib.
Blegabridus, a cunning musician	12
Britain made tributary to Rome	15
Birth of our Saviour	ib.
Bassianus made king of Britain	18
Britain forsaken by the Romans	28
the great distress of	ib.
how long without a king	29
Balaam the son of Bosor	43
British lords, an assembly of	47
Briton, a valiant	49
Britain first called England	ib.
much distressed	75
Britons (conquering) fall to dissention	80
Battle-abbey, in Sussex, the conflict of	100
Bigot (Hugh) the miserable death of	112
Barons, their oration to the soldiers	113
Baldwin (Earl) encourageth the king's soldiers	ib.
Becket (Thomas) created archbishop of Canterbury	120
opposeth king Henry	ib.
reconciled to the king	ib.
curseth the king	121
slain going to the altar	ib.
the inscription over his tomb	ib.
Burgundy (Duke) 's oration to his soldiers	131
the death of	ib.
Barons, their letter to the king, and the answer	144
Battle between king Henry III. and the barons	147
Baliol (Sir John) made king of Scotland	155
Bruce (Robert le) warreth against England	163
Berwick betrayed to the Scots	ib.
Barons, the assembly of	164
their petition	ib.
Baldock (Robert) made lord chancellor	165
Bristol town and castle taken	168
Baldock (chancellor) dieth in Newgate	ib.
Baliol (Sir Edward) crowned king of Scotland	172
Bedford (Duke) regent to Henry VI.	209
's victories in France	210

INDEX.

	307
	PAGE
Bedford, (Duke) the death of	211
Blue Beard	213
Buckingham (Duke) 's oration in the guild-hall	230
not accessory to the murder of the two princes	
in the tower	231
insidiadeth against the king	232
taketh arms	233
the death of	ib.
Banister's perfidiousness punished	ib.
Bosworth, the battle of	235
Burgundy (Duchess) an enemy to the king	237
's subtilty	240
Brandon (Charles) married to the French queen, Henry	
VIII's sister	247
Britany, Picardy, and France, invaded by the English	248
Bible, commanded to be read in churches	249
Boulogne, the siege of—and taken by Henry VIII.	252
 CARLISLE, the building of	 4
Canterbury, the building of	ib.
Cordeila's love to, her father	5
the death of	ib.
Corneway, an indulgent mother	8
Cities built by Brennus	9
Cecilius, the guardianship of	10
Cassibelan made king of Britain	13
Computation of the time of our Saviour's birth	15
Cathnesse in Scotland, when and by whom inhabited	17
Coil king of Britain	ib.
Carassius aspireth to the British crown	19
Coil made king of Britain	20
Constantius's first coming into Britain	21
married to Helena	ib.
crowned emperor	ib.
the great devotion and zeal of	ib.
buried at York	ib.
Constantine made king of Britain	21
Cross, the first used in any imperial eagle	22
Constantine purchaseth the title of The Great	23
infatuated by the Arian heresy	24
the Roman ruleth Britain and revolteth	27
Constantius sent against him	ib.
Constantine (King) 's issue	30
how he disposed of his children	ib.
the death of	ib.
Constantius made king of Britain	ib.

	PAGE
Constantine (King) slain by his guard	45
Cruelty changed into piety	53
Cornwall, (Duke) the death of	65
Constantine, (King) the noble victories of	68
Conanus (King) and his conditions	69
Caretius, a most wicked king	ib.
Cadwallo (King) and his fortune	75
returns to Britain	ib.
receiveth the Pzanda into league	ib.
's victories over the Northumbers	76
's pretended miracle	ib.
kills seven kings	77
the brazen man how meant	78
a continuation of the history of	79
Cadwalader, the last king of the Britons	80
Canutus (King) conquered by Edmund	85
Combat between Canutus and Edmund	86
Canutus makes the first motion of peace	ib.
sole monarch of England	87
's conscious justice	88
the death of	89
's son, Harold, king of England	ib.
's step-mother banished	ib.
Chester, (Bishop) sent to the Tower	160
Catherine (Queen) sent to France, and royally received	166
Cressy's famous field won by the English and the French	
king wounded	175
Calais won by the English	ib.
Charles, duke of Normandy, escapes from the battle of Poitiers	178
Commons, an insurrection of	182
captains of the	ib.
take the Tower, &c. &c.	183
defeated and dispersed	184
Charles of France prisoner with Henry V.	206
the Daulphin, and Philip, duke of Burgoin, reconciled	211
Cade, (Jack) the insurrection of	213
the pride of	ib.
enters London	ib.
's cunning to delude the people	214
the injustice, robbery, and death of	ib.
Clarence (Duke) revolteth from the lords	226
murdered	228
Commotions in Devonshire and Cornwall, and the chief of the rebels executed	243

INDEX.

309

PAGE

Charles V. emperor of Germany made knight of the Garter	247
Catherine, queen of Henry VIII. the death of	249
Cranmer, Latimer, and Ridley, the death of	264
Calais lost by the English	271
Charles (Prince) proclaimed king	291
his reign	292
DONWALLO reduceth Britain to a monarchy	7
the first crowned king of Britain	8
Denmark made tributary to Britain	10
Difference between Androgeus and Cassibelan	15
Danish invasion	81
Dane-gelt, a tribute so called	82
Danes, a general massacre of	ib.
their pride and insolence over Britain	83
called lords, and in contempt lurdans	ib.
their persecution, and how long it continued	92
Differences between the English and French kings	129
Don Peter, the death of	180
Differences between the dukes of Hereford and Norfolk,	
and both banished	189
Divers turnaments and justs performed in Smithfield, be-	
tween Englishmen and strangers	198
Dorset (Marquis) discharged of his protectorship	229
Difference between king Richard and the duke of Buck-	
ingham	232
Divers suffering for denying Henry VIII's supremacy	250
Denabelt (Monsieur) ambassador from the French king	253
's entertainment by prince Edward	254
Dudley, (Guilford) the death of	263
Denmark (King) cometh to England	289
EDINBURGH , the castle of	4
Elanius, the death of	11
Elidorius, the mildness of	12
the third time made king	ib.
Ethelred (King) the son of Alfrida	80
Edward eldest son of king Edgar made king	81
's wicked step-mother	ib.
's base murder	ib.
Etheldred's marriage and issue	ib.
Elphricus, (earl and admiral) turns traitor, and his son pu-	
nished	82
Edricus intended by the snake	ib.
Etheldredus (King) 's second marriage	ib.
Edricus created duke of Mercia	84

	PAGE
Etheldredus and his queen forced to fly the land	84
Elphigus (Bishop) 's imprisonment and murder	ib.
Etheldredus, the death of	ib.
Edricus, the treason of	85
Edmund (King) fighting a duel with Canutus, but are reconciled	86
slain by the traitor Edricus	87
Edmund Ironside, what became of his sons	88
Edward, surnamed the Confessor, made king	94
's mother accused of adultery with Alwin, bishop of Winchester	ib.
English chronicles, what they affirm to be truth	ib.
Emma, wife to king Canutus, acquitted of the suspicion of incontinency	95
Edward the Confessor, the death of	96
England invaded by the Danes	97
Eustace the son of king Stephen	115
the death of	116
Ely, (Bishop) made vicegerent	129
the tyranny of	133
English lords revolt from Lewis to king Henry	143
Edward (Prince) 's expedition to the Holy Land	149
's valour—wounded at Acre	150
the coronation of—called Long-shanks	151
Eleanor, (Queen) the death of	153
Edward, (King) the issue of	ib.
's mother's death	ib.
taketh Berwick	156
's victory at Dunbar	ib.
taketh Edinburgh castle, Crown, &c.	ib.
marrieth the French king's sister	157
Edward II. created 404 knights	ib.
's last victory over the Scots	158
swears the barons	ib.
's death and epitaph	ib.
a prophecy of his reign	159
's coronation	ib.
Edward III. the birth of	160
Edward II. the character of	162
's power against Scotland	163
Edward (Prince) created duke of Guien	166
contracted to the daughter of the earl of Henau	167
Edward (King) and the Spencers fly to Wales	168
pursued by the queen	ib.
deposed of all kingly power	169
's great repentance	ib.

INDEX.

	311
	PAGE
Edward III. crowned	170
's father's death	171
besiegeth Berwick	172
English ships taken by the French	173
Edward III. lays claim to the French crown	ib.
's eldest son created prince of Wales	174
instituteth the Order of the Garter	ib.
besiegeth Calais	175
Edward, (Prince) why called the Black Prince	ib.
's victories over the French	176
the death of	180
Edward III. the death of	181
's royal issue and epitaph	ib.
Edward, (Prince) the birth of	217
Edward IV. (earl of March) made king	221
's coronation	222
a prophecy of his reign	ib.
marrieth the lady Elizabeth Gray, who is crowned	223
queen	224
flies the land	224
proclaimed usurper, and the duke of Gloucester	225
traitor	ib.
landeth at Ravenspur	226
brought Henry to the field	226
's victory	ib.
Edward (Prince) the murder of	227
Edward IV. the death of	228
a prophecy thereof	ib.
godfather to perkin Warbeck	240
Elizabeth, (Queen) the death of	242
England and France defy the emperor	243
Elizabeth, (Lady) the birth of	249
Edward, (Prince) the birth of	ib.
Essex, (Earl) the death of	251
Edward VI. crowned	254
's naval victory	255
proved to be a Cæsar by prophetic explanation	258
's death, character, and zeal to propagate true	259
religion	ib.
's knowledge of literature	272
Elizabeth (Lady) proclaimed queen	ib.
prophecy and calculation of her birth and reign	274
brief catalogue of her troubles	ib.
who were her greatest adversaries	275
's passage through London to her coronation	

	PAGE
Elizabeth's deportment at the speeches of the pageants	276
's construction of	278
's love of the Bible	280
met by the mayor and aldermen	ib.
cometh to Ludgate	ib.
's coronation	281
foreign and domestic attempts against her	ib.
FERREX and Porrex (Kings) the reign of	6
's death	ib.
French (King) departs to his country	130
Frederick, (Emperor) the death of	143
Fonkirk, the battle of	157
French (King) refuseth to assist his sister	166
Foxes, the policy of	195
Floden-field, the battle of—the Scots king slain	247
Faux, (Guy) an obstinate traitor apprehended	287
GOGMAGOG, the fall of	2
Glamorgan, how called	6
Gorbodue, (King) the reign of	ib.
Ganders, the feast of	9
Greece invaded by Brennus	10
Gurguintus with the red beard	ib.
Gorbomanus the son of Morindus	11
the second	12
Guiderius, king of Britain	16
Glocester called Claudio Cestria	ib.
Gratian, king of Britain	27
the death of	ib.
Guanus and Melga	ib.
Guethelinus, archbishop of London	28
Gothlois, duke of Cornwal, the death of	64
God the justifier of innocence	73
's prudence in the preservation of children	74
Goodwin (Earl) 's sons and daughter	92
and his six sons meant in the prophecy—the seven	
heads by their bloody projects	93
the policy and cruelty of	ib.
and his sons escape from the land	95
restoration of	ib.
's remarkable death	96
Gavestone (Pierce) revoked from banishment	159
the marriage of	ib.
created earl of Cornwal	ib.
banished to Ireland	160

INDEX.

313
PAGE

Gavestone abaseth the peers	160
robs the king's treasury	ib.
banished to Flanders, and his death	ib.
Glocester (Duke) murdered	188
Glocester (Duke) protector of Henry VI.	209
arrested and murdered in his bed	212
(protector of king Edward) the tyranny of	229
takes upon himself to be king	231
proclaimed by the name of Richard III.	ib.
Gardner (Bishop) committed to the Tower	255
Gray (Lady Jane) proclaimed queen	260
's death, character, and age	263
Garnet (Henry) provincial of the Jesuits executed	288
HUMBER. (River) how came to be so called	2
Hely , the government of	13
Hamo , a great Roman captain	16
Helena , mother of Constantine	23
findeth the cross	ib.
Honorius , the emperor	28
Hely , the father of king Lud	34
Headfield , the battle of	78
Hoc or Hop Monday	83
Harold , son of Canutus	89
Hardy Canutus (Dane) crowned king of England	91
's barbarity to his brother	ib.
's riot and excess	92
dieth drinking	ib.
Harold saileth to Normandy	96
crowned king of England	97
victorious in a bloody battle	ib.
's ambition thought to be the cause of the loss of	
another battle	98
's answer to duke William	ib.
sends spies to the king's host	100
slain by an arrow	101
Henry I. (William the Conqueror's son) usurpeth the crown	107
the death of	110
how spoken of after his death	111
Henry , duke of Normandy, the marriage of	115
landeth in England, and a peace meditated	116
Henry II. the coronation of	118
prophecy of his reign, and partly explained	ib.
's character, issue, and dominion	119
takes the Scots king prisoner	ib.

	PAGE
Henry, no king before him of such large empire	120
Henry III. crowned king by his father	122
imprisons the queen, and she is released by her sons	ib.
Henry II. laboureth for a divorce between him and his wife	124
receives sundry admonitions	ib.
refuseth to be general for the Holy Land	127
the death of	128
Henry IV. crowned king	142
taken prisoner by the barons	147
the death and epitaph of	148
Hallidown Hill, the famous battle of	172
Hereford (Duke) landeth at Ravenspur	190
claims the crown	191
Henry IV. installeth 41 knights of the Bath	193
the champion of	194
a prophecy of his reign	ib.
marrieth with the duchess of Britain	198
sumptuous buildings in his reign	ib.
prepares a voyage to the Holy Land	200
falls sick and dieth	ib.
Henry V. crowned	201
's reign prophesied of	202
prepareth against France	ib.
landeth in Normandy	ib.
enviored by the French	203
's rare policy	ib.
cometh to England	204
landeth in Normandy	205
's many conquests—taketh Rouen	ib.
marrieth the lady Catherine	206
made heir apparent to the French crown	ib.
's queen feasted at Paris	207
Henry VI. the birth of	ib.
Henry V. the death of	208
Henry VI. made king	209
the coronation of	210
crowned at Paris	ib.
a prophecy of his reign	211
marrieth the lady Margaret, the cause of many	
miseries	212
prophecy explained	215
creates two earls	217
taken prisoner	218
deposed	221
's queen fly to Scotland	222
Hexham, the battle of	223

INDEX.

318
PAGE

Henry taken and sent to the Tower	229
again made king	224
's oath to the York citizens	225
again made prisoner	226
sent to the Tower	227
stabbed to death	ib.
Hastings, (Lord) the death of	230
Henry VII. landeth at Milford-Haven	234
's host	235
's victory	237
's coronation, and his queen's	ib.
a prophecy of his reign	ib.
the death of	244
is much favoured by the bishops of Rome	245
's great riches at his death	ib.
Henry VIII. the coronation of	ib.
the prophecy about him	ib.
Henry, (Prince) the birth and death of	246
Henry (King) assisteth Spain—invadeth France	247
seeks a divorce with his wife	248
marrieth the lady Anne Bullen	249
marrieth the lady Jane Seymour	ib.
Hertford (Earl) 's voyage to Scotland	252
Henry invadeth France	ib.
the death of	254
Henry (Prince) 's epitaph	289
IRELAND, the first plantation of	10
Isimbardus, nephew to Lewis king of France	70
JAGO, (King) the reign of	6
Judon, a cruel mother	ib.
Julius Cæsar's ambition to conquer this island	14
the first attempt and success of	ib.
the second attempt of	ib.
the third attempt of	15
Jeffrey Plantaginet, the death of	115
Jerusalem, nine Christian kings reign over	126
John reconciled to his brother, king Richard	135
made king of England	136
called the Fox—afterwards the Leopard	137
the character of	ib.
the marriage and issue of	ib.
looseth Normandy	ib.
and the arch-bishop quarrel	ib.

	PAGE
John , the obstinacy of	138
proclamation of	ib.
extorteth from the clergy	ib.
submitteth to the pope, delivereth up his crown, and	
pays a yearly tribute	140, 141
the death of	142
John , king of France, taken prisoner in the battle of Poitiers and many of the nobility killed and wounded	178
dieth at the Savoy	179
John of Gaunt's title to Spain	180
claims his title	186
the death of	189
Joan of Arc, burnt for a witch	210
James king of Scotland, marrieth the lady Margaret	242
his lineal title to the crown of England, &c.	283
's prophecy	284
born with a lion on his breast	285
the first treason attempted against him	ib.
his wisdom—the discovery of the powder plot	287
the funeral of	291
KIMARUS , the death of	11
Knolls , (Sir Robert)	198
Knights (forty-five) created at Leith	262
LEICESTER , by whom built	4
Leir , three daughters of	ib.
Legions , (Caerleon) the city of	8
Lud , (King) repaired old castles, &c.	13
's town, now London	ib.
Lucius , the first Christian king in Britain	17
dieth without issue	18
Lucius , the Roman emperor, slain by king Arthur	68
London's first charter granted by king William	105
Londoners and Kentishmen take king Stephen's part	114
London bridge first built of stone	139
the first mayor and sheriffs of	ib.
Lewis , son to the French king, called to England by the barons	144
Llewelyn , prince of Wales, rebelleth	151
imploreth for mercy	ib.
the death of	151
's epitaph, by a Welsh poet	152
the answer of by an Englishman	ib.
London Tower taken by the citizens	168
Lords conspire against king Henry	195

INDEX.

	317
	PAGE
Leicester, a parliament held at	208
Lords arrested	ib.
fly, and leave king Henry master of the field	255
Latian meant Hely	275
Lupanar, called also Acca Laneratia	288
MADAN, the death of	3
Memprisius, the death of	ib.
the numerous issue of	ib.
Morindus, the character of	11
Morgan, the reign of	12
Marius, king of Britain	17
Maxentius drowned	22
Maximian's first entrance into Britain	25
breaketh his oath	26
the death of	27
MEALIN, the birth of	40
the son of a king's daughter	ib.
and Plato had fathers alike	ib.
whether a Christian or an heathen	ib.
's prophecies justified by truth	43
born in the reign of king Vortigern	45
city from him so called	52
first discovered, and his mother appearing before	ib.
the king	ib.
's speech to the king	53
's words found true	ib.
's first prophecy	54
by some held to be a magician	57
deviseth sports to make the king merry	ib.
leaveth the king	58
's prophecy of the king's death	ib.
of Uterpendragon	ib.
bringeth stones from Ireland	59
sent for by the king	63
's strange metamorphoses	ib.
Mordred slain by king Arthur	68
Malgo's description and character	69
Mother, a cruel purpose of a	74
Mercia and Northumberland's dukes submitting	101
Maud, (Empress) the lords swearing to her succession	110
's second marriage	ib.
's landing in England	113
Margaret (Queen) sent to France, and royally received by	166
her brother	166
landeth in Suffolk, and pursueth the king	167

	PAGE
Mortimer, (Sir Roger) the pride of, and articles exhibited	
against him by parliament	171
the death of	172
Margaret, queen of Henry V. crowned	207
and her council sway all	211
's practice against the lords	219
against the earls of Warwick and Sa-	
lisbury	ib.
again victorious	221
flieth into Scotland	222
invadeth England	223
Montacute (Marquis) 's connivance	226
the death of	ib.
Mary, (Lady) the birth of	247
Moore, (Sir Thomas) the death of	249
Magnificent shows	254
Musselborough field, the battle of	ib.
Mary (Lady) crowned queen	261
's reign predicted	ib.
Morgan, (Judge) the death of	263
Mary, (Queen) the tyranny of	264
why favourable to the Romish religion	ib.
purposeth to marry cardinal Pole	265
insurrections in her reign	267
's marriage with prince Philip of Spain	270
rumoured to be with child	271
's sorrow for the loss of Calais	ib.
's death	272
buried without a monument	ib.
Merlin, a prophecy conferred on	282
Monteagle, (Lord) a letter to	286
NEUSTRIA understood to be Normandy	93
Normandy, the duke of	98
Norman blood in 70 years extirpated	117
Noblemen of France slain at Poitiers	178
Nottingham, (Earl) the perfidious act of	188
Normandy and France made one monarchy	206
Northampton, the battle of	220
Northumberland and Suffolk, (Dukes) insidiating against the	
protector and admiral	255
their wives betray them	256
their ambition	260
Northumberland (Duke) 's commission to fetch in the lady	
Mary	261
arrested of high treason	ib.

INDEX.

	310
	PAGE
Northumberland's death	262
OCTAVIAN made deputy governor of Britain	22
usurpeth the crown	24
made absolute king of Britain	25
Oswaldus, (St.) the story of	77
's charity and temperance to the poor	ib.
the death of	78
Omen, a good	99
Owen Glendour, the rebellion of	197
Oxford (Earl) 's valour	226
Oneile (the Great) made earl of Tyrone	251
PROPHETS, predictors, and seers	39
Prophetical poets	ib.
Prophets and philosophers in all nations	41
Prophecy explained	71
Pretended miracle	77
explained	99
Perjury punished by the hand of God	111
Prophecy—partly explained	112
Patriarch, the answer of to Henry II.	127
proud and peremptory	ib.
Pope accurseth England	138
the bull of the	ib.
acquits the lords, &c. of their allegiance	ib.
the thunderings of	140
Pomfret (Peter of)	141
Prophecy of Henry III.	142
another of the same	149
Parliament of White Bands	164
held at Northampton	171
Poictiers, famous battle and manner of	177
Pierce, (Alice) the king's concubine	180
Parliament, summoned to rectify the common-wealth—	
persons adjudged to suffer death	186
Peace concluded between England and France	187, 247, 253
Pole (Cardinal) from his minority	264
's employment to the emperor and to the French king	265
's mother, the countess of Salisbury, beheaded	ib.
twice elected pope	ib.
made archbishop of Canterbury	266
the death of	ib.
Philip (Prince) of Spain landeth at Southampton	267
presented with the Order of the Garter	ib.
's demeanor to the people	268

	PAGE
Philip meeting with the queen	268
the apparel of	269
made king of Naples and Jerusalem	ib.
married to queen Mary	ib.
and Mary, their royal titles and entertainments by	
the city of London	270
favoureth the lady Elizabeth	271
leaveth the land	ib.
Pageants addressing queen Elizabeth at Fenchurch	276
at Gracious-Street	277
in Cornhill	278
at Soperlane	279
People , the votes of	ib.
Pageant at the Little Conduit	ib.
in Fleet-Street	280
Powder treason, and conspirators' names	286
Prophetical chronology of Merlin Silvestrius, being ques- tions and answers between him and his sister Gwendolina	294
RIVALLO	6
Rome , the first building of	ib.
Roman government in Britain ceased, with a computation of the times	29
Religion (the falling of) made good in Gormundus and the Saxons	70
Red Dragon spoken of	ib.
Robert , archbishop of Canterbury's speech against queen Emma	94
Robert , son of William the Conqueror, rebelleth against his father	103
offered to be made king of Jerusalem	107
neglected by his peers	ib.
's easy and liberal disposition	108
taken prisoner by his brother	ib.
Robert , earl of Gloucester, taken prisoner	115
Rosamond , the fair lady	122
poisoned by the queen	ib.
the inscription on her tomb	123
Richard I. succeedeth his father	128
undertaketh the holy voyage	129
conquered the isle of Cyprus	ib.
sells the isle of Cyprus	131
vilifieth the duke of Austria	ib.
intends to besiege Jerusalem	ib.
's victory	132
leaveth the Holy Land	ib.

INDEX.

	391
	PAGE
Richard I. ambushed in his return—taken prisoner and had the appellation of Cour-de-lion	134
ransomed for £100,000	ib.
wounded at Lymoges, in France	ib.
's arrival in England	ib.
the death of	136
Richard, earl of Cornwall, crowned emperor	143
's letter to the barons	145
the death of	148
Richard II. made king	182
the marriage of	ib.
a prediction of the reign of	ib.
the second marriage of	188
's court and pride thereof	186
's journey to Ireland	189
's landing in Wales	190
taken prisoner—presented to the duke of Lancas- ter, and deposed	ib.
removed to Pontefract	195
's death, treasure, and epitaph	196
Richard, duke of York, the issue of	205
Rebels shut out of London	214
Robin of Ridisdale	224
Richard III. labours to supplant Richmond	235
's queen poisoned	ib.
's policy	ib.
's rashness at Bosworth, and death	235
's burial—the manner of, and character	236
Rebellion in Ireland	251
Romish religion suppressed	257
the prophecy thereof explained	258
restored by parliament	262
Rose (white and red) united	277
joined with the thistle	285
Richmond and Lenox, (Duke) the epitaph of	290
SEVERN, (River) how came to be so called	8
Shaftsbury, the building of	4
Southampton, from whence took its name	16
Severus named himself king of Britain	18
Seven decrees made by Constantine to the honour of his Saviour	29
Spirits between the moon and earth called Incubi	40
Sibyls, their prophecies approved of by Austin and others of the fathers	41

	PAGE
Sibylla Cumana	47
Saxons, the first landing of—their policy	46, 47
suppress the faith of Christ	56
Samson, archbishop of York, and his six brothers	71
Swanus, the tyrant, the death of	84
Saxons, the end of their royal race	101
Stephen crowned king	111
extorteth from the clergy and laity	112
and the empress Maud have a battle, and the king	
taken prisoner	114
's queen petition the empress	ib.
is exchanged for earl Robert	115
the death of—his pretended right to the crown	116, 117
Scots revolt	155
sworn on the sacrament—break their oath	157
deride the English—their cruelty	163
Spencer (Hugh) the son, the pride of	164
the father made earl of Winchester	165
Spencers, their hatred to the queen which proved their ruin	166
beaten with their own weapons	167
the father and son suffer death	168
Scots taunt the English	171
Straw (Jack) captain of the rebels, the death and pride of	182
Shaewsbury, the battle of	197
Salisbury, (Earl) the death of	210
Suffolk (Earl) seeketh to supplant the duke of Gloucester	211
the proceedings of	212
(Marquis) arrested and sent to the tower	213
banished for five years—the death of	ib.
Shaw (Dr.)'s sermon at St. Paul's cross	230
Surrey (Earl) taken prisoner	235
Stokefield, the battle of	238
Stanley, (Lord) challenged of treason, and beheaded	241
Surry, (the noble earl) the death of	254
Seymour, (admiral Sir Thomas) the death of	256
Somerset, (Duke) protector, put to death for felony	257
's character, honour, and offices	ib.
catalogued among the English martyrs	ib.
Suffolkmen adhere to lady Mary	260
Suffolk, (Duke) the death of	262
TROYNOVANT, the building of, since called London	2
Tenantius, the government of	15
Trahern sent into Britain	24
Thirty-three kings, before scarce mentioned	33
Thonge-castle, the building of	46

INDEX.

322
PAGE

Tanner, (John) an impostor	167
Three kings present at Smithfield	179
Trolop (Andrew) perfidious to the lords	219
Tewksbury, the battle of	227
Tower, a council held at	230
Temple Bar, the show at	280
Traitors arraigned at Westminster and executed	287
URSULA with the 11,000 virgins	27
Uterpendragon crowned king	61
victorious over the Saxons and others	ib.
enamoured of Igera, wife to the duke of Cornwall	62
invadeth Cornwall	ib.
Ulphin of Caer-Caradoc	ib.
Uterpendragon, Merlin, and Ulphin, enter the fort Tindagol	63
a speech to the duchess of Cornwall	64
Merlin and Ulphin, the transformation of	66
espouseth the duchess	ib.
Underwood, a second Banister	262
Unicorn, part of the Scots arms	284
VESPASIAN conquering the isle of Wight	17
Vortiger or Vortigern	39
Virgil's prophecy of Christ	41
Vortigern's ambition to the crown	45
crowned king	46
forsaketh his queen, to marry with Ronwen the daughter of Hengist	47
deposed	ib.
Vortimer (King) 's many brave victories over the Saxons	48
conquered the Saxons in seven several battles	ib.
poisoned by his step-dame, Ronwen	ib.
Vortigern restored to the crown	ib.
suppressed by Hengist	49
's enquiries of the wizards	51
the lamentable death of	55
Vortiporius and his victories	69
WINCHESTER, the building of	4
Walbrook, from whence took its name	20
Wednesday and Friday, whence had their appellation	46
Wizards, their cunning evasion	51
What was meant by the German Worm and Sea Wolf	69
William the Norman landeth in England	99
's three pretences for invasions	ib.

	PAGE
William makes three profers to king Harold before the battle.—William victorious	109
crowned king of England	102
's eldest son, Robert, rebels against his father, and is victorious	103
's admonition to his sons, and his death	ib.
William II. crowned king	104
's strange submission	105
buildeth Westminster hall	106
murdered by Sir Walter Tyrrel—his character	ib.
the justice and liberality of	107
's two sons drowned	109
Wards first granted	143
Wallis, (William) the end of	157
White battle	163
Wiltshire (Earl) and others executed	190
Westminster hall, and the manner of the great feast there]	193
Wakefeld, the battle of	221
Warwick (earl) voweth to remove king Edward	224
the death of	226
Warbeck, (Perkin) a new impostor pretends to be duke of York	240
abetted by the French	241
married to lady Gordon	ib.
landeth in Kent	ib.
proclaimed himself king of England	242
sent to the Tower	243
hanged at Tyburn	ib.
Warwick, (the young earl) beheaded on Towerhill	ib.
Woolsey (Cardinal) ambassador to France	248
the death of	ib.
Worthy government, the seat of	278
YORK, the building of	3
(duke) opposeth the queen and her council	215
seized as prisoner	ib.
set at liberty	ib.
made protector	218
is changed	ib.
the pride of the	220
proclaimed heir apparent to the crown	ib.
slain	221
the young duke of, delivered to the archbishop of Canterbury, and duke of Gloucester	229



